ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

World Journal of *Diabetes*

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 1-83

Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of Diabetes

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of diabetes

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Diabetes* Editorial Board now consists of 710 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in diabetes mellitus. They are from 56 countries, including Argentina (2), Australia (27), Austria (11), Belgium (5), Brazil (13), Canada (24), Chile (3), China (40), Cuba (1), Czech Republic (3), Denmark (15), Egypt (3), Finland (5), France (12), Germany (27), Greece (17), Hungary (4), India (28), Iran (8), Iraq (2), Ireland (3), Israel (10), Italy (56), Japan (31), Jordan (1), Kuwait (3), Lebanon (1), Malaysia (1), Malta (1), Mexico (4), Netherlands (8), New Zealand (3), Nigeria (2), Norway (2), Oman (3), Pakistan (2), Poland (7), Portugal (1), Qatar (1), Romania (2), Saudi Arabia (1), Singapore (4), Slovakia (1), South Africa (1), South Korea (15), Spain (24), Sweden (5), Switzerland (4), Thailand (4), Tunisia (1), Turkey (13), United Arab Emirates (3), United Kingdom (27), United States (213), Venezuela (1), and Yemen (1).

Subrata Chakrabarti, *London*
David Cherney, *Ontario*
Mervyn Deitel, *Toronto*
Jean-Pierre Després, *Quebec*
David Joseph Hill, *London*
Tian-Ru Jin, *Toronto*
Arulmozhi D Kandasamy, *Edmonton*
Jennifer L Kuk, *Toronto*
Ismail Laher, *Vancouver*
Roger S McIntyre, *Toronto*
Joseph Fomusi Ndisang, *Saskatoon*
Raj Padwal, *Alberta*
Ciriaco A Piccirillo, *Montreal*
Remi Rabasa-Lhoret, *Montreal*
AM James Shapiro, *Edmonton*
Guang Sun, *St. John's*
Valerie Taylor, *Hamilton*
Cory Toth, *Calgary*
André Tremblay, *Montréal*
Vincent C Woo, *Winnipeg*
James Roscoe Wright, *Calgary*
Xi-Long Zheng, *Calgary*

Chile

Sebastian San Martin, *Valparaiso*
Armando Rojas-Rubio, *Talca*
Luis Sobrevia, *Santiago*

China

Pang-Zeng Chang, *Qingdao*
Jie Chen, *Nanjing*
Bernard Man Yung Cheung, *Hong Kong*
William Chi-shing Cho, *Hong Kong*
Tian-Pei Hong, *Beijing*
Qin Huang, *Shanghai*
Po Sing Leung, *Hong Kong*
Chao Liu, *Nanjing*
Jian-Kang Liu, *Xi'an*
Lie-Gang Liu, *Wuhan*
Ronald Ching Wan Ma, *Hong Kong*
Jin-Sheng Qi, *Shijiazhuang*
Wing Yee So, *Hong Kong*
Cheuk Chun Szeto, *Hong Kong*
Kathryn Tan, *Hong Kong*
Cheng-Ming Wang, *Yangzhou*
Cong-Yi Wang, *Wuhan*
Yu Wang, *Hong Kong*
Guang-Da Xiang, *Wuhan*
Bao-Feng Yang, *Harbin*
Shu-Yu Yang, *Fujian*
Xi-Lin Yang, *Hong Kong*
Zai-Qing Yang, *Wuhan*
Shan-Dong Ye, *Hefei*
Shi-Sheng Zhou, *Dalian*
Zhi-Guang Zhou, *Changsha*

Cuba

Luis Sarmiento-Pérez, *Havana*

Czech Republic

Martin Haluzik, *Prague*
Michal Krcma, *Plzen*
Terezie Pelikanova, *Prague*

Denmark

Charlotte Brøns, *Gentofte*
Jens Sandahl Christiansen, *Arhus*
Flemming Dela, *Copenhagen*
Kristine Færch, *Gentofte*
Erik L Grove, *Aarhus*
Louise Groth Grunnet, *Gentofte*
R Scott Heller, *Gentofte*
Kurt Højlund, *Odense C*
Filip K Knop, *Hellerup*
Helle Markholst, *Måløv*
Jens D Mikkelsen, *Copenhagen*
Ole Hartvig Mortensen, *Copenhagen*
Oluf Pedersen, *Copenhagen*
Esben Thyssen Vestergaard, *Aarhus*
Milan Zdravkovic, *Søborg*

Egypt

Mamdouh Moawad Ali Hssan, *Cairo*
Moshira Abdel Hakim Rateb, *Cairo*
Mona Farag Schaalan, *Cairo*

Finland

Siamak Bidel, *Helsinki*
Gang Hu, *Helsinki*
Thomas Kietzmann, *Oulu*
Qing Qiao, *Helsinki*
Karoliina Wehkalampi, *Helsinki*

France

Jean Claude Ansquer, *Dijon*
Bertrand Cariou, *Nantes*
Sylvie Dejager, *Rueil-Malmaison*
Naim Akhtar Khan, *Dijon*
Jean-Philippe Lavigne, *Nîmes*
Michel Marre, *Paris*
Marie-Claude Morice, *Massy*
Riccardo Perfetti, *Paris*
Gérard Said, *Paris*
Sophie Visvikis Siest, *Nancy*
Dominique Simon, *Paris*
Didier Vieau, *Villeneuve d'Ascq*

Germany

Ioanna Gouni Berthold, *Cologne*
Christa Buechler, *Regensburg*
Roland Büttner, *Heidelberg*
Michael Froehner, *Dresden*
Hammes Hans-Peter, *Mannheim*
Nadj Herbach, *Munich*
Andrea Icks, *Düsseldorf*
Thomas Jax, *Neuss*
Ulrich Arthur Julius, *Dresden*
Michael Kluge, *Munich*
Florian Lang, *Tuebingen*
Matthias Laudes, *Köln*
Ralf Lobmann, *Stuttgart*
Rafael T Mikolajczyk, *Bremen*
Andreas Stefan Mueller, *Halle (Saale)*
Karsten Müssig, *Tübingen*
Nahid Parvizi, *Neustadt am Rübenberge*
Thomas Peter Reinehr, *Datteln*
Michael Ristow, *Jena*
Sven Schinner, *Duesseldorf*
Peter Egbert Hermann Schwarz, *Dresden*
Konstantinos Stellos, *Tubingen*
Ovidiu Alin Stirban, *Bad Oeynhausen*
Diego J Walther, *Berlin*
Silvia Anette Wein, *Kiel*
Christian Wrede, *Berlin*
Dan Ziegler, *Düsseldorf*

Greece

George P Chrousos, *Athens*
Moses S Elisaf, *Ioannina*
Panagiotis Georgoulias, *Larissa*
Nikolaos Kadoglou, *Thessaloniki*
Gerasimos E Krassas, *Krini*
Spilios Manolakopoulos, *Attiki*
Nikolaos Papanas, *Alexandroupolis*
Dimitrios Papazoglou, *Alexandroupolis*
Sokratis Pastromas, *Athens*
Melpomeni Peppa, *Athens*
Christina Piperi, *Goudi*
Nicholas K Tentolouris, *Athens*
Konstantinos A Toulis, *Salonika*
Apostolos Tsapas, *Thessaloniki*
Konstantinos Tziomalos, *Thessaloniki*
Elias Zintzaras, *Thessaly*

Hungary

Mária Bagyánszki, *Szeged*
György Jermendy, *Budapest*
Karoly Racz, *Budapest*
Gyula Soltesz, *Pécs*

India

Deepak Narayan Amrapurkar, *Mumbai*
C V Anuradha, *Tamil Nadu*
Sarika Arora, *New Delhi*
Pitchai Balakumar, *Sivakasi*
Muthuswamy Balasubramanyam, *Chennai*
Subhabrata Chakrabarti, *Hyderabad*
Abhay Sankar Chakraborti, *Kolkata*
Tapan K Chaudhuri, *New Delhi*
Kanwaljit Chopra, *Chandigarh*
Malabika Datta, *Delhi*
Debidas Ghosh, *West Bengal*
Ravinder Goswami, *New Delhi*
Pappachan M Joseph, *Kerala*
Jothydev Kesavadev, *Kerala*
KVS Hari Kumar, *Lucknow*
Anoop Misra, *New Delhi*
Analava Mitra, *Kharagpur*
Viswanathan Mohan, *Chennai*
S P Murthy, *Bangalore*
Pallavi Panchu, *Guntur*
Usharani Pingali, *Hyderabad*
Ambady Ramachandran, *Egmore Chennai*
Vadde Ramakrishna, *Kadapa*
Geetha Vani Rayasam, *Haryana*

Rajat Sandhir, *Chandigarh*
Manju Sharma, *New Delhi*
Suman Bala Sharma, *Delhi*
Tarun Sharma, *Chennai*

Iran

Mohammad Abdollahi, *Tehran*
Mohammad Kazemi Arababadi, *Rafsanjan*
Leila Azadbakht, *Isfahan*
Hamid Baradaran, *Tehran*
Behrooz Broumand, *Tehran*
Ahmad Esmaillzadeh, *Isfahan*
Majid Ghayour-Mobarhan, *Mashhad*
Mohsen Janghorbani, *Isfahan*

Iraq

Saad Abdul-Rahman Hussain, *Baghdad*
Abbas Ali Mansour, *Basrah*

Ireland

Amar Agha, *Dublin*
Mark Philip Hehir, *Dublin*
Gerald H Tomkin, *Dublin*

Israel

Michael Aviram, *Haifa*
Gal Dubnov-Raz, *Tel Hashomer*
Shimon Efrat, *Tel Aviv*
Raymond Elias Farah, *Safed*
Oren Froy, *Rehovot*
Saher Hamed, *Haifa*
Arid Nakhoul, *Haifa*
Orit Pinhas-Hamiel, *Tel Hashomer*
Haim Werner, *Tel Aviv*
Marina Shargorodsky Zimlichman, *Holon*

Italy

Luigi Angrisani, *Napoli*
Moschetta Antonio, *Bari*
Antonio Aversa, *Rome*
Roberto Baldelli, *Rome*
Giuseppe Barbaro, *Rome*
Alessandro Bartolomucci, *Parma*
Giuseppina Basta, *Pisa*
Simona Bertoli, *Milano*
Federico Bilotta, *Rome*
Fabio Broglio, *Torino*
Francesco G Chiarelli, *Chieti*
Sergio Coccheri, *Bologna*
Massimo Collino, *Torino*
Marco Aristide Comaschi, *Genoa*
Renzo Cordera, *Genova*
Francesco Dotta, *Siena*
Gagliardini Elena, *Bergamo*
Stefano Fiorucci, *Perugia*
Maurizio Galderisi, *Naples*
Amalia Gastaldelli, *Pisa*
Ezio Ghigo, *Turin*
Carla Giordano, *Palermo*
Paolo Gisondi, *Verona*
Riccarda Granata, *Turin*
Giorgio Iervasi, *Pisa*
Claudia Kusmic, *Pisa*
Carmelo La Rosa, *Catania*
Francesco Landi, *Rome*
Monica Rosa Loizzo, *Arcavacata Rende*
Paolo Magni, *Milano*
Mariano Malaguarnera, *Catania*
Melania Manco, *Rome*
Piero Marchetti, *Pisa*
Massimo Massi-Benedetti, *Perugia*
Antonio Nicolucci, *Imbaro*
Lucia Pacifico, *Rome*
Stefano Palomba, *Catanzaro*
Giampaolo Papi, *Carpi*
Renato Pasquali, *Bologna*
Piermarco Piatti, *Milano*
Dario Pitocco, *Rome*
Antonio E Pontiroli, *Milano*
Giulio Marchesini Reggiani, *Bologna*
Giuseppe Remuzzi, *Bergamo*
Manfredi Rizzo, *Palermo*
Raffaella Rosso, *Genoa*
Giuseppe Schillaci, *Perugia*
Leonardo A Sechi, *Sassari*
Imad Sheiban, *Torino*
Cesare R Sirtori, *Milano*
Giovanni Tarantino, *Naples*
Giovanni Targher, *Verona*
Donadon Valter, *Pordenone*
Alberto Verrotti, *Chieti*
Andrea Viggiano, *Napoli*
Gianvincenzo Zuccotti, *Milan*

Japan

Masato Asahina, *Chiba*
Takuya Awata, *Saitama*
Yuichiro Eguchi, *Saga*
Goji Hasegawa, *Kyoto*
Satoshi Inoue, *Tokyo*
Eiji Ishimura, *Osaka*
Masayuki Iwano, *Nara*
Takashi Kadowaki, *Tokyo*
Eisuke Kagawa, *Hiroshima*
Masahito Katahira, *Aichi*
Eiji Kawasaki, *Nagasaki*
Noriyuki Koibuchi, *Gunma*
Kazuhiko Kotani, *Tochigi*
Daisuke Koya, *Ishikawa*
Norikazu Maeda, *Osaka*
Takayuki Masaki, *Oita*
Yuji Matsuzawa, *Osaka*
Kazuaki Nishio, *Tokyo*
Kenji Okumura, *Nagoya*
Motoaki Saito, *Yonago*
Toshiyasu Sasaoka, *Toyama*
Michio Shimabukuro, *Okinawa*
Kohzo Takebayashi, *Saitama*
Hiroyuki Tamemoto, *Tochigi*
Takashi Togo, *Yokohama*
Jun Udagawa, *Izumo*
Yoshinari Uehara, *Fukuoka*
Takuya Watanabe, *Tokyo*
Toshihiko Yada, *Tochigi*
Daisuke Yasuhara, *Kagoshima*
Tohru Yorifuji, *Osaka*

Jordan

Yousef S Khader, *Irbid*

Kuwait

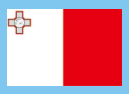
Kamal AA Sulaiman Al-Shoumer, *Kuwait*
Ibrahim Fadil Benter, *Safat*
Abu Salim Mustafa, *Kuwait*

Lebanon

Ramzi F Sabra, *Beirut*

Malaysia

Mafauzy Mohamed, *Kota Bharu*



Malta

Charles Savona-Ventura, *Msida*

Mexico

Manuel González-Ortiz, *Guadalajara*
Fernando Guerrero-Romero, *Durango*
Jesus Alberto Olivares-Reyes, *Mexico City*
Rocío Salceda, *Mexico City*

Netherlands

Sander Kersten, *Wageningen*
Nanne Kleefstra, *Zwolle*
Edwin Mariman, *Maastricht*
Don Poldermans, *Rotterdam*
Han Roelofsen, *Groningen*
Hendrik-Jan Schuurman, *Utrecht*
Suat Simsek, *Alkmaar*
Marcel Twickler, *Bergen op Zoom*

New Zealand

Paul Hofman, *Auckland*
Peter E Lobie, *Auckland*
Elaine Rush, *Auckland*

Nigeria

Adejuwon A Adeneye, *Lagos*
Anthonia Okeoghene Ogbera, *Lagos*

Norway

Akhtar Hussain, *Oslo*

Odd Erik Johansen, *Hovik*

Oman

Mohammed Al Shafaee, *Muscat*
Jumana S Saleh, *Muscat*
Radha Shenoy, *Muscat*

Pakistan

Shahid Hameed, *Islamabad*
Jamil A Malik, *Islamabad*

Poland

Marcin Baranowski, *Bialystok*
Jerzy Beltowski, *Lublin*
Alicia Hubalewska Dydejczyk, *Krakow*
Maciej Owecki, *Poznań*
Ewa Pankowska, *Warsaw*
Agnieszka Piwowar, *Wroclaw*
Dorota Anna Zieba, *Krakow*

Portugal

M Graça Pereira, *Braga*

Qatar

Hong Ding, *Doha*

Romania

Elena Ganea, *Bucharest*
Adriana Georgescu, *Bucharest*

Saudi Arabia

J Fernando Arevalo, *Caracas*

Singapore

S Thameem Dheen, *Singapore*
Yung Seng Lee, *Singapore*
Daniel Ng, *Singapore*
Rob Martinus van Dam, *Singapore*

Slovakia

Katarína Šebeková, *Bratislava*

South Africa

Md Shahidul Islam, *Durban*

South Korea

Huneg-Sik Choi, *Gwangju*
Kyung Mook Choi, *Seoul*
Won Mi Hwang, *Seoul*
Eui-Bae Jeung, *Chungbuk*
Ju-Hee Kang, *Incheon*
Sin Gon Kim, *Seongbuk-Gu*
Sung-Jin Kim, *Seoul*
Young-Gyu Ko, *Seoul*
Kang-Beom Kwon, *Chonbuk*
Myung Gull Lee, *Bucheon*
Soo Lim, *Seongnam*
Byung-Hyun Park, *Jeonbuk*
Seungjoon Park, *Seoul*
Kun-Ho Yoon, *Seoul*
Jeesuk Yu, *Cheonan*

Spain

Vivencio Barrios, *Madrid*
M Lusia Bonet, *Palma de Mallorca*
Manuel Vazquez Carrera, *Barcelona*
Maria Luz Martinez Chantar, *Derio*
Manuel Aguilar Diosdado, *Cádiz*
Javier Espino, *Badajoz*
Ricardo V García-Mayor, *Vigo*
José Manuel Gómez-Sáez, *Barcelona*
Oreste Gualillo, *Santiago de Compostela*
J Alfredo Martínez Hernández, *Pamplona*
Emilio Herrera, *Madrid*
Amelia Marti, *Pamplona*
Merce Miranda, *Tarragona*
JF Navarro-González, *Santa Cruz de Tenerife*
Alberto Ortiz, *Madrid*
Maria Javier Ramirez, *Pamplona*
Eugenia Resmini, *Barcelona*
Pedro Romero-Aroca, *Reus*
Jordi Salas-Salvadó, *Reus*
Gines M Salido, *Caceres*
Victor Sanchez-Margalet, *Seville*
Helmut Schröder, *Barcelona*
Carmen Segundo, *Cádiz*
Rafael Simó, *Barcelona*

Sweden

Joanna Hlebowicz, *Malmö*
Kaj S Stenlöf, *Göteborg*
Ann-Britt Wiréhn, *Linköping*
Weili Xu, *Stockholm*
Shao-Nian Yang, *Stockholm*

Switzerland

Kaspar Berneis, *Zurich*
Pascal Bovet, *Lausanne*
Luc Tappy, *Lausanne*
Christian Toso, *Geneva*

Thailand

Narattaphol Charoenphandhu, *Bangkok*
Arthorn Riewpaiboon, *Bangkok*
Rawee Teanpaisan, *Hat-Yai*
Viroj Wiwanitkit, *Bangkok*

Tunisia

Khaled Hamden, *Sfax*

Turkey

Ugur Cavlak, *Denizli*
Teoman Dogru, *Ankara*
Ersin Fadillioglu, *Ankara*
Abdurrahman Fatih Fidan, *Afyonkarahisar*
Muammer Karadeniz, *Bornova-Izmir*
Cevdet Kaya, *Istanbul*
Fahrettin Kelestimur, *Kayseri*
Altan Onat, *Istanbul*
Semir Ozdemir, *Antalya*
Mustafa Şahin, *Ankara*
Ilker Tasci, *Ankara*
Belma Turan, *Ankara*
Serap Yalın, *Mersin*

United Arab Emirates

Ernest Akingunola Adeghate, *Al Ain*
Mukesh M Agarwal, *Al Ain*
Samir M Awadallah, *Sharjah*

United Kingdom

Nisreen Alwan, *Leeds*
Ambika P Ashraf, *Birmingham*
Chen Bing, *Liverpool*
Fay Crawford, *Edinburgh*
Tim M Curtis, *Belfast*
Umesh Dashora, *Hastings*
Gareth Davison, *Belfast*
Peter Raymond Flatt, *Coleraine*
Kathleen M Gillespie, *Bristol*
Peter John Grant, *Leeds*
Lorna W Harries, *Exeter*
Nigel Hoggard, *Aberdeen*
Nigel Irwin, *Coleraine*
Edward Jude, *Lancashire*
Andreas F Kolb, *Aberdeen*
Stefan Marciniak, *Cambridge*
Moffat Joha Nyirenda, *Edinburgh*
Jeetesh Patel, *Birmingham*
Snorri Bjorn Rafnsson, *Edinburgh*
Thozhukat Sathyapalan, *Yorkshire*
Latika Sibal, *Newcastle*
Rajagopalan Sriraman, *Lincoln*
Ramasamyiyer Swaminathan, *London*
Abd A Tahrani, *Birmingham*
G Neil Thomas, *Birmingham*
Cecil Thompson, *London*
Paul Henry Whiting, *Leicester*

United States

Varun Agrawal, *Springfield*
Mohamed Al-Shabrawey, *Augusta*
Pascale Alard, *Louisville*
Omar Ali, *Milwaukee*

Judith Aponte, *New York*
Balamurugan N Appakalai, *Minneapolis*
Hwyda A Arafat, *Philadelphia*
Carl V Asche, *Salt Lake*
Sanford A Asher, *Pittsburgh*
Anthony Atala, *Winston-Salem*
Sami Toufic Azar, *Beirut*
George Louis Bakris, *Chicago*
Alistair J Barber, *Hershey*
Daniel C Batlle, *Chicago*
David SH Bell, *Birmingham*
Rita Bortell, *Worcester*
Sebastien G Bouret, *Los Angeles*
David Lloyd Brown, *Stony Brook*
Lu Cai, *Louisville*
Jack D Caldwell, *Erie*
Anna C Calkin, *Los Angeles*
Roberto A Calle, *Groton*
R Keith Campbell, *Pullman*
Carlos Campos, *New Braunfels*
Heping Cao, *New Orleans*
Krista Casazza, *Birmingham*
Aaron Brandon Caughey, *Portland*
Eileen R Chasens, *Pittsburgh*
Munmun Chattopadhyay, *Ann Arbor*
Xiao-Li Chen, *St Paul*
Sheri Renee Colberg, *Norfolk*
Craig Ian Coleman, *Hartford*
Robert Russell Conley, *Indianapolis*
Colleen M Croniger, *Cleveland*
Doyle M Cummings, *Greenville*
William C Cushman, *Memphis*
Patricia Ann D'Amore, *Boston*
Patricia Darbishire, *West Lafayette*
Guillaume Darrasse-Jèze, *New York*
Ravi M Dasu, *Sacramento*
Michael Harvey Davidson, *Chicago*
Prakash Deedwania, *SanFrancisco*
Hong-Wen Deng, *Kansas City*
Teresa P DiLorenzo, *Bronx*
Scot E Dowd, *Lubbock*
Samuel C Durso, *Baltimore*
Krystal L Edwards, *Dallas*
Alexander M Efanov, *Indianapolis*
Azza B El-Remessy, *Augusta*
Amy Zhihong Fan, *Atlanta*
Melissa Spezia Faulkner, *Tucson*
George S Ferzli, *Staten Island*
Paolo Fiorina, *Boston*
James Edward Foley, *East Hanover*
Samuel N Forjuoh, *Temple*
Alessia Fornoni, *Miami*
Martha M Funnell, *Ann Arbor*
Trudy Gaillard, *Columbus*
Pietro Galassetti, *Irvine*
Claudia Gragnoli, *Hershey*
Jennifer B Green, *Durham*
Gary J Grover, *Piscataway*
Alok Kumar Gupta, *Baton Rouge*
Werner K Gurr, *New Haven*
Samy L Habib, *San Antonio*
Abdel Rahim Hamad, *Baltimore*
Daniel M Herron, *New York*
Tiffany Hilton, *Rochester*
Raimund Hirschberg, *Torrance*
Michael Francis Holick, *Boston*
Philip Hooper, *Aurora*
Zhaoyong Hu, *Houston*
Rachel Mary Hudacko, *New Brunswick*
Yasuo Ido, *Boston*
Brian K Irons, *Lubbock*
Pamela Itkin-Ansari, *La Jolla*
Hieronim Jakubowski, *Newark*
Hong-Lin Jiang, *Blacksburg*
Ping Jiao, *Providence*
Shengkan Jin, *Piscataway*
Arpita Kalla, *St Louis*
Richard Evers Katholi, *Springfield*
Melina Rae Kibbe, *Chicago*
Bhumsoo Kim, *Ann Arbor*
Tomoshige Kino, *Bethesda*
Julienne K Kirk, *Winston-Salem*
Renu A Kowluru, *Detroit*
Lewis H Kuller, *Pittsburgh*
Rajesh Kumar, *Temple*
Blandine Laferrère, *New York*
Sang Yeoup Lee, *Mayo*
Cong-Jun Li, *Beltsville*
Ching-Shwun Lin, *San Francisco*
Julie Lin, *Boston*
Shuo Lin, *Los Angeles*
Peter Lindgren, *San Diego*
James F List, *Princeton*
Dong-Min Liu, *Blacksburg*
Zhen-Qi Liu, *Charlottesville*
George William Lyerly, *Conway*
Jian-Xing Ma, *Oklahoma City*
Rong Ma, *Fort Worth*
Xin-Laing Ma, *Philadelphia*
David Maggs, *San Diego*
Kenneth Maiese, *Detroit*
Kevin C Maki, *Glen Ellyn*
Sridhar Mani, *Bronx*
Suresh Mathews, *Auburn*
Lauraar McCabe, *East Lansing*
Sarah E Messiah, *Miami*
Thomas O Metz, *Richland*
Shannon A Miller, *Orlando*
Murielle Mimeault, *Omaha*
Raghavendra G Mirmira, *Indianapolis*
Prasun J Mishra, *Bethesda*
Reema Mody, *Grayslake*
Arshag D Mooradian, *Jacksonville*
Mohammad Reza Movahed, *Tucson*
James Mu, *Rahway*
Muraleedharan G Nair, *East Lansing*
Manuel F Navedo, *Seattle*
Charles B Nemeroff, *Atlanta*
Joshua J Neumiller, *Spokane*
Steven Nissen, *Cleveland*
Hirofumi Noguchi, *Fort Worth*
Craig Nunemake, *Charlottesville*
Patrick J O'Connor, *Minneapolis*
Erin St Onge, *Apopka*
Wei-Hong Pan, *Baton Rouge*
Naushira Pandya, *Fort Lauderdale*
Michael R Peluso, *Corvallis*
Inga Peter, *New York*
Axel Pflueger, *Rochester*
Gretchen A Piatt, *Pittsburgh*
John D Piette, *Ann Arbor*
Leonid Poretsky, *New York*
Walter J Pories, *Greenville*
Parviz M Pour, *Omaha*
Wei Qiao Qiu, *Boston*
Teresa Quattrin, *Buffalo*
Cristina Rabadán-Diehl, *Bethesda*
Rajendra S Raghow, *Memphis*
Swapnil Rajpathak, *Bronx*
Armin Rashidi, *Norfolk*
Mohammed S Razzaque, *Boston*
Beverly A S Reyes, *Philadelphia*
David Rodbard, *Potomac*
Helena W Rodbard, *Rockville*
June Hart Romeo, *Cleveland*
Raul J Rosenthal, *Fort Lauderdale*
Juan M Saavedra, *Bethesda*
Stephen W Schaffer, *Mobile*
Frank AJL Scheer, *Boston*
Richard E Scranton, *Tiverton*
Vallabh (Raj) O Shah, *Albuquerque*
Aziz Shaibani, *Houston*
Jin-Xiong She, *Augusta*
Guo-Ping Shi, *Boston*
Carol Ann Shively, *Winston-Salem*
Anders AF Sima, *Detroit*
Pramil N Singh, *Loma Linda*
Rajan Singh, *Los Angeles*
Jay S Skyler, *Miami*
Dawn Smiley, *Atlanta*
Matthew D Solomon, *Stanford*
Mark A Sperling, *Pittsburgh*
Rakesh K Srivastava, *Tyler*
Bangyan Stiles, *Los Angeles*
Yu-Xiang Sun, *Houston*
Salim Surani, *Corpus Christi*
Arthur L M Swislocki, *Martinez*
Ya-Xiong Tao, *Auburn*
John A Tayek, *Torrance*
John Gaylord Teeter, *New Haven*
Carlos Marcelo Telleria, *Vermillion*
Christopher Gordon Thanos, *Providence*
Ronald G Tilton, *Galveston*
Serena Tonstad, *Loma Linda*
Michael Lawrence Traub, *Staten Island*
Guillermo E Umpierrez, *Atlanta*
Margrit Urbanek, *Chicago*
Gabriel I Uwaifo, *Baton Rouge*
Volker Vallon, *San Diego*
Shambhu D Varma, *Baltimore*
Maria Virella, *Charleston*
Hong-Jun Wang, *Boston*
Mark E Williams, *Boston*
Nathan D Wong, *Irvine*
Guangyu Wu, *New Orleans*
Zhong-Jian Xie, *San Francisoco*
Ming-Zhao Xing, *Baltimore*
Hariom Yadav, *Bethesda*
Lijun Yang, *Gainesville*
Ruojing Yang, *Rahway*
Subhashini Yaturu, *Albany*
Joseph Yeboah, *Charlottesville*
Dengping Yin, *Nashville*
Yisang Yoon, *Rochester*
Yi-Hao Yu, *New York*
Kevin CJ Yuen, *Portland*
Ian Stuart Zagon, *Hershey*
Robert Yuk-Lung Zee, *Boston*
Cui-Lin Zhang, *Rockville*
James Xuejie Zhang, *Richmond*
Sarah Zhang, *Oklahoma*
Guixiang Zhao, *Atlanta*
Yang Zhao, *Indianapolis*
Ming-Hui Zou, *Oklahoma City*

Venezuela

Fuad Lechin, *Caracas*

Yemen

Khaled Abdul-Aziz Ahmed, *Ibb*

WJD World Journal of Diabetes

Contents

Bimonthly Volume 5 Number 1 February 15, 2014

World Journal of Diabetes
Volume 5 Number 1 February 15, 2014

Contents

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Diabetes

ISSN
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
April 15, 2010

FREQUENCY
Bimonthly

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Diabetes
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHER
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-65557188
Telephone: +852-31779906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLICATION DATE
February 15, 2014

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/g_info_20100107165233.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.1

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 1-13
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

EDITORIAL

Excess vitamin intake: An unrecognized risk factor for obesity

Shi-Sheng Zhou, Yiming Zhou

Shi-Sheng Zhou, Institute of Basic Medical Sciences, Medical College, Dalian University, Dalian 116622, Liaoning Province, China
Yiming Zhou, Division of Cell Signaling, Okazaki Institute for Integrative Bioscience, National Institutes of Natural Sciences, Okazaki 444-8787, Japan
Author contributions: Both authors contributed to this paper.
Correspondence to: Shi-Sheng Zhou, MD, PhD, Institute of Basic Medical Sciences, Medical College, Dalian University, University Street No. 10, Dalian 116622, Liaoning Province, China. zhouss@ymail.com
Telephone: +86-411-87402740 Fax: +86-411-87402053
Received: October 16, 2013 Revised: December 7, 2013
Accepted: December 17, 2013
Published online: February 15, 2014

Abstract

Over the past few decades, food fortification and infant formula supplementation with high levels of vitamins have led to a sharp increase in vitamin intake among infants, children and adults. This is followed by a sharp increase in the prevalence of obesity and related diseases, with significant disparities among countries and different groups within a country. It has long been known that B vitamins at doses below their toxicity threshold strongly promote body fat gain. Studies have demonstrated that formulas, which have very high levels of vitamins, significantly promote infant weight gain, especially fat mass gain, a known risk factor for children developing obesity. Furthermore, ecological studies have shown that increased B vitamin consumption is strongly correlated with the prevalence of obesity and diabetes. We therefore hypothesize that excess vitamins may play a causal role in the increased prevalence of obesity. This review will discuss: (1) the causes of increased vitamin intake; (2) the non-monotonic effect of excess vitamin intake on weight and fat gain; and (3) the role of vitamin fortification in obesity disparities among countries and different groups within a country.

Key words: Vitamin fortification; Refined grain; Infant formula; Obesity; Diabetes; Insulin resistance; Oxidative stress; Glycemic index; Formula feeding; Epigenetic

Core tip: B vitamins are a known fat gain promoting factor. Food fortification-induced high vitamin consumption is followed by a rapid increase in obesity prevalence. Why is the fat gain effect of B vitamins neglected in obesity studies? Why does obesity prevalence vary from country to country? Why are the poor in developed countries but the rich in developing countries at high risk of obesity? Why is obesity prevalence higher in blacks than whites in the United States? Why does formula feeding (which is associated with high energy expenditure) increase the risk for obesity? Why is physical inactivity associated with increased obesity risk? This paper reviews the role of excess vitamins in obesity and proposes a unified answer to these questions.

Zhou SS, Zhou Y. Excess vitamin intake: An unrecognized risk factor for obesity. *World J Diabetes* 2014; 5(1): 1-13 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/full/v5/i1/1.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.1

INTRODUCTION

Obesity, a state of excessive accumulation of fat in the body, is a major risk factor for many diseases, such as type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease[1,2]. In the 1970s and 1980s, a rapid increase in the prevalence of obesity occurred almost simultaneously in many developed countries. Since then, developing countries have also experienced a rapid increase in obesity rates[3,4]. Nowadays, obesity has become a global epidemic[5]. It is worth noting that the prevalence of obesity differs greatly among

Table 1 The estimated daily average requirements and recommended dietary allowances for selected vitamins (mg/d)[1]

Vitamin	Adult man		Adult woman		Pregnancy	
	EAR	RDA	EAR	RDA	EAR	RDA
Thiamin	1.0	1.2	0.9	1.1	1.2	1.4
Riboflavin	1.1	1.3	0.9	1.1	1.2	1.4
Niacin	12	16	11	14	14	18
Vitamin B_6	1.1	1.3	1.1	1.3	1.6	1.9
Vitamin C	75	90	60	75	70	90
Vitamin E	12	15	12	15	12	15

[1]Data are from the United States Food and Nutrition Board. EAR: Estimated daily average requirement, available from: URL: http://iom.edu/Activities/Nutrition/SummaryDRIs/~/media/Files/Activity%20Files/Nutrition/DRIs/EAR%20Table.pdf. RDA: Recommended dietary allowance, available from: URL: http://iom.edu/Activities/Nutrition/SummaryDRIs/~/media/Files/Activity%20Files/Nutrition/DRIs/RDA%20and%20AIs_Vitamin%20and%20Elements.pdf.

countries[3,4,6,7] as well as groups within a country[8-12]. It is more prevalent among those with low socioeconomic status (SES) in developed countries[6,8-10] but with high SES in developing countries, especially at their early stage of development[10-12]. Interestingly, compared with breast-fed infants, formula-fed infants have higher rather than lower levels of energy expenditure[13,14] and are more at risk for obesity in later life[15-17]. Therefore, the rapidly increased prevalence of obesity cannot be simply explained by genetic factors or decreased energy expenditure.

Recently, it has been suggested that changes in the global food system may play a role in the increased prevalence of obesity[4]. If this is the case, the global food system must have sharply changed in the 1970s-1980s. Notably, in the 1970s and 1980s, the contents of vitamins (organic chemicals affecting the body's functioning) in the food system of many developed countries were sharply increased due to modifications or changes in their rules, laws and regulations regarding food fortification[18-20]. This led to a nationwide increase in the consumption of many vitamins, especially fat synthesis-promoting B vitamins[21-24], including B_1 (thiamin), B_2 (riboflavin), B_3 (niacin) and B_6, in many countries[18-20]. Thus, there is a possibility that the food fortification-induced high vitamin intake may be related to the sudden increase in the prevalence of obesity in the 1970s-1980s. Indeed, emerging evidence suggests that this food fortification-induced excess vitamin intake might play a major role in the increased prevalence of obesity[25,26]. In this review, we will discuss the cause of increased vitamin intake and its possible role in obesity, as well as the obesity disparities among countries and groups within countries.

CAUSES OF EXCESS VITAMIN INTAKE

Until the mid 1930s when the first commercial yeast extract vitamin B complex and semi-synthetic vitamin C supplement tablets were sold, vitamins were obtained solely through natural foods and seasonal changes in diet usually greatly altered the types and amounts of vitamins ingested. For example, the intake of fresh vegetable-derived vitamins might be high in summer but low in winter. However, through evolution, humans have adapted to this seasonal variations in vitamin intake by developing mechanisms to maintain the vitamin homeostasis. While the intake of vitamins is higher in summer, their elimination through sweat and sebum[27-30] may also increase because the secretion of sweat and sebum is higher in summer than in winter[28,31,32]. Moreover, the body can store a certain amount of vitamins when the supply is adequate, which can be used for some time when the intake is inadequate. For example, it will take several months before the first symptoms of vitamin C deficiency appear in a vitamin C deprivation condition[33]. From this point of view, it seems unnecessary to take vitamins everyday, although estimated daily average requirements (EARs) and the recommended dietary allowances are given (Table 1). Yet over the past several decades, the actual intake of vitamins has been significantly higher than the EARs due to the following causes.

Increased vitamin intake from vegetable/fruit sources

Over the past several decades, many fresh vegetables and fruits with better quality can be obtained year round due to widespread out-of-season cultivation. This has not only led to an increase in the intake of vegetable/fruit-derived vitamins (*e.g.*, vitamin C), but also abolished the seasonal vitamin intake variations. Taking the United States as an example, the per capita consumption of vegetables and fruits showed an increasing trend in the 1970s through the 1990s (Figure 1A), leading to an increase in vitamin C intake since the mid-1960s[34].

Increased vitamin intake from animal sources

The consumption of animal-based foods significantly increased in developed countries in the second half of the last century. Dietary patterns in developing countries have been shifting to a more meat-centric diet over the past few decades[5,35]. Such a nutrition transition has increased the intake of vitamins (especially nicotinamide, a form of niacin) from animal-based foods. For example, United States per capita consumption of total meat showed an increasing trend between the 1930s and 2000 (Figure 1B), which increased the daily intake of meat-derived nicotinamide from 6.8 mg in the 1930s to 11.4 mg in 2000, according to the data on meat contribution to daily niacin intake[34].

Increased vitamin intake from artificial sources

Besides increased natural vitamin sources, vitamins may be obtained from artificial sources, which involves food fortification, infant formula fortification, and vitamin-enriched drinks. Fortification is the process of adding synthetic vitamins to foods and infant milk (including breast milk or formula) to increase its overall vitamin content[34]. Some staple foods (such as flour and maize) are used as a vehicle for fortification. Wheat flour fortification with synthetic vitamins (B_1, B_2 and niacin) was started first in the United States in the late 1930s, which was soon adopted by many developed countries and then introduced

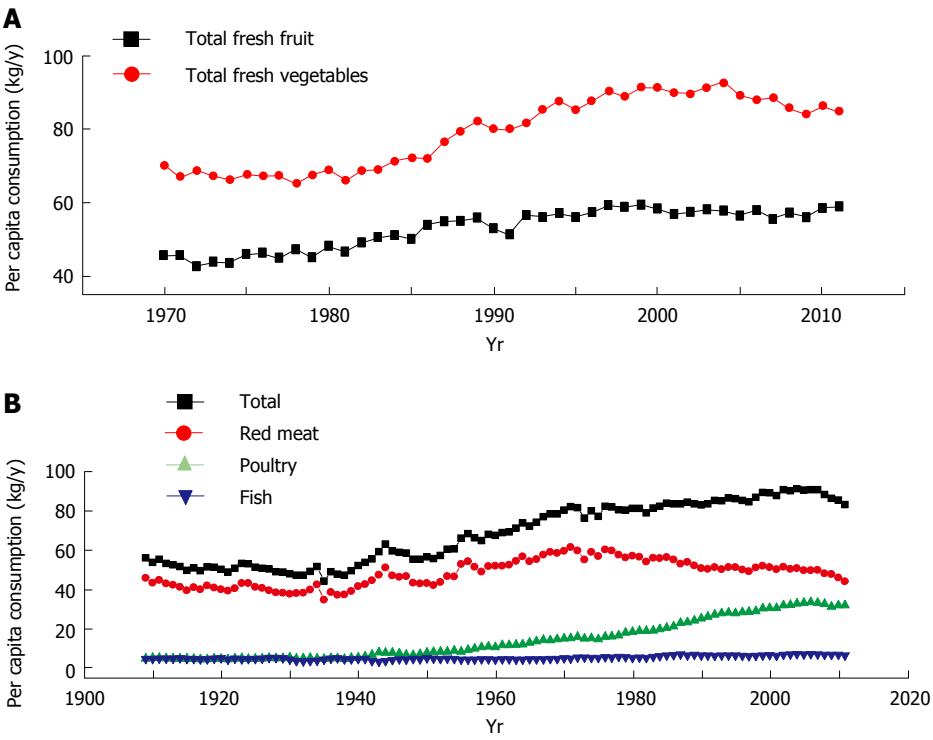


Figure 1 Trends in United States per capita consumption of vegetables, fruits (A) and meats (B). Data are from the Economic Research Service of the United States Department of Agriculture. Available from: URL: http://www.ers.usda.gov/data-products/food-availability-(per-capita)-data-system/.aspx.

Table 2 Fortification recommendations for ready-to-eat cereals

Vitamin	U.S. RDA (mg/d)	1974-1992 amount (mg/per pound)[1]	1974-2000 amount (mg/per pound)[1]
Thiamin	1.5	6	5.7
Niacin	20	80	76
Riboflavin	1.7	6.8	6.4
Vitamin C	60	240	227
Vitamin B_6	2	8	7.6

[1]Data are from Reference 34. RDA: Recommended dietary allowance.

to developing countries[19,20]. Notably, ready-to-eat cereals are a major vehicle of fortification of B vitamins (B_1, B_2, B_6 and niacin). Especially since 1974 when the food fortification standards for cereals were updated, ready-to-eat cereals have become the top food source of many vitamins[20,34]. The levels of vitamins in fortified ready-to-eat cereals are so high (Table 2) that consumption of less than a quarter pound of them (because foods *per se* also contain some amount of vitamins) meets the daily need for these vitamins in an adult. Many sugar-sweetened beverages are also supplemented with vitamins[36,37], which is also an important cause of increased vitamin intake. Since the 1950s, synthetic vitamins have been added to infant formulas[38]. In the 1980s, the governments of most countries established minimum nutrient requirements for commercial infant formulas[39], resulting in a significant increase in the content of vitamins in formulas. The levels of vitamins in some formulas for premature infants are more than 20 times higher than that of human milk (*i.e.*, about the minimum limit for nutrients) (Table 3). This leads to a high vitamin intake in infancy.

As a result of the combination of the above factors, the intake of vitamins has been significantly increased

Table 3 The minimum limit for infant formulas in the United States and commercially labeled values of nutrients (per 100 kcal)

Nutrient	ML[1]	TF[2]	TF/ML	PF[2]	PF/ML
Macronutrients					
Protein (g)	1.8	2.71	1.5	3	1.7
Fat (g)	3.3	5.27	1.6	5.43	1.7
Vitamins					
Vitamin B_1 (μg)	40	100	2.5	250	6.3
Vitamin B_2 (μg)	60	150	2.5	620	10.3
Niacin (nicotinamide, μg)	250	1050	4.2	5000	20.0
Vitamin B_6 (μg)	35	60	1.7	250	7.1
Vitamin B_{12} (μg)	0.15	0.25	1.7	0.55	3.7
Vitamin C (mg)	8	9	1.1	37	4.6
Biotin (μg)	1.5	4.4	2.9	37	24.7
Pantothenic acid (mg)	300	450	1.5	1900	6.3
Folic acid (μg)	4	15	3.8	37	9.3
Vitamin A (IU)	250	300	1.2	1250	5.0
Vitamin D (IU)	40	60	1.5	150	3.8
Vitamin E (IU)	0.7	1.5	2.1	4	5.7
Vitamin K (μg)	4	8	2.0	12	3.0

[1]The minimum limit for nutrients set by the United States Infant Formula Act of 1980[40]; [2]Similac formulas (http://abbottnutrition.com/brands/similac). ML: Minimum limit; TF: A similac formula for term infants (Similac Expert Care® 24 Cal With Iron); PF: A Similac formula for low-birth-weight infants and premature infants (Similac® Special Care® 20 With Iron).

over the past few decades. As shown in Figure 2, United States per capita daily consumption of vitamin B_1, B_2 and niacin has doubled from the 1930s to 2000, which is significantly higher than the EARs.

FOOD FORTIFICATION-RELATED DISPARITIES

Food fortification may lead to differential exposure to

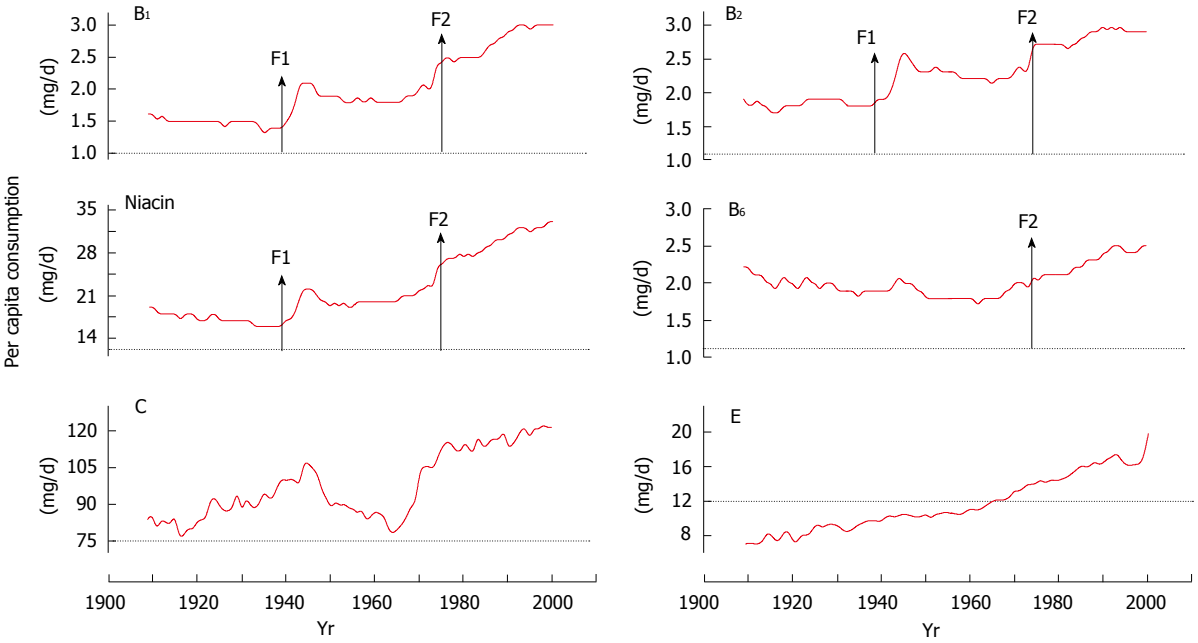


Figure 2 United States per capita daily vitamin consumption in 1909-2000. Data are from the Economic Research Service of the United States Department of Agriculture (http://search.ers.usda.gov/search?affiliate=ers&query=nutrients.xls). Red line indicates per capita consumption. Dot line indicates EAR. F1: Initiation of flour fortification; F2: Update of nutrient fortification standards for breakfast cereals in 1974[84]; EAR: The estimated daily average requirement.

Table 4 Obesity rate in selected countries with different wheat flour fortification policies

Country	Food policy	Standard (mg/kg flour, min)			Obesity rate in children
		Niacin	Vitamin B_1	Vitamin B_2	
Canada	Mandatory[1]	52.9	6.4	4	9-10[4]
United States	Mandatory[1]	52.9	6.4	4	6.8[5]
Kuwait	Mandatory[1]	52.9	6.4	4	14.6[6]
Saudi Arabia	Mandatory[1]	52.9	6.4	4	6-6.7[7]
United Kingdom	Mandatory[1]	16	2.4	0	5.1[5]
Finland	Prohibited[2]	0	0	0	2.5[5]
Norway	Prohibited[2]	0	0	0	2.2[5]
France	Prohibited[3]	0	0	0	1.6[5]

[1]Reference 36; [2]Reference 19; [3]Reference 42; [4]Reference 43, children (7-13 years) in 1996; [5]Reference 44, children (10 to 16 years) in 2001-2002; [6]Reference 45, children (10 to 14 years) in 2005-2006; [7]Reference 46 Children (1 to 18 years).

synthetic vitamins. The major differences include: (1) Different vitamin exposure among countries. Food fortification has caused significant differences in daily synthetic-vitamin consumption among countries due to different fortification policies and fortification standards[19], as shown in Table 4. Nationwide exposure to fortified foods in developing countries occurs much later than in developed countries[19], *e.g.*, it was not until 1994 that China began mandatory fortification[41]; (2) Different vitamin exposure among groups within countries. Wheat flour is fortified with B vitamins. Thus, those who use wheat flour products as staple foods possibly consume a higher amount of synthetic B vitamins. Vitamin-fortified foods are cheaper than fresh and natural foods in developed countries[34,47], which may lead to a higher intake of synthetic vitamins in low SES groups than in high SES groups in these countries[47,48]. In contrast, in developing countries, those who live in urban areas may consume more fortified foods than those who live in rural areas[49,50]. Infant formula milk (Table 3) and children foods (*e.g.*, ready-to-eat cereals[34]) are highly fortified with vitamins. Thus, infants fed formula milk and children are likely to have excess vitamin intake, as reported in the literature[51-54]; and (3) Different tolerance to fortified foods among population groups. Water-soluble vitamins can be eliminated through sweat[27,28]. Thus, under the same conditions of high vitamin intake, people who often sweat (*e.g.*, doing physical work and/or living in hot regions) may have a lower risk of excess accumulation of water-soluble vitamins in the body than those who rarely sweat (*e.g.*, living a sedentary life and/or in cold regions).

VITAMIN FORTIFICATION AND OBESITY PREVALENCE

Although there are few studies linking the increased prevalence of obesity to vitamin fortification, existing evidence suggests that high-risk populations are those who are most likely to have an increased intake of synthetic vitamins and decreased vitamin elimination, *e.g.*, populations in fortified countries[6], individuals with low SES in developed countries[6-10] or with high SES in developing countries[11,12,55], formula-fed infants[15-17], and those who live in fortified countries with less rigorous physical activity[56-59].

The prevalence of obesity varies from country to country. It seems that this variation may be related to dif-

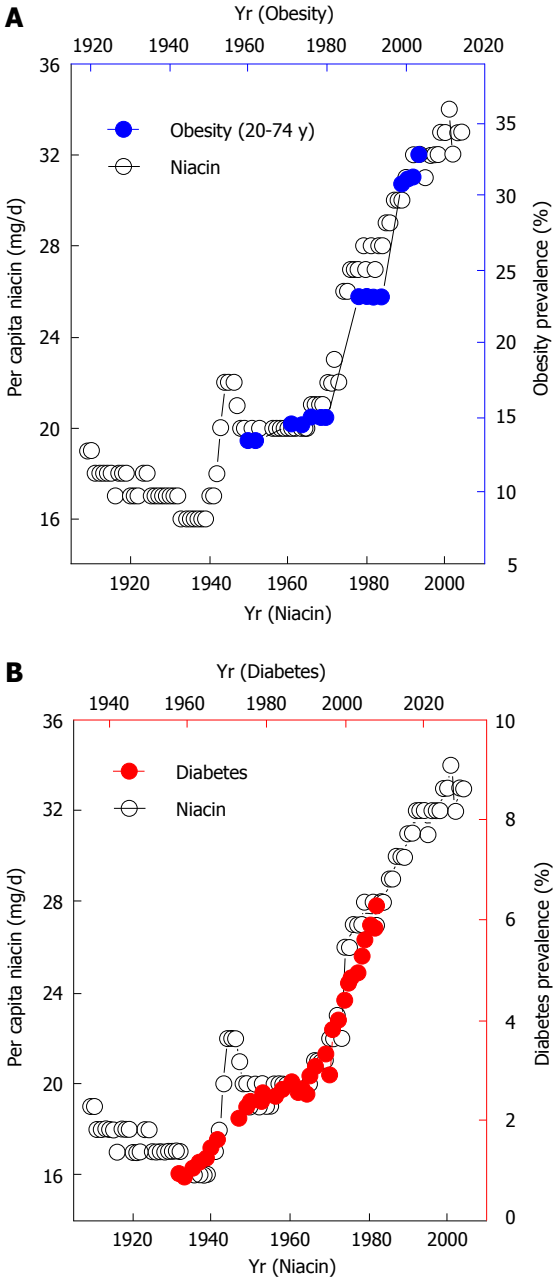


Figure 3 Lagged correlations between United States per capita niacin consumption and the prevalence of obesity and diabetes. The lag time between per capita niacin consumption and the prevalence of obesity and diabetes is 10 (A) and 26 years (B), respectively[25,26].

ferent food fortification policies and standards among countries. As shown in Table 4, the ranking of countries according to their prevalence of child obesity is similar to the ranking by the fortification standards of B vitamins. Evidently, flour fortification prohibited countries have a low prevalence of obesity, while countries with high flour fortification standard have high rates of obesity. Over the past few decades, food fortification has spread from developed countries to developing countries[19]. Therefore, it is possible that the spread of obesity from developed countries to developing countries may reflect the time sequence of implementing food fortification with vitamins.

Implementation of a vitamin fortification policy in a country will surely cause a sudden nationwide increase in vitamin intake in a short period. The initiation of food fortification with B vitamins in the late 1930s-1940s and the update of fortification standards in the 1970s in developed countries led to three phases in the consumption of vitamin B_1, B_2 and niacin: a rapid increase in the 1940s, followed by a plateau period between the 1950s and the 1960s and a steep increase thereafter, as shown in Figure 2. Available evidence has suggested an association between these food events and the prevalence of obesity. Two birth cohort studies conducted in Switzerland[60] and Denmark[61] showed that there was a significant increase in the prevalence of being overweight and obesity which occurred mainly in the cohorts born in the 1930s and the 1940s and in the cohorts born in the late 1960s to the 1970s. A Fels longitudinal study also showed that the child obesity epidemic in the United States is a sudden event that started in the 1970s and the 1980s[62]. A similar phenomenon is also seen in Saudi Arabia. Saudi Arabia started wheat flour fortification in the 1970s[63]. Following its food system change, Saudi Arabia experienced a rapid increase in obesity rates in the 1980s and the 1990s, and its obesity rate in schoolboys sharply increased from 3.4% in 1988 to 24.5% in 2005[64]. Our ecological studies clearly showed that there are strong lagged correlations between United States per capita consumption of B vitamins (B_1, B_2 and niacin) and the prevalence of obesity and diabetes[25,26]. Figure 3 clearly shows that both the initiation of food fortification in the 1940s and the update of fortification standards in 1974 are followed by a sharp increase in diabetes prevalence. The update of fortification standards followed a sharp rise in obesity prevalence.

As mentioned above, low SES groups in developed countries but high SES groups in developing counties may have a high synthetic vitamin intake from fortified foods. This may explain the findings that obesity is more prevalent in low SES groups in developed countries[6-10] but in high SES groups in developing countries[10-12,55]. Formula-fed infants have a high vitamin intake. Studies have demonstrated that formula-fed infants have a higher plasma level of vitamins compared with human milk-fed infants[51-53]. It is known that formula feeding[65-67] and micronutrient-fortified human milk feeding[68,69] can lead to rapid infant weight gain, a known major risk factor for children developing obesity[70-72]. Therefore, excess vitamin intake may mediate the link between formula feeding and childhood obesity.

In most developed countries, the energy expenditure needed for daily life has decreased since the beginning of the 20th century because of increasing mechanization, urbanization, motorization and computerization[4]. However, it is only since the 1970s, when food fortification standards were dramatically increased, that obesity prevalence has risen substantially. Moreover, although formula feeding is associated with an increased risk for obesity[15-17], there is no evidence indicating that there is a decrease in energy expenditure in formula-fed infants compared with breast-fed infants[73,74]. Instead, evidence shows that formula-fed infants may have higher total

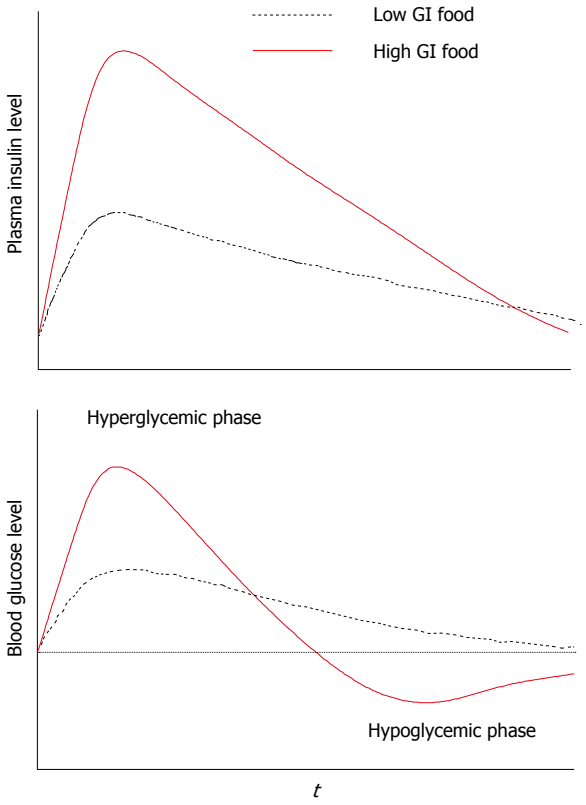


Figure 4 Typical glycemic responses to ingestion of a high glycemic index food and a low glycemic index I food. This figure is based on literature data[85-87]. GI: Glycemic index.

daily energy expenditure[13,14]. These data suggest that increased B vitamin intake rather than decreased energy expenditure may play a major role in the development of obesity. On the other hand, many studies, especially those conducted in highly B vitamin fortified countries, such as the United States[56], Canada[57], Saudi Arabia[58] and Kuwait[59], found that moderate to vigorous physical activity is associated with a reduced risk of obesity. It is proposed that this association may involve increased elimination of vitamins through sweat because moderate to vigorous physical activity can increase the sweat rate[28]. We have demonstrated that excess nicotinamide can be rapidly removed through sweating[75]. Sweat-mediated elimination of nicotinamide may be a crucial factor in preventing nicotinamide toxicity because human kidneys hardly excrete nicotinamide due to the reabsorption of renal tubules[76]. Therefore, it is conceivable that under the same conditions of high vitamin intake, those individuals who live a life that inhibits the activity of sweat glands (*e.g.*, physical inactivity) may be at greater risk of obesity. From this point of view, black people should be more sensitive to excess vitamins than whites, because the activity of sweat glands of blacks is lower than that of whites in the same temperature environment[77]. There is evidence showing that black women may have lower levels of physical activity than black men[78]. This may explain why obesity prevalence is greater in blacks, especially black women, than in whites in the United States[79,80]. Taken together, it may be concluded that food fortification-induced high intake of vitamins, especially B vitamins, may be responsible for the increased global prevalence of obesity.

MECHANISM OF EXCESS VITAMINS-INDUCED OBESITY

Many vitamins are known to act as coenzymes or as parts of enzymes responsible for essential chemical reactions, *e.g.*, the synthesis of fat and neurotransmitters. Excess vitamins may also affect the degradation of neurotransmitters and one-carbon metabolism. Therefore, excess vitamins may trigger obesity through multiple ways, including increasing fat synthesis, causing insulin resistance, disturbing neurotransmitter metabolism and inducing epigenetic changes.

B vitamins enhance fat synthesis

Obesity involves an accumulation of excess body fat. Early studies have already demonstrated that B vitamins play a crucial role in fat synthesis and there is a synergistic effect of B vitamins on fat synthesis. Vitamin B_1 and B_6 are required for the synthesis of fat from carbohydrate and protein[21-23] and their effects on fat synthesis are enhanced by the presence of other B vitamins. Vitamin B_6 administered together with B_1, B_2 and B_5 (pantothenic acid) resulted in a significant increase in body fat in rats[22]. Niacin has been found to increase daily feed intake, weight gain and percentage of abdominal fat in chicken when increasing supplementation from 0 to 60 mg nicotinic acid per kilogram diet[24]. It has been found that formula feeding leads to more fat gain, which may account for increased risk of later obesity[81,82]. Considering that formulas contain high levels of B vitamins (Table 3) that are a known factor increasing fat synthesis, we therefore propose that formula feeding-induced fat gain may be due to excess vitamins. Taken together, existing evidence suggests that excess vitamins, especially B vitamins, may play a role in the development of obesity.

Excess vitamins cause insulin resistance

Insulin resistance, a characteristic of obesity and type 2 diabetes[83], is a condition in which the tissues of the body do not respond appropriately to normal levels of insulin. It is known that glycemic and insulin responses are related to food. Foods can be classified by their glycemic index (GI, a relative measure of the incremental glucose response per gram of carbohydrate)[84]. Figure 4 shows the different glycemic and insulin responses to low GI food and high GI food. The typical glycemic response to high GI foods is a biphasic response, with an initial significantly higher blood glucose and insulin level (hyperglycemic phase) followed by significantly lower blood glucose level (postprandial reactive hypoglycemic phase)[85-87]. Postprandial reactive hypoglycemia stimulates appetite and may lead to increased caloric intake[86,88,89]. Therefore, it may be particularly important to understand how high GI foods induce a biphasic glycemic response.

Grain foods are a major source of carbohydrates.

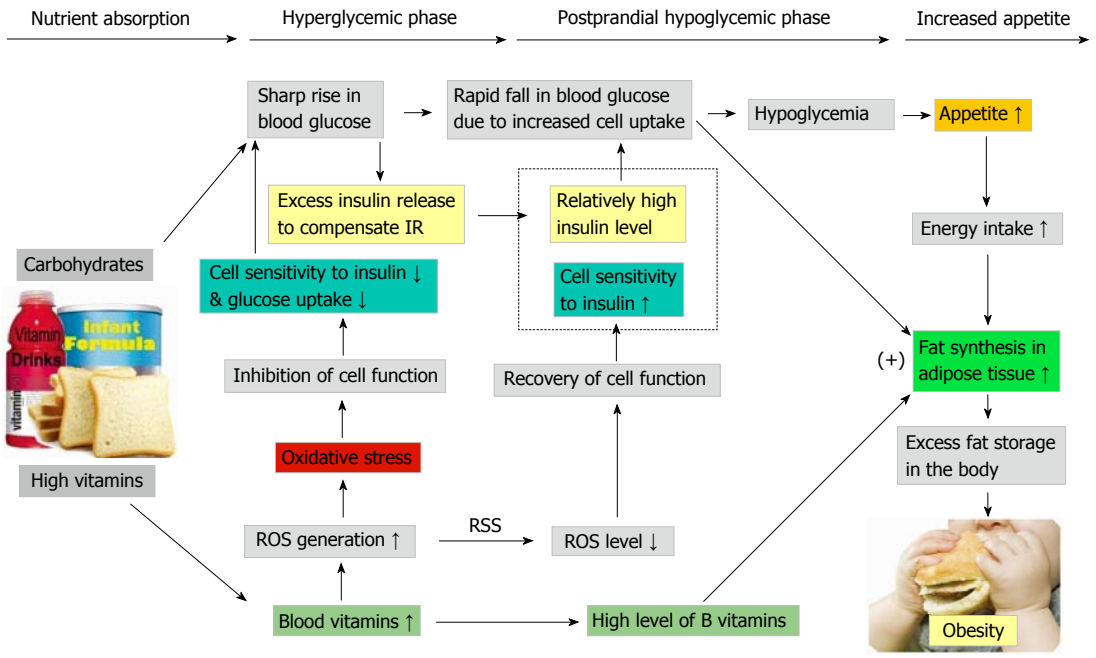


Figure 5 Proposed mechanism of excess vitamins-induced obesity. The absorption of sugar stimulates the release of insulin, while absorbed excess vitamins (from vitamin-fortified foods and drinks) generate ROS, leading to a decrease in the sensitivity of peripheral tissues to insulin (*i.e.,* insulin resistance). To compensate the insulin resistance, additional insulin has to be secreted, resulting in a high blood insulin level. Then, the sensitivity of peripheral tissues recovered with the rapid clearance of ROS, consequently, relatively high insulin level causes a rapid decrease in blood glucose due to increased glucose uptake, which may trigger excess energy intake. The conversion of glucose to fat in adipose tissue is promoted by high levels of B vitamins. Therefore, long-term consumption of vitamin fortified foods (including formulas) and drinks may cause fat accumulation in the body and subsequent obesity. ROS: Reactive oxygen species; RSS: ROS scavenging system.

Historically, high grain intake was associated with a low incidence of obesity. However, over the past few decades, refined (processed) grains became high GI foods[86,90,91]. Many processed grains (*e.g.,* white bread) produce even higher glycemic responses than simple sugars[86]. It seems that the effect of refined grains is not merely a matter of increased rate of digestion and absorption of carbohydrate, but a matter of increased insulin resistance. Grain foods are used as a vehicle of B vitamin fortification. Therefore, it is possible that the increased GI of processed grains may be due to their increased levels of B vitamins. Among the B vitamins fortified in foods, niacin is known to induce insulin resistance and glucose intolerance[92-95]. Nicotinamide is the most common form of niacin used in food fortification and infant formula supplementation (*e.g.,* Table 3). A study compared the glycemic and insulin responses of healthy subjects to glucose alone and glucose plus nicotinamide. The result showed that glucose plus nicotinamide significantly increased the levels of plasma insulin and hydrogen peroxide [a major component of reactive oxygen species (ROS)], followed by reactive hypoglycemia and hunger[26]. This study suggested for the first time that drinking nicotinamide-containing sugar-sweetened beverages may induce insulin resistance and nicotinamide fortification may contribute to the increased GI of refined grains.

It is known that increased ROS levels (*i.e.*, oxidative stress) may play a causal role in insulin resistance[96,97]. We therefore hypothesize that oxidative stress may mediate the effect of nicotinamide. The mechanism may be as follows. After glucose and nicotinamide are absorbed into the circulation, increased blood glucose level stimulates insulin secretion, while increased nicotinamide level may induce oxidative stress due to increased ROS generation (as found in Ref 26), leading to a decrease in cell functions, including insulin signaling (*i.e.*, insulin resistance). This results in a sharp increase in the level of blood glucose, which stimulates more insulin release (hyperglycemic phase). The clearance of ROS is more rapid than that of insulin. With the rapid clearance of ROS, cell response to insulin recovers quickly and as a result, the uptake of glucose by tissues (including adipose tissue) increases rapidly in response to relatively high insulin, which thus leads to a rapid fall in the level of blood glucose (hypoglycemic phase). Hypoglycemia initiates the feeling of hunger and subsequent feeding behavior. As mentioned above, B vitamins promote fat synthesis from carbohydrates. Thus, the cooperation of increased glucose uptake in the hypoglycemic phase and increased fat synthesis by high levels of B vitamins may induce excess fat storage and subsequent obesity (Figure 5). Unfortunately, the insulin resistance-inducing and obesity-promoting effects of B vitamins might have long been underestimated because traditional laboratory tests (*e.g.,* glucose tolerance test) are usually performed under fasting conditions, in which most, if not all, of increased ROS produced in the degradation of excess vitamins must have been cleared up after overnight fasting. For example, we found that oral nicotinamide (300 mg) induced increase in circulating hydrogen peroxide had returned to normal at 3 h[26].

It has been demonstrated in rats that the weight/fat gain-promoting effect of B vitamins is more efficient

when given in successive doses (added to the diet, like human food fortification) than in periodic doses[98]. This may explain why obesity prevalence significantly increased after the implementation of grain fortification with B vitamins. Because consumption of B vitamins-fortified foods may increase the burden of pancreatic islet B-cells, it is conceivable that obesity is closely associated with type 2 diabetes. In addition, other vitamins, even those that have antioxidant function (*e.g.,* vitamin C and E[99]), when used in large doses can increase ROS generation. Thus, high consumption of other vitamins may also contribute to the development of obesity. The relationship between dietary carbohydrates, excess vitamins, oxidative stress, insulin resistance, postprandial hypoglycemia, increased appetite and the development of obesity is proposed in Figure 5.

From the excess vitamin point of view, it may be easy to understand why the price of fast food, which determines the consumption of synthetic vitamins from fast food, may affect the body mass index of teens with low SES[100] and why vitamin-rich formulas[15-17] and sugar-sweetened beverages may increase the risk for obesity and type 2 diabetes[17,37,101,102]. It is interesting that some overweight children become overweight adults, while others do not[103]. One possible explanation for this may be a changing vitamin intake during the lifetime. Whether obese infants become obese children and then obese adults may to a large degree depends on the intake of vitamins after weaning. In theory, infants, even with normal body weight, may become obese adults if they always consume high vitamin-fortified foods (*e.g.,* refined grains) after weaning. We therefore recommend that the role of vitamin intake be taken into consideration in the study of the relationship between infant obesity and later obesity.

Excess vitamins may disturb neurotransmitter metabolism

Food intake is regulated by many neurotransmitters, including monoamine neurotransmitters (*e.g.,* dopamine and serotonin[104,105]) in the central nervous system. Therefore, factors that affect monoamine neurotransmitters may affect feeding behavior. Some vitamins are known to play an important role in the synthesis of monoamine neurotransmitters (serotonin and catecholamines). For example, vitamin B_6 is a cofactor for aromatic L-amino acid decarboxylase that catalyzes the formation of serotonin and dopamine[106]. Vitamin C enhances norepinephrine synthesis from dopamine by neuronal cells[107]. L-methylfolate, a derivate of the vitamin folate, also regulates the synthesis of the monoamine neurotransmitters serotonin, dopamine and norepinephrine[108].

Although small amount of vitamins can be directly eliminated through the urine, sweat[27,28,75] and sebum (such as vitamin E[29,30]), most of them usually undergo a series of phase I (oxidation, reduction and hydrolysis) and phase Ⅱ (conjugation, including glutathione conjugation, sulfation, methylation and glucuronidation) biotransformation before elimination from the body. As a result, vitamin degradation produces many metabolites. For example, at least 18 metabolites of vitamin B_1 are identified in the urine, of which six are major[109]. Niacin is degraded mainly to a number of methylated metabolites[110]. Vitamin C is degraded through sulfation[111] and glutathione conjugation[112]. Vitamin E also undergoes extensive metabolism and its conjugated metabolites (including sulfated) are also identified[113]. Because vitamins and neurotransmitters share the same biotransformation and detoxification system in the body[106,114], excess vitamins may affect the degradation of neurotransmitters by competing for the detoxification resources. For example, vitamin C has been known to inhibit the sulfation of other chemicals by competing for limited sulfate[111]. Although there are no systematic studies on the effect of vitamin fortification on the degradation of neurotransmitters, evidence has shown that excess vitamin C[115,116] and nicotinamide[117] can inhibit the degradation of catecholamines by depletion of sulfate and methyl groups, respectively. Thus, in theory, the effect of vitamins on the metabolism of monoamine neurotransmitters may affect the function of the nervous system. It is known that niacin can stimulate appetite. Niacin deficiency (*i.e.*, pellagra) is associated with a loss of appetite[118], which might involve changes in neurotransmitter metabolism in the brain.

Excess vitamins-induced obesity may involve epigenetic changes

Epigenetic changes are biochemical modifications that affect gene expression without changing the sequence of DNA. Emerging evidence suggests that epigenetic mechanisms may play a role in the development of obesity[119]. Epigenetic mechanisms involve an environment-gene interaction[120,121]. Nutrition is a crucial environmental factor which affects health and disease. Both maternal undernutrition and overnutrition can induce persistent changes in gene expression and metabolism[120]. Over the past few decades, one of the biggest changes in our food system has been the extensive use of synthetic vitamins. Therefore, it is possible that excess vitamin intake may contribute to epigenetic changes.

DNA methylation, which occurs at cytosine residues in CpG dinucleotides in gene promoters, is one of several epigenetic modifications[122]. The primary function of DNA methylation is to suppress gene expression. Global DNA hypomethylation increases genomic instability[122]. Although the mechanism of global DNA hypomethylation is not well understood, a lack of methyl groups may play a role in abnormal DNA methylation, because an adequate supply of methyl groups is a prerequisite for DNA methylation[123]. The biotransformation of some vitamins, especially niacin[117], may increase the demand for labile methyl groups and therefore, an excess intake of these vitamins may disturb DNA methylation by competing methyl groups. Recently, we tested this possibility by investigating the effect of nicotinamide supplementation on DNA methylation in rats and found that long-term high nicotinamide exposure led to a decrease in the methyl pool and in the levels of hepatic DNA methylation associated with alteration of gene expression[123]. Moreover,

maternal nicotinamide supplementation is also found to disturb fetal one-carbon metabolism in rats, including decreased global DNA methylation and decreased DNA uracil content in the brain and liver[124]. These data indicate that excess vitamins may be an important factor leading to epigenetic changes. The role of vitamin fortification in the development of methylation-related diseases is an open question.

NON-MONOTONIC EFFECT OF VITAMINS ON WEIGHT GAIN

Although it is known that B vitamins promote fat synthesis and vitamin-fortified foods and formulas increase the risk for obesity, why is there so little attention to the relationship between excess vitamin intake and obesity prevalence? A possible reason may be due to ignorance of the fact that the effect of vitamins on weight gain is non-monotonic. While vitamins are an important weight gain-promoting factor, at toxic levels they are no longer associated with weight gain or even cause weight loss.

It has long been known that many micronutrients (vitamins and minerals) are essential for life at low concentrations but become toxic at high concentrations. This phenomenon is termed Bertrand's rule[125]. The effect of vitamins on weight gain also follows this Bertrand's rule. We may take the weight-gain effect of niacin as an example. Jiang and colleagues[24] investigated the effects of dietary supplemental nicotinic acid at different doses (0, 30, 60 and 120 mg/kg diet) on the growth performance of chicken. They found that increasing supplementation from 0 to 60 mg nicotinic acid/kg tended to increase the average daily feed intake, weight gain and fat gain, *i.e.,* the maximum weight and fat gain was achieved at 60 mg/kg diet. Ivers and Veum found that among the doses used (6, 10, 14, 18, 22 and 44 mg/kg diet with adequate Trp), 14 mg of niacin/kg produced maximum weight gain in growing pigs[126]. Shibata *et al*[127] studied the effect of nicotinamide at doses of 0, 60, 1000 and 5000 mg/kg diet on rat weight gain. Their result showed that nicotinamide increased the food intake of rats, especially in the groups fed diet containing 60 and 1000 mg/kg of nicotinamide. The highest weight gain was observed at 60 mg/kg, while high-dose nicotinamide (5000 mg/kg diet) led to an inhibition of weight gain at the early stage of exposure due to its toxicity. These animal studies suggest that the supplemental dose for niacin to achieve maximum weight-gain effect may be around or less than 60 mg/kg diet. This dose is similar to that used in wheat flour fortification in some countries, *e.g.,* the United States, Canada, Saudi Arabia and Kuwait (Table 4). Thus, food fortification with niacin in these countries might have induced a maximum weight gain effect. In this case, further supplementation with niacin or niacin-containing multivitamin may offset the weight gain effect due to increased toxic effects, such as hepatotoxicity[128-131] and oxidative tissue damage[123]. This may account for the observations that further multivitamin supplementation in the United States[132] and Canada[133] or large-dose niacin treatment for dyslipidemia (1-3 g/d)[134,135] does not show weight gain.

Some other vitamins at high doses may also have toxic effects, including death. Davis *et al*[136] found that sudden infant death syndrome (a sudden and unexplained infant death) was association with high serum thiamin levels. A randomized controlled trial on vitamin C supplementation in very preterm infants showed that the infants who died in the trial were those who had significantly higher level of plasma vitamin C before randomization than surviving infants[137]. A systematic review and meta-analysis showed that long-term supplementation with beta carotene, vitamin A and vitamin E may increase mortality[138]. Therefore, it is not surprising that multivitamin supplementation in those who live in high-dose vitamin-fortified countries, *e.g.,* the United States[132] and Canada[133], may be associated with a slight weight loss. A similar phenomenon has been also observed in formula-fed infants. It has been found that formula feeding can lead to a more rapid weight gain, especially fat gain[81,82], compared to human milk feeding[17,65,67]. However, when formulas were further enriched with vitamins, their weight-gain effect was decreased rather than increased, compared with the standard formulas[139]. It seems clear that the weight-gain effect of vitamins has already been saturated at fortification doses used in infant formulas, children and adult foods, while further increasing the doses (*i.e.*, fortification plus additional supplementation) may induce a weight-loss effect due to the toxic effect. Considering that high vitamin intake which may cause hepatotoxicity (*e.g.,* niacin, as mentioned above) is very popular nowadays, we suggest that high vitamin intake may contribute to non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, the most frequent chronic liver disease in developed countries[140].

CONCLUSION

Since the late 1930s, when synthetic vitamins were first used, the human being has experienced the largest growth in vitamin intake in human history. It is possible that excess vitamins, especially B vitamins, may contribute to the development of obesity. Vitamin-rich formulas and food fortification with vitamins may, to a large extent, be responsible for the increased prevalence of obesity over the past several decades. Different fortification policies and standards may account for the differences in the prevalence between countries, while disparities in the consumption of fortified foods may contribute to the disparities in obesity between population groups within a country. Staple food fortification may be of great harm because it leads to a sustained high vitamin intake. Therefore, given that there has been a significant increase in vitamin supply from natural sources, it is necessary and urgent to review and modify the standards of vitamin fortification.

REFERENCES

1 **Hossain P**, Kawar B, El Nahas M. Obesity and diabetes in the

developing world--a growing challenge. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 213-215 [PMID: 17229948 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMp068177]
2 **Cote AT**, Harris KC, Panagiotopoulos C, Sandor GG, Devlin AM. Childhood obesity and cardiovascular dysfunction. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2013; **62**: 1309-1319 [PMID: 23954339 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2013.07.042]
3 **Sassi F**, Devaux M, Cecchini M, Rusticelli E. The obesity epidemic: analysis of past and projected future trends in selected OECD countries. Paris: Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), Directorate for Employment, Labour And Social Affairs, Health Committee, 2009
4 **Swinburn BA**, Sacks G, Hall KD, McPherson K, Finegood DT, Moodie ML, Gortmaker SL. The global obesity pandemic: shaped by global drivers and local environments. *Lancet* 2011; **378**: 804-814 [PMID: 21872749 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)60813-1]
5 **Malik VS**, Willett WC, Hu FB. Global obesity: trends, risk factors and policy implications. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 2013; **9**: 13-27 [PMID: 23165161 DOI: 10.1038/nrendo.2012.199]
6 **Phipps SA**, Burton PS, Osberg LS, Lethbridge LN. Poverty and the extent of child obesity in Canada, Norway and the United States. *Obes Rev* 2006; **7**: 5-12 [PMID: 16436098 DOI: 10.1111/j.1467-789X.2006.00217.x]
7 **Wang Y**, Lim H. The global childhood obesity epidemic and the association between socio-economic status and childhood obesity. *Int Rev Psychiatry* 2012; **24**: 176-188 [PMID: 22724639 DOI: 10.3109/09540261.2012.688195]
8 **Ogden CL**, Lamb MM, Carroll MD, Flegal KM. Obesity and socioeconomic status in children and adolescents: United States, 2005-2008. *NCHS Data Brief* 2010; (**51**): 1-8 [PMID: 21211166]
9 **Singh GK**, Siahpush M, Kogan MD. Rising social inequalities in US childhood obesity, 2003-2007. *Ann Epidemiol* 2010; **20**: 40-52 [PMID: 20006275 DOI: 10.1016/j.annepidem.2009.09.008]
10 **McLaren L**. Socioeconomic status and obesity. *Epidemiol Rev* 2007; **29**: 29-48 [PMID: 17478442 DOI: 10.1093/epirev/mxm001]
11 **Monteiro CA**, Moura EC, Conde WL, Popkin BM. Socioeconomic status and obesity in adult populations of developing countries: a review. *Bull World Health Organ* 2004; **82**: 940-946 [PMID: 15654409]
12 **Dinsa GD**, Goryakin Y, Fumagalli E, Suhrcke M. Obesity and socioeconomic status in developing countries: a systematic review. *Obes Rev* 2012; **13**: 1067-1079 [PMID: 22764734 DOI: 10.1111/j.1467-789X.2012.01017.x]
13 **Lubetzky R**, Vaisman N, Mimouni FB, Dollberg S. Energy expenditure in human milk- versus formula-fed preterm infants. *J Pediatr* 2003; **143**: 750-753 [PMID: 14657822 DOI: 10.1067/S0022-3476(03)00532-8]
14 **Guilfoy VM**, Wright-Coltart S, Leitch CA, Denne SC. Energy expenditure in extremely low birth weight infants near time of hospital discharge. *J Pediatr* 2008; **153**: 612-615 [PMID: 18657827 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2008.05.041]
15 **Owen CG**, Martin RM, Whincup PH, Smith GD, Cook DG. Effect of infant feeding on the risk of obesity across the life course: a quantitative review of published evidence. *Pediatrics* 2005; **115**: 1367-1377 [PMID: 15867049 DOI: 10.1542/peds.2004-1176]
16 **Gibbs** BG, Forste R. Socioeconomic status, infant feeding practices and early childhood obesity. *Pediatr Obes* 2013 Apr 2; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 23554385 DOI: 10.1111/j.2047-6310.2013.00155.x]
17 **Davis** JN, Koleilat M, Shearrer GE, Whaley SE. Association of infant feeding and dietary intake on obesity prevalence in low-income toddlers. *Obesity* (Silver Spring) 2013 Oct 12; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24123802 DOI: 10.1002/oby.20644]
18 **Richardson DP**. Food fortification. *Proc Nutr Soc* 1990; **49**: 39-50 [PMID: 2190226 DOI: 10.1079/PNS19900007]
19 **Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations**. Food Fortification: Technology and Quality Control. FAO Food And Nutrition Paper-60, 1996. Available from: URL: http: //www.fao.org/docrep/w2840e/w2840e03.htm
20 **Backstrand JR**. The history and future of food fortification in the United States: a public health perspective. *Nutr Rev* 2002; **60**: 15-26 [PMID: 11842999 DOI: 10.1301/002966402760240390]
21 **McHenry EW**, Gavin G. The B vitamins and fat metabolism: I. Effects of thiamin, riboflavin, and rice polish concentrate upon body fat. *J Biol Chem* 1938; **125**: 653-660
22 **McHenry EW**, Gavin G. The B vitamins and fat metabolism: IV. The synthesis of fat from protein. *J Biol Chem* 1941; **138**: 471-475
23 **CARTER CW**, PHIZACKERLEY PJ. The influence of pyridoxine on fat metabolism in the rat. *Biochem J* 1951; **49**: 227-232 [PMID: 14858316]
24 **Jiang RR**, Zhao GP, Chen JL, Zheng MQ, Zhao JP, Li P, Hu J, Wen J. Effect of dietary supplemental nicotinic acid on growth performance, carcass characteristics and meat quality in three genotypes of chicken. *J Anim Physiol Anim Nutr* (Berl) 2011; **95**: 137-145 [PMID: 20666866 DOI: 10.1111/j.1439-0396.2010.01031.x]
25 **Zhou SS**, Li D, Zhou YM, Sun WP, Liu QG. B-vitamin consumption and the prevalence of diabetes and obesity among the US adults: population based ecological study. *BMC Public Health* 2010; **10**: 746 [PMID: 21126339 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-10-746]
26 **Li D**, Sun WP, Zhou YM, Liu QG, Zhou SS, Luo N, Bian FN, Zhao ZG, Guo M. Chronic niacin overload may be involved in the increased prevalence of obesity in US children. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 2378-2387 [PMID: 20480523 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i19.2378]
27 **LUGG JW**, ELLIS FP. Some water-soluble vitamins in the sweat of tropically acclimatized European men. *Br J Nutr* 1954; **8**: 71-77 [PMID: 13140831]
28 **Zhou SS**, Li D, Zhou YM, Cao JM. The skin function: a factor of anti-metabolic syndrome. *Diabetol Metab Syndr* 2012; **4**: 15 [PMID: 22537765 DOI: 10.1186/1758-5996-4-15]
29 **Passi S**, De Pità O, Grandinetti M, Simotti C, Littarru GP. The combined use of oral and topical lipophilic antioxidants increases their levels both in sebum and stratum corneum. *Biofactors* 2003; **18**: 289-297 [PMID: 14695946]
30 **Ekanayake-Mudiyanselage S**, Kraemer K, Thiele JJ. Oral supplementation with all-Rac- and RRR-alpha-tocopherol increases vitamin E levels in human sebum after a latency period of 14-21 days. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2004; **1031**: 184-194 [PMID: 15753144 DOI: 10.1196/annals.1331.017]
31 **Sato K**. The physiology, pharmacology, and biochemistry of the eccrine sweat gland. *Rev Physiol Biochem Pharmacol* 1977; **79**: 51-131 [PMID: 21440]
32 **Piérard-Franchimont C**, Piérard GE, Kligman A. Seasonal modulation of sebum excretion. *Dermatologica* 1990; **181**: 21-22 [PMID: 2394299]
33 **Pemberton J**. Medical experiments carried out in Sheffield on conscientious objectors to military service during the 1939-45 war. *Int J Epidemiol* 2006; **35**: 556-558 [PMID: 16510534 DOI: 10.1093/ije/dyl020]
34 **Gerrior S**, Bente L, Hiza H. Nutrient Content of the U.S. Food Supply, 1909-2000 (Home Economics Research Report No. 56), 2004. Available from: URL: http: //www.cnpp.usda.gov/publications/foodsupply/foodsupply1909-2000.pdf
35 **Popkin BM**. Nutrition in transition: the changing global nutrition challenge. *Asia Pac J Clin Nutr* 2001; **10** Suppl: S13-S18 [PMID: 11708577 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-6047.2001.0100s1S13.x]
36 **Wesley** A, Ranum P. FORTIFICATION HANDBOOK: Vitamin and mineral fortification of wheat flour and maize meal. 2004: 35-36. Available from: URL: http: //www.micronutrient.org/resources/publications/Fort_handbook.pdf
37 **Malik** VS, Hu FB. Sweeteners and risk of obesity and type

2 diabetes: the role of sugar-sweetened beverages. *Curr Diab Rep* 2012; **12**: 195-203 [PMID: 22289979 DOI: 10.1007/s11892-012-0259-6]
38 **Fomon S**. Infant feeding in the 20th century: formula and beikost. *J Nutr* 2001; **131**: 409S-420S [PMID: 11160571]
39 **Koletzko B**, Baker S, Cleghorn G, Neto UF, Gopalan S, Hernell O, Hock QS, Jirapinyo P, Lonnerdal B, Pencharz P, Pzyrembel H, Ramirez-Mayans J, Shamir R, Turck D, Yamashiro Y, Zong-Yi D. Global standard for the composition of infant formula: recommendations of an ESPGHAN coordinated international expert group. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2005; **41**: 584-599 [PMID: 16254515]
40 PUBLIC LAW 96-359-SEPT. 26, 1980. Available from: URL: http: //www.history.nih.gov/research/downloads/PL96-359.pdf
41 **Pray CE**, Huang J. Biofortification for China: political responses to food fortification and GM technology, interest groups, and possible strategies. *AgBioForum* 2007; **10**: 161-169
42 **Bonner G**, Warwick H, Bmardo M, Lobstein T. Fortification examined: How added nutrients can undermine good nutrition. The Food Commission (UK) Ltd, London 1999. Available from: URL: http://www.foodcomm.org.uk/pdfs/fortification.PDF
43 **Tremblay MS**, Katzmarzyk PT, Willms JD. Temporal trends in overweight and obesity in Canada, 1981-1996. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord* 2002; **26**: 538-543 [PMID: 12075581]
44 **Janssen I**, Katzmarzyk PT, Boyce WF, Vereecken C, Mulvihill C, Roberts C, Currie C, Pickett W. Comparison of overweight and obesity prevalence in school-aged youth from 34 countries and their relationships with physical activity and dietary patterns. *Obes Rev* 2005; **6**: 123-132 [PMID: 15836463 DOI: 10.1111/j.1467-789X.2005.00176.x]
45 **El-Bayoumy I**, Shady I, Lotfy H. Prevalence of obesity among adolescents (10 to 14 years) in Kuwait. *Asia Pac J Public Health* 2009; **21**: 153-159 [PMID: 19190003 DOI: 10.1177/1010539509331786]
46 **El-Hazmi MA**, Warsy AS. A comparative study of prevalence of overweight and obesity in children in different provinces of Saudi Arabia. *J Trop Pediatr* 2002; **48**: 172-177 [PMID: 12164602 DOI: 10.1093/tropej/48.3.172]
47 **Drewnowski A**, Darmon N. The economics of obesity: dietary energy density and energy cost. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2005; **82** (1 Suppl): 265S-273S [PMID: 16002835]
48 **Thornton LE**, Bentley RJ, Kavanagh AM. Individual and area-level socioeconomic associations with fast food purchasing. *J Epidemiol Community Health* 2011; **65**: 873-880 [PMID: 20889585 DOI: 10.1136/jech.2009.099614]
49 **Imhoff-Kunsch B**, Flores R, Dary O, Martorell R. Wheat flour fortification is unlikely to benefit the neediest in Guatemala. *J Nutr* 2007; **137**: 1017-1022 [PMID: 17374670]
50 **Steyn NP**, Wolmarans P, Nel JH, Bourne LT. National fortification of staple foods can make a significant contribution to micronutrient intake of South African adults. *Public Health Nutr* 2008; **11**: 307-313 [PMID: 17610752]
51 **Smith AM**, Picciano MF, Deering RH. Folate intake and blood concentrations of term infants. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1985; **41**: 590-598 [PMID: 3976558]
52 **Davis RE**, Icke GC, Hilton JM, Orr E. Serum thiamin, pyridoxal, cobalamin and folate concentrations in young infants. *Acta Paediatr Scand* 1986; **75**: 402-407 [PMID: 3728001]
53 **Heiskanen K**, Salmenperä L, Perheentupa J, Siimes MA. Infant vitamin B-6 status changes with age and with formula feeding. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1994; **60**: 907-910 [PMID: 7985632]
54 **Hennessy Á**, Walton J, Flynn A. The impact of voluntary food fortification on micronutrient intakes and status in European countries: a review. *Proc Nutr Soc* 2013; **72**: 433-440 [PMID: 24020749 DOI: 10.1017/S002966511300339X]
55 **Zhang YX**, Wang SR. Rural-urban comparison in prevalence of overweight and obesity among adolescents in Shandong, China. *Ann Hum Biol* 2013; **40**: 294-297 [PMID: 23452337 DOI: 10.3109/03014460.2013.772654]
56 **Mitchell JA**, Mattocks C, Ness AR, Leary SD, Pate RR, Dowda M, Blair SN, Riddoch C. Sedentary behavior and obesity in a large cohort of children. *Obesity* (Silver Spring) 2009; **17**: 1596-1602 [PMID: 19247272 DOI: 10.1038/oby.2009.42]
57 **Chaput JP**, Lambert M, Mathieu ME, Tremblay MS, O' Loughlin J, Tremblay A. Physical activity vs. sedentary time: independent associations with adiposity in children. *Pediatr Obes* 2012; **7**: 251-258 [PMID: 22461356 DOI: 10.1111/j.2047-6310.2011.00028.x]
58 **Al-Hazzaa HM**, Abahussain NA, Al-Sobayel HI, Qahwaji DM, Musaiger AO. Physical activity, sedentary behaviors and dietary habits among Saudi adolescents relative to age, gender and region. *Int J Behav Nutr Phys Act* 2011; **8**: 140 [PMID: 22188825 DOI: 10.1186/1479-5868-8-140]
59 **Al-Haifi AR**, Al-Fayez MA, Al-Athari BI, Al-Ajmi FA, Allafi AR, Al-Hazzaa HM, Musaiger AO. Relative contribution of physical activity, sedentary behaviors, and dietary habits to the prevalence of obesity among Kuwaiti adolescents. *Food Nutr Bull* 2013; **34**: 6-13 [PMID: 23767276]
60 **Faeh D**, Bopp M. Increase in the prevalence of obesity in Switzerland 1982-2007: birth cohort analysis puts recent slowdown into perspective. *Obesity* (Silver Spring) 2010; **18**: 644-646 [PMID: 19779475 DOI: 10.1038/oby.2009.310]
61 **Olsen LW**, Baker JL, Holst C, Sørensen TI. Birth cohort effect on the obesity epidemic in Denmark. *Epidemiology* 2006; **17**: 292-295 [PMID: 16570023 DOI: 10.1097/01.ede.0000208349.16893.e0]
62 **von Hippel PT**, Nahhas RW. Extending the history of child obesity in the United States: The Fels Longitudinal Study, birth years 1930-1993. *Obesity* (Silver Spring) 2013; **21**: 2153-2156 [PMID: 23512972 DOI: 10.1002/oby.20395]
63 **WHO-EM/NUT/259/E**. Report on the Joint WHO/Flour Fortification Initiative harmonization workshop for wheat and maize flour fortification. Amman, Jordan, pp 4. Available from: URL: http: //applications.emro.who.int/docs/IC_Meet_Rep_2012_EN_14767.pdf
64 **Al-Hazzaa HM**. Prevalence and trends in obesity among school boys in Central Saudi Arabia between 1988 and 2005. *Saudi Med J* 2007; **28**: 1569-1574 [PMID: 17914521]
65 **Dewey KG**, Heinig MJ, Nommsen LA, Peerson JM, Lönnerdal B. Growth of breast-fed and formula-fed infants from 0 to 18 months: the DARLING Study. *Pediatrics* 1992; **89**: 1035-1041 [PMID: 1594343]
66 **Mihrshahi S**, Battistutta D, Magarey A, Daniels LA. Determinants of rapid weight gain during infancy: baseline results from the NOURISH randomised controlled trial. *BMC Pediatr* 2011; **11**: 99 [PMID: 22054415 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2431-11-99]
67 **Oddy WH**. Infant feeding and obesity risk in the child. *Breastfeed Rev* 2012; **20**: 7-12 [PMID: 22946146]
68 **Kuschel CA**, Harding JE. Multicomponent fortified human milk for promoting growth in preterm infants. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2004; (**1**): CD000343 [PMID: 14973953 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD000343.pub2]
69 **Gathwala G**, Chawla M, Gehlaut VS. Fortified human milk in the small for gestational age neonate. *Indian J Pediatr* 2007; **74**: 815-818 [PMID: 17901665]
70 **Dennison BA**, Edmunds LS, Stratton HH, Pruzek RM. Rapid infant weight gain predicts childhood overweight. *Obesity* (Silver Spring) 2006; **14**: 491-499 [PMID: 16648621 DOI: 10.1038/oby.2006.64]
71 **Ong KK**, Loos RJ. Rapid infancy weight gain and subsequent obesity: systematic reviews and hopeful suggestions. *Acta Paediatr* 2006; **95**: 904-908 [PMID: 16882560 DOI: 10.1080/08035250600719754]
72 **Leunissen RW**, Kerkhof GF, Stijnen T, Hokken-Koelega A. Timing and tempo of first-year rapid growth in relation to cardiovascular and metabolic risk profile in early adulthood. *JAMA* 2009; **301**: 2234-2242 [PMID: 19491185 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2009.761]
73 **Butte NF**, Wong WW, Ferlic L, Smith EO, Klein PD, Garza C. Energy expenditure and deposition of breast-fed and

formula-fed infants during early infancy. *Pediatr Res* 1990; **28**: 631-640 [PMID: 2284162 DOI: 10.1203/00006450-199012000-00019]
74 **Wells JC**, Davies PS. Diet and behavioural activity in 12-week-old infants. *Ann Hum Biol* 1995; **22**: 207-215 [PMID: 7574446]
75 **Zhou SS**, Li D, Sun WP, Guo M, Lun YZ, Zhou YM, Xiao FC, Jing LX, Sun SX, Zhang LB, Luo N, Bian FN, Zou W, Dong LB, Zhao ZG, Li SF, Gong XJ, Yu ZG, Sun CB, Zheng CL, Jiang DJ, Li ZN. Nicotinamide overload may play a role in the development of type 2 diabetes. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 5674-5684 [PMID: 19960564 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.5674]
76 **Knip M**, Douek IF, Moore WP, Gillmor HA, McLean AE, Bingley PJ, Gale EA. Safety of high-dose nicotinamide: a review. *Diabetologia* 2000; **43**: 1337-1345 [PMID: 11126400]
77 **THOMSON ML**. A comparison between the number and distribution of functioning eccrine sweat glands in Europeans and Africans. *J Physiol* 1954; **123**: 225-233 [PMID: 13143505]
78 **Dubbert PM**, Robinson JC, Sung JH, Ainsworth BE, Wyatt SB, Carithers T, Newton R, Rhudy JL, Barbour K, Sternfeld B, Taylor H. Physical activity and obesity in African Americans: the Jackson Heart Study. *Ethn Dis* 2010; **20**: 383-389 [PMID: 21305826]
79 **Ogden CL**. Disparities in obesity prevalence in the United States: black women at risk. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2009; **89**: 1001-1002 [PMID: 19244372 DOI: 10.3945/ajcn.2009.27592]
80 **Jackson CL**, Szklo M, Yeh HC, Wang NY, Dray-Spira R, Thorpe R, Brancati FL. Black-white disparities in overweight and obesity trends by educational attainment in the United States, 1997-2008. *J Obes* 2013; **2013**: 140743 [PMID: 23691282 DOI: 10.1155/2013/140743]
81 **Gale C**, Logan KM, Santhakumaran S, Parkinson JR, Hyde MJ, Modi N. Effect of breastfeeding compared with formula feeding on infant body composition: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2012; **95**: 656-669 [PMID: 22301930 DOI: 10.3945/ajcn.111.027284]
82 **de Zegher F**, Sebastiani G, Diaz M, Gómez-Roig MD, López-Bermejo A, Ibáñez L. Breast-feeding vs formula-feeding for infants born small-for-gestational-age: divergent effects on fat mass and on circulating IGF-I and high-molecular-weight adiponectin in late infancy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2013; **98**: 1242-1247 [PMID: 23365126 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2012-3480]
83 **Kahn BB**, Flier JS. Obesity and insulin resistance. *J Clin Invest* 2000; **106**: 473-481 [PMID: 10953022 DOI: 10.1172/JCI10842]
84 **Esfahani A**, Wong JM, Mirrahimi A, Srichaikul K, Jenkins DJ, Kendall CW. The glycemic index: physiological significance. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2009; **28** Suppl: 439S-445S [PMID: 20234030]
85 **Last AR**, Wilson SA. Low-carbohydrate diets. *Am Fam Physician* 2006; **73**: 1942-1948 [PMID: 16770923]
86 **Ludwig DS**. The glycemic index: physiological mechanisms relating to obesity, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease. *JAMA* 2002; **287**: 2414-2423 [PMID: 11988062 DOI: 10.1001/jama.287.18.2414]
87 **Brand-Miller JC**, Liu V, Petocz P, Baxter RC. The glycemic index of foods influences postprandial insulin-like growth factor-binding protein responses in lean young subjects. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2005; **82**: 350-354 [PMID: 16087978]
88 **Melanson KJ**, Westerterp-Plantenga MS, Saris WH, Smith FJ, Campfield LA. Blood glucose patterns and appetite in time-blinded humans: carbohydrate versus fat. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **277**: R337-R345 [PMID: 10444538]
89 **Chaput JP**, Tremblay A. The glucostatic theory of appetite control and the risk of obesity and diabetes. *Int J Obes* (Lond) 2009; **33**: 46-53 [PMID: 19002144 DOI: 10.1038/ijo.2008.221]
90 **Brand JC**, Nicholson PL, Thorburn AW, Truswell AS. Food processing and the glycemic index. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1985; **42**: 1192-1196 [PMID: 4072954]
91 **Holt SH**, Miller JC, Petocz P. An insulin index of foods: the insulin demand generated by 1000-kJ portions of common foods. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1997; **66**: 1264-1276 [PMID: 9356547]
92 **Greenbaum CJ**, Kahn SE, Palmer JP. Nicotinamide's effects on glucose metabolism in subjects at risk for IDDM. *Diabetes* 1996; **45**: 1631-1634 [PMID: 8866571]
93 **Kelly JJ**, Lawson JA, Campbell LV, Storlien LH, Jenkins AB, Whitworth JA, O'Sullivan AJ. Effects of nicotinic acid on insulin sensitivity and blood pressure in healthy subjects. *J Hum Hypertens* 2000; **14**: 567-572 [PMID: 10980588]
94 **Chang AM**, Smith MJ, Galecki AT, Bloem CJ, Halter JB. Impaired beta-cell function in human aging: response to nicotinic acid-induced insulin resistance. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2006; **91**: 3303-3309 [PMID: 16757523 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2006-0913]
95 **Libby A**, Meier J, Lopez J, Swislocki AL, Siegel D. The effect of body mass index on fasting blood glucose and development of diabetes mellitus after initiation of extended-release niacin. *Metab Syndr Relat Disord* 2010; **8**: 79-84 [PMID: 19943800 DOI: 10.1089/met.2009.0074]
96 **Henriksen EJ**, Diamond-Stanic MK, Marchionne EM. Oxidative stress and the etiology of insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2011; **51**: 993-999 [PMID: 21163347 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2010.12.005]
97 **Zhou SS**, Zhou YM, Li D, Lun YZ. Dietary methyl-consuming compounds and metabolic syndrome. *Hypertens Res* 2011; **34**: 1239-1245 [PMID: 21814217 DOI: 10.1038/hr.2011.133]
98 **Stielau WJ**, Meyer JH. Periodic B-vitamin supplementation of growing rats fed a vitamin-free diet. *J Nutr* 1963; **81**: 330-334 [PMID: 14104386]
99 **Rietjens IM**, Boersma MG, Haan Ld, Spenkelink B, Awad HM, Cnubben NH, van Zanden JJ, Woude Hv, Alink GM, Koeman JH. The pro-oxidant chemistry of the natural antioxidants vitamin C, vitamin E, carotenoids and flavonoids. *Environ Toxicol Pharmacol* 2002; **11**: 321-333 [PMID: 21782615]
100 **Powell LM**. Fast food costs and adolescent body mass index: evidence from panel data. *J Health Econ* 2009; **28**: 963-970 [PMID: 19732982 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhealeco.2009.06.009]
101 **Moreno LA**, Rodríguez G. Dietary risk factors for development of childhood obesity. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 2007; **10**: 336-341 [PMID: 17414504 DOI: 10.1097/MCO.0b013e3280a94f59]
102 **Richelsen B**. Sugar-sweetened beverages and cardio-metabolic disease risks. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 2013; **16**: 478-484 [PMID: 23624652 DOI: 10.1097/MCO.0b013e328361c53e]
103 **Serdula MK**, Ivery D, Coates RJ, Freedman DS, Williamson DF, Byers T. Do obese children become obese adults? A review of the literature. *Prev Med* 1993; **22**: 167-177 [PMID: 8483856 DOI: 10.1006/pmed.1993.1014]
104 **Meguid MM**, Fetissov SO, Varma M, Sato T, Zhang L, Laviano A, Rossi-Fanelli F. Hypothalamic dopamine and serotonin in the regulation of food intake. *Nutrition* 2000; **16**: 843-857 [PMID: 11054589]
105 **Vucetic Z**, Reyes TM. Central dopaminergic circuitry controlling food intake and reward: implications for the regulation of obesity. *Wiley Interdiscip Rev Syst Biol Med* 2010; **2**: 577-593 [PMID: 20836049 DOI: 10.1002/wsbm.77]
106 **Zhou SS**, Zhou YM, Li D, Ma Q. Early infant exposure to excess multivitamin: a risk factor for autism? *Autism Res Treat* 2013; **2013**: 963697 [PMID: 23533752 DOI: 10.1155/2013/963697]
107 **May JM**, Qu ZC, Nazarewicz R, Dikalov S. Ascorbic acid efficiently enhances neuronal synthesis of norepinephrine from dopamine. *Brain Res Bull* 2013; **90**: 35-42 [PMID: 23022576 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainresbull.2012.09.009]
108 **Stahl SM**. L-methylfolate: a vitamin for your monoamines. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2008; **69**: 1352-1353 [PMID: 19193337]
109 **Ariaey-Nejad MR**, Balaghi M, Baker EM, Sauberlich HE. Thiamin metabolism in man. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1970; **23**: 764-778 [PMID: 5431041]
110 **Jenks BH**, McKee RW, Swendseid ME, Faraji B, Figueroa WG, Clemens RA. Methylated niacin derivatives in plasma

and urine after an oral dose of nicotinamide given to subjects fed a low-methionine diet. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1987; **46**: 496-502 [PMID: 2957911]
111 **Houston JB**, Levy G. Modification of drug biotransformation by vitamin C in man. *Nature* 1975; **255**: 78-79 [PMID: 1128674]
112 **Regulus P**, Desilets JF, Klarskov K, Wagner JR. Characterization and detection in cells of a novel adduct derived from the conjugation of glutathione and dehydroascorbate. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2010; **49**: 984-991 [PMID: 20541006 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2010.05.029]
113 **Birringer M**. Analysis of vitamin E metabolites in biological specimen. *Mol Nutr Food Res* 2010; **54**: 588-598 [PMID: 20169585 DOI: 10.1002/mnfr.200900457]
114 **Parkinson** A. Biotransformation of xenobiotics, in Casarett and Doull's Toxicology: The Basic Science of Poisons. 6th ed (ed. C.D. Klaasen). McGraw Hill: New York, 2001: 133-224
115 **Back DJ**, Breckenridge AM, MacIver M, Orme ML, Purba H, Rowe PH. Interaction of ethinyloestradiol with ascorbic acid in man. *Br Med J* (Clin Res Ed) 1981; **282**: 1516 [PMID: 6786543]
116 **Dunne JW**, Davidson L, Vandongen R, Beilin LJ, Tunney AM, Rogers PB. The effect of ascorbic acid on the sulphate conjugation of ingested noradrenaline and dopamine. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 1984; **17**: 356-360 [PMID: 6712869]
117 **Sun WP**, Li D, Lun YZ, Gong XJ, Sun SX, Guo M, Jing LX, Zhang LB, Xiao FC, Zhou SS. Excess nicotinamide inhibits methylation-mediated degradation of catecholamines in normotensives and hypertensives. *Hypertens Res* 2012; **35**: 180-185 [PMID: 21918528 DOI: 10.1038/hr.2011.151]
118 **Pipili C**, Cholongitas E, Ioannidou D. The diagnostic importance of photosensitivity dermatoses in chronic alcoholism: report of two cases. *Dermatol Online J* 2008; **14**: 15 [PMID: 19094853]
119 **Lavebratt C**, Almgren M, Ekström TJ. Epigenetic regulation in obesity. *Int J Obes* (Lond) 2012; **36**: 757-765 [PMID: 21912396 DOI: 10.1038/ijo.2011.178]
120 **Lillycrop KA**, Burdge GC. Epigenetic changes in early life and future risk of obesity. *Int J Obes* (Lond) 2011; **35**: 72-83 [PMID: 20548303 DOI: 10.1038/ijo.2010.122]
121 **Latham KE**, Sapienza C, Engel N. The epigenetic lorax: gene-environment interactions in human health. *Epigenomics* 2012; **4**: 383-402 [PMID: 22920179 DOI: 10.2217/epi.12.31]
122 **Robertson KD**. DNA methylation and human disease. *Nat Rev Genet* 2005; **6**: 597-610 [PMID: 16136652 DOI: 10.1038/nrg1655]
123 **Li D**, Tian YJ, Guo J, Sun WP, Lun YZ, Guo M, Luo N, Cao Y, Cao JM, Gong XJ, Zhou SS. Nicotinamide supplementation induces detrimental metabolic and epigenetic changes in developing rats. *Br J Nutr* 2013; **110**: 2156-2164 [PMID: 23768418 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114513001815]
124 **Tian** YJ, Luo N, Chen NN, Lun YZ, Gu XY, Li Z, Ma Q, Zhou SS. Maternal nicotinamide supplementation causes global DNA hypomethylation, uracil hypo-incorporation and gene expression changes in fetal rats. *Br J Nutr* 2014 Feb 10; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24507733 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114513004054]
125 **Raubenheimer D**, Lee KP, Simpson SJ. Does Bertrand's rule apply to macronutrients? *Proc Biol Sci* 2005; **272**: 2429-2434 [PMID: 16243690 DOI: 10.1098/rspb.2005.3271]
126 **Ivers DJ**, Veum TL. Effect of graded levels of niacin supplementation of a semipurified diet on energy and nitrogen balance, growth performance, diarrhea occurrence, and niacin metabolite excretion by growing swine. *J Anim Sci* 2012; **90**: 282-288 [PMID: 21873540 DOI: 10.2527/jas.2011-4035]
127 **Shibata K**, Shimada H, Taguchi H. Fate of nicotinamide differs due to an intake of nicotinamide. *Biosci Biotechnol Biochem* 1996; **60**: 1204-1206 [PMID: 8782418 DOI: 10.1271/bbb.60.1204]
128 **Winter SL**, Boyer JL. Hepatic toxicity from large doses of vitamin B_3 (nicotinamide). *N Engl J Med* 1973; **289**: 1180-1182 [PMID: 4271091]
129 **Rader JI**, Calvert RJ, Hathcock JN. Hepatic toxicity of unmodified and time-release preparations of niacin. *Am J Med* 1992; **92**: 77-81 [PMID: 1731514]
130 **Dalton TA**, Berry RS. Hepatotoxicity associated with sustained-release niacin. *Am J Med* 1992; **93**: 102-104 [PMID: 1626557]
131 **Coppola A**, Brady PG, Nord HJ. Niacin-induced hepatotoxicity: unusual presentations. *South Med J* 1994; **87**: 30-32 [PMID: 8284714]
132 **Kimmons JE**, Blanck HM, Tohill BC, Zhang J, Khan LK. Multivitamin use in relation to self-reported body mass index and weight loss attempts. *MedGenMed* 2006; **8**: 3 [PMID: 17406146]
133 **Major GC**, Doucet E, Jacqmain M, St-Onge M, Bouchard C, Tremblay A. Multivitamin and dietary supplements, body weight and appetite: results from a cross-sectional and a randomised double-blind placebo-controlled study. *Br J Nutr* 2008; **99**: 1157-1167 [PMID: 17977472 DOI: 10.1017/S0007114507853335]
134 **Brown BG**, Zhao XQ, Chait A, Fisher LD, Cheung MC, Morse JS, Dowdy AA, Marino EK, Bolson EL, Alaupovic P, Frohlich J, Albers JJ. Simvastatin and niacin, antioxidant vitamins, or the combination for the prevention of coronary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **345**: 1583-1592 [PMID: 11757504 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa011090]
135 **Green PS**, Vaisar T, Pennathur S, Kulstad JJ, Moore AB, Marcovina S, Brunzell J, Knopp RH, Zhao XQ, Heinecke JW. Combined statin and niacin therapy remodels the high-density lipoprotein proteome. *Circulation* 2008; **118**: 1259-1267 [PMID: 18765395 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.108.770669]
136 **Davis RE**, Icke GC, Hilton JM. High serum thiamine and the sudden infant death syndrome. *Clin Chim Acta* 1982; **123**: 321-328 [PMID: 7116647 DOI: 10.1016/0009-8981(82)90177-2]
137 **Darlow BA**, Buss H, McGill F, Fletcher L, Graham P, Winterbourn CC. Vitamin C supplementation in very preterm infants: a randomised controlled trial. *Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed* 2005; **90**: F117-F122 [PMID: 15724034 DOI: 10.1136/adc.2004.056440]
138 **Bjelakovic G**, Nikolova D, Gluud LL, Simonetti RG, Gluud C. Mortality in randomized trials of antioxidant supplements for primary and secondary prevention: systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA* 2007; **297**: 842-857 [PMID: 17327526 DOI: 10.1001/jama.297.8.842]
139 **Koo WW**, Hockman EM. Posthospital discharge feeding for preterm infants: effects of standard compared with enriched milk formula on growth, bone mass, and body composition. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2006; **84**: 1357-1364 [PMID: 17158417]
140 **Gariani K**, Philippe J, Jornayvaz FR. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and insulin resistance: from bench to bedside. *Diabetes Metab* 2013; **39**: 16-26 [PMID: 23266468 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabet.2012.11.002]

P- Reviewers: Paraskevas KI, Resmini E, Tomkin GH
S- Editor: Cui XM **L- Editor**: Roemmele A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.14

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 14-16
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

WJD 5th Anniversary Special Issues (1): Insulin

Insulin and bone: Recent developments

Gordon L Klein

Gordon L Klein, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery and Rehabilitation, University of Texas and Shriners Burns Hospital, Galveston, TX 77555, United States
Author contributions: Klein GL contributed to the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Gordon L Klein, MD, MPH, Department of Orthopaedic Surgery and Rehabilitation, University of Texas and Shriners Burns Hospital, 301 University Boulevard, Galveston, TX 77555, United States. gordonklein@ymail.com
Telephone: +1-409-7475750 Fax: +1-409-7706719
Received: November 24, 2013 Revised: December 4, 2013
Accepted: December 17, 2013
Published online: February 15, 2014

Abstract

While insulin-like growth factor I is a well-known anabolic agent in bone evidence is beginning to accumulate that its homologue, insulin, also has some anabolic properties for bone. There is specific evidence that insulin may work to stimulate osteoblast differentiation, which in turn would enhance production of osteocalcin, the osteoblast-produced peptide that can stimulate pancreatic β cell proliferation and skeletal muscle insulin sensitivity. It is uncertain whether insulin stimulates bone directly or indirectly by increasing muscle work and therefore skeletal loading. We raise the question of the sequence of events that occurs with insulin resistance, such as type 2 diabetes. Evidence to date suggests that these patients have lower serum concentrations of osteocalcin, perhaps reduced skeletal loading, and reduced bone strength as evidenced by microindentation studies.

Key words: Type 2 diabetes; Insulin; Bone; Osteoblasts; Insulin resistance

Core tip: This is a review of recent publications that suggest an anabolic loop among bone, pancreas, and skeletal muscle.

Klein GL. Insulin and bone: Recent developments. *World J Diabetes* 2014; 5(1): 14-16 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/full/v5/i1/14.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.14

INTRODUCTION

The interactions between insulin and bone would on the surface appear to be an unlikely subject for an article, let alone a review article, but with the advent of the knockout mouse model many relationships that would not have been obvious now require investigation. The aim of this paper is to provide evidence supporting an anabolic loop including the pancreas, skeletal muscle, and bone.

GROWTH FACTOR

We do not want to confound the anabolic effects of insulin with those of insulin-like growth factor (IGF)-1, although the homology of molecular structure of both molecules may in fact account for some of the anabolic effects of insulin on bone. It should be emphasized at this point that insulin is synthesized in the pancreatic β cells while endocrine IGF-1 is synthesized in the liver. The stimuli for insulin production include glucose and, as we will see, osteocalcin, while endocrine IGF-1 is synthesized by liver in response to growth hormone and the paracrine IGF-1 produced by bone cells, including preosteoblasts and osteoblasts, osteocytes and osteoclasts[1,2] is synthesized in response to stimuli that have not yet been clarified.

While there are copious reports of the anabolic effects of IGF-1 on bone there is a growing amount of data suggesting that insulin itself has an anabolic effect on bone. Suggestions of this effect came from studies involving burned children in which a hyperinsulinemic, euglycemic clamp was employed resulting in an increase in both lean body mass, often indicative of muscle mass, and bone mass at time of hospital discharge compared

to controls, usually between 6 wk to 3 mo post-burn[3]. Moreover, both pre-osteoblasts and osteoblasts manifest different isoforms of the insulin receptor (IR), with IRA being expressed in pre-osteoblasts and IRB being expressed in mature osteoblasts[4]. This specificity suggests that insulin is a critical element in osteoblast differentiation from marrow stromal cells. This may have significance in the generation of the osteoblast peptide osteocalcin, which, as we shall see, has major implications for glucose metabolism. Whether the direct effect of insulin on osteoblasts has clinical significance, however, is not entirely clear. This is in part because the abovementioned report on hyperinsulinemia demonstrated increases in both lean body mass and bone mass[3].

INSULIN

The other side of this proposed loop is the effect of bone on insulin. The stimulus for the work that produced these findings is the knockout mouse model. In this model a significant contribution has been made by Wei *et al*[5] who have most recently reported that osteocalcin stimulates β cell replication in the pancreas *via* a cyclin D1-dependent mechanism utilizing the G-protein coupled receptor family C group 6 member A receptor expressed by these cells. This stimulation occurs during both peak β cell proliferation, which occurs in the perinatal period and in adult mice[5]. Moreover, they described the effects of daily osteocalcin injections in obese type 2 diabetic mice reporting an increase in the number of mitochondria in skeletal muscle as well as an increase in energy expenditure[6], indicating that osteocalcin can also increase muscle work by increasing insulin sensitivity.

Thus these recent data would suggest that under normal conditions insulin may stimulate osteoblast differentiation in order to produce more osteocalcin, which would then stimulate more insulin production by the pancreas and greater insulin sensitivity of skeletal muscle. There are also some recent clinical correlates of these studies in adults. In a recent study Díaz-López *et al*[7] performed a case-control study of 153 diabetic subjects and 306 individually matched controls and found that both the carboxylated and undercarboxylated forms of osteocalcin were lower than matched controls and that carboxylated osteocalcin concentrations were inversely associated with a model assessment of insulin resistance and fasting glucose concentrations. Another report by Gower *et al*[8] indicated that in obese individuals total osteocalcin was directly associated with skeletal muscle but not hepatic insulin sensitivity while undercarboxylated osteocalcin was associated with β cell function in those with abnormal fasting glucose concentrations.

BONE

A major unanswered question is exactly what happens to bone in cases of peripheral insulin resistance? Are the IRs in pre-osteoblasts and osteoblasts down-regulated? We know that osteocalcin levels are lower in type 2 diabetics[7,8]. In addition, we know that insulin resistance is also caused by factors that cause bone resorption, such as the interleukin-6-mediated chronic low grade inflammation that contributes to non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD)[9] and excessive glucocorticoid production, another significant contributor to NAFLD[10]. However, we do not at this point know precisely how peripheral insulin resistance affects bone. One conjecture would be that if muscles expend less energy due to their inability to take up glucose then muscle strength may be reduced and skeletal loading may also be consequently decreased. This scenario could explain abnormalities in bone with type 2 diabetes. Were this to be so then bone loss would result in reduced production of osteocalcin and a perpetuation of the problem of peripheral insulin resistance.

So, why has bone loss with type 2 diabetes been so difficult to determine up to now? As summarized by Ferrari[11] in a review article on diabetes and osteoporosis, bone mineral density (BMD) may not be reduced in this condition inasmuch as weight and fat mass must be factored into the BMD determinations. The probability of fracture as assessed by use of the on-line FRAX tool developed by the World Health Organization may also underestimate fracture risk in this condition. As evidence that this may indeed be the case a recent report by Hothersall *et al*[12] examined the files of all hip fractures in Scotland from 2005-2007 and the prevalence of both type 1 and type 2 diabetes in this population. While there was a significant correlation between hip fractures and type 1 diabetes, in which insulin deficiency is the issue, there was no overall increased risk of hip fracture in type 2 diabetes, according to this review. The investigators do, however, state that these findings do not rule out increased risk in sub-groups of type 2 diabetics. While we have demonstrated that osteocalcin, also a marker of bone formation, is lower in patients with type 2 diabetes, not all markers of bone formation or resorption are consistent. For example, Chen *et al*[13] found that while osteocalcin was lower in diabetics *vs* controls, there was no difference in bone specific alkaline phosphatase. Similarly while Bhattoa *et al*[14] found that urinary cross-laps, a resorption marker, was lower in type 2 diabetics *vs* controls while Chen *et al*[13] found that urinary hydroxyproline was elevated.

A new development, however, has shed some light on this problem. In a study that has been Epublished ahead of print, Farr *et al*[15] have reported the use of *in vivo* microindentation of the tibia as an index of bone strength. In this study of 60 post-menopausal women, half of whom had type 2 diabetes, this technique demonstrated decreased bone strength in the diabetic women.

Much more work needs to be done to follow up on these findings but clearly the greater chance of microcracks in the bones of insulin-resistant diabetics may not be detected by bone density determinations.

Therefore, for those who care for diabetic patients, the complications involving bone have been subtle and difficult to detect but as more attention is being paid to this area the pathogenesis of the bone problem should

be more clearly elucidated and new therapeutic targets identified.

REFERENCES

1 **Crane JL**, Cao X. Function of matrix IGF-1 in coupling bone resorption and formation. *J Mol Med* (Berl) 2014; **92**: 107-115 [PMID: 24068256 DOI: 10.1007/s00109-013-1084-3]

2 **Lau KH**, Baylink DJ, Zhou XD, Rodriguez D, Bonewald LF, Li Z, Ruffoni D, Müller R, Kesavan C, Sheng MH. Osteocyte-derived insulin-like growth factor I is essential for determining bone mechanosensitivity. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2013; **305**: E271-E281 [PMID: 23715728 DOI: 10.1152/ajpendo.00092.2013]

3 **Thomas SJ**, Morimoto K, Herndon DN, Ferrando AA, Wolfe RR, Klein GL, Wolf SE. The effect of prolonged euglycemic hyperinsulinemia on lean body mass after severe burn. *Surgery* 2002; **132**: 341-347 [PMID: 12219032 DOI: 10.1067/msy.2002.126871]

4 **Avnet S**, Perut F, Salerno M, Sciacca L, Baldini N. Insulin receptor isoforms are differently expressed during human osteoblastogenesis. *Differentiation* 2012; **83**: 242-248 [PMID: 22466604 DOI: 10.1016/j.diff.2012.02.002]

5 **Wei J**, Hanna T, Suda N, Karsenty G, Ducy P. Osteocalcin promotes β-cell proliferation during development and adulthood through Gprc6a. *Diabetes* 2013 Sep 5; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24009262 DOI: 10.2337/db13-0867]

6 **Ferron M**, McKee MD, Levine RL, Ducy P, Karsenty G. Intermittent injections of osteocalcin improve glucose metabolism and prevent type 2 diabetes in mice. *Bone* 2012; **50**: 568-575 [PMID: 21550430 DOI: 10.1016/j.bone.2011.04.017]

7 **Díaz-López A**, Bulló M, Juanola-Falgarona M, Martínez-González MA, Estruch R, Covas MI, Arós F, Salas-Salvadó J. Reduced serum concentrations of carboxylated and undercarboxylated osteocalcin are associated with risk of developing type 2 diabetes mellitus in a high cardiovascular risk population: a nested case-control study. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2013; **98**: 4524-4531 [PMID: 24037881 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2013-2472]

8 **Gower BA**, Pollock NK, Casazza K, Clemens TL, Goree LL, Granger WM. Associations of total and undercarboxylated osteocalcin with peripheral and hepatic insulin sensitivity and β-cell function in overweight adults. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2013; **98**: E1173-E1180 [PMID: 23616149 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2013-1203]

9 **Tarantino G**, Savastano S, Colao A. Hepatic steatosis, low-grade chronic inflammation and hormone/growth factor/adipokine imbalance. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 4773-4783 [PMID: 20939105 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i38.4773]

10 **Tarantino G**, Finelli C. Pathogenesis of hepatic steatosis: the link between hypercortisolism and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 6735-6743 [PMID: 24187449 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i40.6735]

11 **Ferrari S**. [Diabetes and osteoporosis]. *Rev Med Suisse* 2013; **9**: 1256, 1258-1259 [PMID: 23821843]

12 **Hothersall EJ**, Livingstone SJ, Looker HC, Ahmed SF, Cleland S, Leese GP, Lindsay RS, McKnight J, Pearson D, Philip S, Wild SH, Colhoun HM. Contemporary Risk of Hip Fracture in Type 1 and Type 2 Diabetes: A National Registry Study from Scotland. *J Bone Miner Res* 2013 Oct 23; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24155126 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr2118]

13 **Chen H**, Li X, Yue R, Ren X, Zhang X, Ni A. The effects of diabetes mellitus and diabetic nephropathy on bone and mineral metabolism in T2DM patients. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2013; **100**: 272-276 [PMID: 23522918 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2013.03.007]

14 **Bhattoa HP**, Onyeka U, Kalina E, Balogh A, Paragh G, Antal-Szalmas P, Kaplar M. Bone metabolism and the 10-year probability of hip fracture and a major osteoporotic fracture using the country-specific FRAX algorithm in men over 50 years of age with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a case-control study. *Clin Rheumatol* 2013; **32**: 1161-1167 [PMID: 23588883 DOI: 10.1007/s10067-0013-2254-y]

15 **Farr JN**, Drake MT, Amin S, Melton LJ 3rd, McCready LK, Khosla S. In Vivo assessment of bone quality in postmenopausal women with type 2 diabetes. *J Bone Miner Res* 2013 Oct 1; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24123088 DOI: 10.1002/jbmr2106]

P- Reviewers: Charoenphandhu N, Tarantino G, Traub M
S- Editor: Qi Y **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.17

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 17-39
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

REVIEW

Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in patients with diabetes mellitus

Gerasimos Dimitropoulos, Abd A Tahrani, Martin J Stevens

Gerasimos Dimitropoulos, Abd A Tahrani, Martin J Stevens, Department of Diabetes and Endocrinology, Heart of England National Health Service Foundation Trust, B15 2TT Birmingham, United Kingdom
Abd A Tahrani, Martin J Stevens, Centre of Endocrinology, Diabetes and Metabolism, School of Clinical and Experimental Medicine, University of Birmingham, B15 2TT Birmingham, United Kingdom
Author contributions: Dimitropoulos G and Tahrani AA contributed equally to this work and performed the literature search and wrote first draft; Stevens MJ provided expert opinion and reviewed the paper.
Correspondence to: Dr. Abd A Tahrani, Centre of Endocrinology, Diabetes and Metabolism, School of Clinical and Experimental Medicine, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, B15 2TT Birmingham, United Kingdom. a.a.tahrani@bham.ac.uk
Telephone: +44-780-1549960
Received: October 15, 2013 Revised: December 2, 2013
Accepted: December 12, 2013
Published online: February 15, 2014

Abstract

Cardiac autonomic neuropathy (CAN) is an often overlooked and common complication of diabetes mellitus. CAN is associated with increased cardiovascular morbidity and mortality. The pathogenesis of CAN is complex and involves a cascade of pathways activated by hyperglycaemia resulting in neuronal ischaemia and cellular death. In addition, autoimmune and genetic factors are involved in the development of CAN. CAN might be subclinical for several years until the patient develops resting tachycardia, exercise intolerance, postural hypotension, cardiac dysfunction and diabetic cardiomyopathy. During its sub-clinical phase, heart rate variability that is influenced by the balance between parasympathetic and sympathetic tones can help in detecting CAN before the disease is symptomatic. Newer imaging techniques (such as scintigraphy) have allowed earlier detection of CAN in the pre-clinical phase and allowed better assessment of the sympathetic nervous system. One of the main difficulties in CAN research is the lack of a universally accepted definition of CAN; however, the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy has recently issued guidance for the diagnosis and staging of CAN, and also proposed screening for CAN in patients with diabetes mellitus. A major challenge, however, is the lack of specific treatment to slow the progression or prevent the development of CAN. Lifestyle changes, improved metabolic control might prevent or slow the progression of CAN. Reversal will require combination of these treatments with new targeted therapeutic approaches. The aim of this article is to review the latest evidence regarding the epidemiology, pathogenesis, manifestations, diagnosis and treatment for CAN.

Key words: Diabetes mellitus; Cardiac; Cardiovascular; Autonomic; Neuropathy; Dysfunction; Cardiac autonomic neuropathy; Sympathetic; Parasympathetic; Heart rate variability; Spectral analysis; Diabetic cardiomyopathy; Postural hypotension

Core tip: Cardiac autonomic neuropathy (CAN) is a complication of diabetes mellitus that is often underdiagnosed but can lead to severe morbidity and mortality, due to the associated cardiovascular burden. New evidence has emerged surrounding its complex pathways, but its full pathogenesis is yet to be understood. CAN manifests in a spectrum of subclinical and clinical presentations, ranging from resting tachycardia to cardiomyopathy. Heart rate variability and scintigraphy have enabled the diagnosis at a subclinical stage, thus providing the opportunity for better prevention and treatment. However, no definite therapeutic approaches have been adopted to date, emphasizing the need for newer targeted treatments.

Dimitropoulos G, Tahrani AA, Stevens MJ. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in patients with diabetes mellitus. *World J Diabetes* 2014; 5(1): 17-39 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/full/v5/i1/17.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.17

INTRODUCTION

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a global epidemic affecting at least 8.3% of the global population and 371 million people worldwide with a significant proportion (50%) remaining undiagnosed. It is estimated that almost one in six people are currently at risk of developing diabetes-related complications[1]. Cardiovascular disease (CVD) is the leading cause of mortality and morbidity in patients with diabetes and subsequently the primary goal of diabetes treatment is to reduce the burden of CVD as well as the vascular complications associated with diabetes[2,3]. Much of the CVD prevention strategies in patients with DM are based on lowering blood pressure and LDL-cholesterol levels and improving glycaemic control[4-7]. Despite that, CVD remains very common and a major cause of mortality and morbidity in patients with DM. Hence, better understanding of pathogenesis of CVD is crucial to develop new therapeutic targets.

Cardiac autonomic neuropathy (CAN) is a very common and often overlooked diabetes-related complication that has a major impact on CVD, mortality and morbidity in patients with DM[8,9]. Improving our understanding of the pathogenesis of CAN and its role in CVD, offers the potential of new treatment targets that might reduce the burden of CVD in patients with diabetes. This review aims to provide an overview of the epidemiology, pathogenesis, cardiovascular consequence, diagnosis, and treatments of CAN, with particular emphasis on the latest developments in the field.

LITERATURE SEARCH STRATEGY

We conducted a review of the original papers and review articles indexed in PubMed, Medline and Google Scholar between 1975 and 2013. We have used several terms individually or in combination including: diabetes, autonomic neuropathy, CAN, cardiovascular, cardiac, autonomic, neuropathy, dysfunction. Only articles in English and in adult population were reviewed.

DEFINITIONS AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

Based on the CAN Subcommittee of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy[10], CAN is defined as the impairment of cardiovascular autonomic control in patients with established DM following the exclusion of other causes. CAN, especially at the early stages, can be sub-clinical and thus as the disease progresses, it becomes clinically evident.

The prevalence of CAN varies between 1%-90% in patients with type 1 DM (T1DM) and 20%-73% in patients with T2DM (Table 1). This huge variation in CAN prevalence is due to the inconsistency in the criteria used to diagnose CAN and significant differences in the study populations, particularly in relation to CAN risk factors (such as age, gender and DM duration amongst others).

CAN has been detected at time of diagnosis of diabetes in patients with either T1DM or T2DM irrespective of age, suggesting that CAN presentation is not limited by age or type of diabetes and can occur before DM is evident clinically[11-15]. However, the duration of diabetes is an independent factor for developing CAN irrespective to diabetes type[10,16]. CAN is detected in about 7% of both T1DM and T2DM at the time of initial diagnosis[17], and it is estimated that the risk for developing CAN increases annually by approximately 6% and 2% in patients with T1DM and T2DM respectively[17-19].

Poor glycaemic control is a major risk factor for CAN progression[14,19-21]. In the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT), intensive glycaemic control resulted in a 50% decrease in CAN incidence over the 6.5 years follow-up period[19]. This protective effect persisted 14 years after the end of the study despite the disappearance of HbA1c differences that were achieved between the groups during the randomised phase of trial[18]. Similarly, CAN has been shown to be associated with conventional CVD risk factors, such as hypertension, smoking, hyperlipidaemia and obesity[22-24]. In the Steno-2 trial of patients with T2DM and microalbuminuria, intensive pharmacological intervention targeting hypertension, hyperlipidaemia and microalbuminuria combined with behavioural treatment (exercise, diet and smoking cessation) reduced the risk of autonomic neuropathy over the course of a 7.8 years follow-up (HR = 0.37, 95%CI: 0.18-0.79)[5]. After a mean of 5.5 years following the end of the study, the same protective effect against the development of autonomic neuropathy persisted (RR = 0.53, 95%CI: 0.34-0.81, P = 0.004). There was also reduction in the risk for developing CVD (RR = 0.43, 95%CI: 0.19-0.94, P = 0.04) and overall mortality (RR = 0.54, 95%CI: 0.32-0.89, P = 0.02) in this study[25].

Moreover, in a large cohort of more than 1000 patients with T2DM the incidence of CAN over a 7.5 years follow-up correlated with age (P < 0.001) and microvascular disease (P = 0.035)[26]. Diabetic nephropathy (including microalbuminura), diabetic retinopathy and diabetic polyneuropathy have been widely identified as clinical predictors of CAN[23,24,27], which is not surprising as diabetic microvascular complications share common mechanisms and risk factors. The impact of gender on CAN is controversial. In a multi-centre, cross sectional study of 3250 patients with DM, CAN prevalence was no different between men and women (35% male *vs* 37% female)[28]. However, in the action to control cardiovascular risk in diabetes trial including more than 8000 patients with T2DM CAN was more prevalent in women (2.6% in men *vs* 4.7% in women for moderate severity CAN and 1.4% in men *vs* 2.2% in women for severe CAN, P < 0.01 for all three definitions of CAN in the study)[29].

Table 1 Prevalence of cardiac autonomic neuropathy as reported in major studies

Ref.	Year	Country	*N* of subjects	Type of DM	Population characteristics	Diagnostic test	Criteria applied	Prevalence (%)	Comments
O'Brien *et al*[111]	1991	United Kingdom	506	IDDM	Mean age 45 yr, mean DM duration 15 yr, female 42%	HRV in response to (1) rest (2) single deep breath (3) Valsalva manoeuvre or (4) standing	At least two positive of the tests mentioned in the previous column	17	Prevalence of CAN was associated with the presence of other DM complications
Ziegler *et al*[223]	1992	Germany Austria Switzerland	130 647 524	Newly diagnosed IDDM Total IDDM Non-IDDM		CV of HRV, low- and mid-frequency bands of spectral analysis, MCR, Valsalva manoeuvre or lying-to standing	At least three positive of the tests mentioned in the previous column	7.7 25.3 34.3	
Kennedy *et al*[11]	1995	United States	290	IDDM	Listed pancreas transplantation recipients	HRV Valsalva manoeuvre		90 88	
DCCT research group[19]	1998	United States	1441	IDDM (1) primary prevention cohort (absence of end–organ damage such as retinopathy and microalbuminuria) (2) secondary intervention cohort (mild/moderate retinopathy +/- microalbuminuria)	Mean age 27 yr, female 47% duration of DM 1-5 yr (mean 2.6) primary prevention cohort 1-15 yr (mean 8.8) secondary intervention cohort	HRV Valsalva manoeuvre Postural BP	R-R variation < 15 Valsalva ratio < 1.5 Diastolic BP drop > 10 mmHg	1.6-6.2 5.5-6.3 0	These figures represent baseline characteristics
Kempler *et al*[28] (EURODIAB IDDM)	2002	16 European countries	3250	T1DM	Mean age 32 yr, mean DM duration 14 yr, female 49%	(1) R-R response to standing (2) Postural BP	R-R ratio < 1.04 or drop > 20 mmHg in systolic BP	36	Correlation with age, DM duration and HbA1c
Gaede *et al*[5,224] (the Steno type 2 study)	2003	Denmark	160	T2DM	Mean age 55 yr, female 27%, HbA1C 8.8% at baseline	(1) R-R response to breathing (2)Postural BP	R-R variation < 6 or drop > 25 mmHg in systolic BP	27.5	This figure represents baseline findings
Valensi *et al*[27]	2003	France	245 151	T1DM T2DM	Mean age 39.6 yr, mean DM duration 8.6 yr, female 43%	R-R response to (1) deep breathing (2) Valsalva and (3) standing	Criteria for abnormal tests were based on Armstrong *et al*[225] At least two positive tests (classed as moderate CAN)	21.2 20.7 33.5 20	Rate of moderate/severe CAN was higher in T1DM (18.2% and 4.8%) than in T2DM (12.3% and 2.3%) (P = 0.031)
Low *et al*[23]	2004	United States	83 148	T1DM T2DM	Mean age 59 yr, white 99%, female 48%	(1) Sudomotor axon-reflex test (2) Valsalva manoeuvre (3) BP and HR response to standing (4) R-R response to deep breathing	CASS ⩾ 1 in two domains or ⩾ 2 in one domain (sudomotor, cardiovagal, adrenergic)	54 73	This study focuses on DAN but encompasses several cardiac autonomic tests
Pop-Busui *et al*[18] (DCCT/EDIC study)	2009	United States	620 591	IDDM-former intensive Tx group IDDM-former conventional Tx group	Mean age 47 yr in both groups, mean DM duration 26 yr, female 49% and 46% respectively	R-R response to (1) deep breathing (2) Valsalva manoeuvre (3) postural BP	R-R < 15 or R-R 15-19.9 and Valsalva ratio < 1.5 or drop > 15 mmHg in diastolic BP	29 35	13/14 yr post closeout of DCCT

DM: Diabetes mellitus; IDDM: Insulin dependent diabetes mellitus; CV: Coefficient of variation; MCR: Mean circular resultant; HRV: Heart rate variability; BP: Blood pressure; CAN: Cardiac autonomic neuropathy; CASS: Composite Autonomic Severity Score; DCCT: Diabetes Control and Complications Trial; T1DM: Type 1 diabetes mellitus.

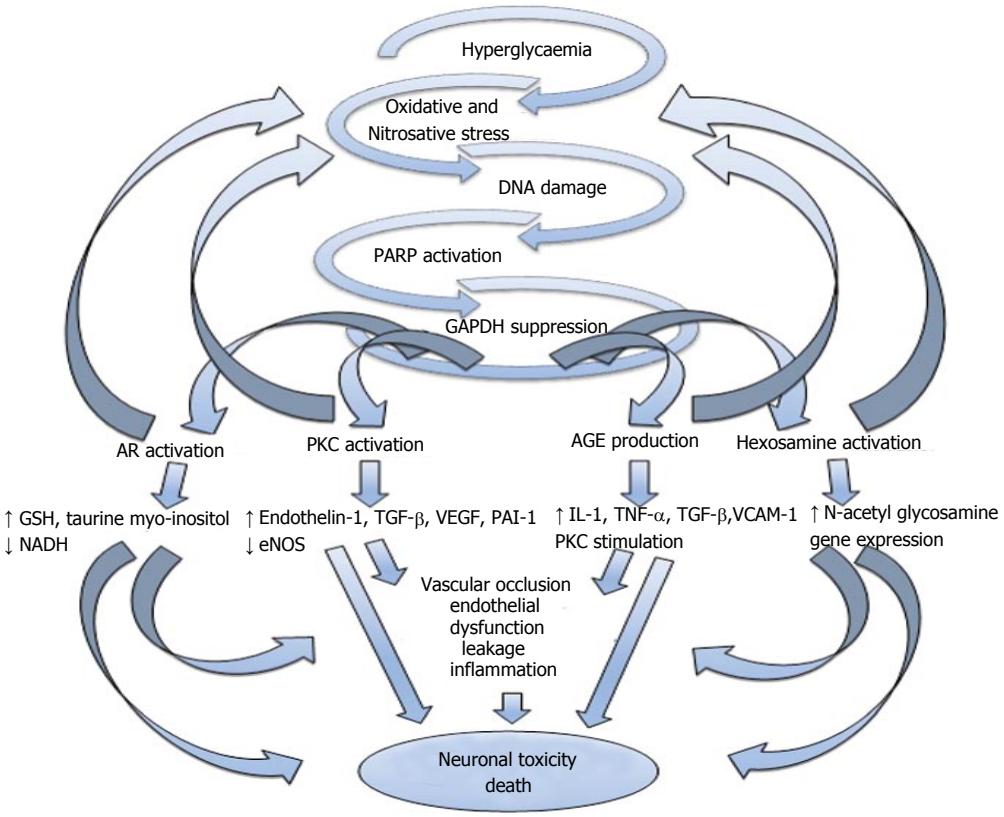


Figure 1 Summary of the mechanisms that relate hyperglycaemia to microvascular complications in patients with diabetes. PKC: Protein kinase C; AGE: Advanced glycation end-products; PARP: Poly ADP-ribose polymerase; GAPDH: Glyceraldehyde-3 phosphate dehydrogenase; GSH: Glutathione; NADH: Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide; TGF-β: Transforming growth factor; VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor; PAI-1: Plasminogen activator inhibitor-1; eNOS: Endothelial nitric oxide synthase; IL-1: Interleukin 1; TNF-α: Tumour necrosis factor-α; VCAM-1: Vascular cell adhesion molecule 1.

Ethnicity has also been postulated to be a risk factor for CAN as South Asians seem to have lower rates of peripheral neuropathy than White Europeans with DM[30]. More specifically, the prevalence of small fibre neuropathy was significantly lower in Indian Asians than in Europeans (32% *vs* 43% respectively, $P = 0.03$) and mean nerve conduction velocity Z scores (measuring large fibre neuropathy) were superior in Asians compared to Europeans (mean ± SD 0.07 ± -0.62 *vs* -0.11 ± 0.60, $P = 0.007$). However, using heart rate variability (HRV) spectral analysis as well as frequency and time domain analysis showed no difference in CAN prevalence between South Asians and white Europeans (Tahrani *et al*, unpublished data).

PATHOGENESIS OF CAN

The exact pathogenesis of CAN is complex and remains unclear. Most of the proposed mechanisms of neuronal injury are based on models of somatic rather than autonomic neuropathy. Although many of these mechanisms might be shared between autonomic and somatic neuropathies, differences do exist as shown by the Steno-2 trial (described above) in which the multi-factorial intervention (including intensive metabolic control and lifestyle changes) slowed down the progression of autonomic but not somatic neuropathy.

Hyperglycaemia induced neuronal injury and ischaemia

The pathogenesis of CAN is likely to be multi-factorial[31] and to involve several mechanisms and pathways that lead to neuronal ischaemia or direct neuronal death/dysfunction (Figure 1). Hyperglycaemia and the adverse metabolic environment in patients with DM result in increased oxidative and nitrosative stress[17], which can cause direct neuronal damage/dysfunction as well as endothelial dysfunction resulting in neuronal ischaemia. Neuronal axons are rich in mitochondria which makes them particularly susceptible to the direct and indirect effects on oxidative and nitrosative stress[32].

Increased oxidative stress results in poly ADP-ribose polymerase activation which when coupled with other activated downstream pathways including the polyol pathway, advanced glycation endproducts production, protein kinase C and the hexosamine pathway are thought to contribute to glucose toxicity[33-36]. These different pathways can in return exacerbate oxidative stress and can induce changes in gene expression, transcription factors, diverse cellular products disrupting several cellular functions and the communication between the cell and the surrounding matrix all of which leads to neuronal dysfunction and death[37-39]. These pathways also result in impaired microvascular-- regulation and endothelial dysfunction by different mechanisms, including increase in plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 and endothelin-1 production and impairment of endothelial nitric oxide (NO) synthase and NO actions[40,41]. This can lead to reduction of neurovascular perfusion, dysfunction and cellular apoptosis[42].

Autoimmunity

The role of autoimmunity has also been explored particularly in patients with T1DM. The presence of complement-fixing antibodies against sympathetic and para-

sympathetic tissues in patients with insulin-dependent diabetes and their correlation with CAN was described in the early 90s[43,44]. In a study of 78 patients with DM, the prevalence of phospholipid autoantibodies (PLA) in the patient's serum was significantly higher in those tested positive for autonomic neuropathy (88% of the patients with autonomic neuropathy *vs* 32% of those without, $P < 0.001$) and there was a strong correlation between the PLA titre and total neuropathy score ($r^2 = 0.58$, $P = 0.0002$)[45]. Granberg *et al*[46] demonstrated in a group of patients with T1DM that patients positive for complement-fixing antibodies to the sympathetic ganglion, vagus nerve and adrenal medulla had a significant higher risk to develop cardiac autonomic dysfunction (measured by the E/I ratio during deep inspiration and HRV to postural change) over a 6-year follow-up (RR = 7.5, 95%CI: 1.72-32.80). There are, however, conflicting reports whether these auto-antibodies contribute to the pathogenesis of autonomic neuropathy or represent rather incidental findings and can be attributed to autoimmunity against concurrent conditions, such as thyroid disease[47]. A recent study of mixed T1DM and T2DM patients concluded that neither peripheral nor CAN was associated with the presence or the levels of Neuropeptide Y Autoantibodies[48].

Residual β-cell function

Several studies have shown a protective effect of residual β-cell function (*i.e.,* C-peptide levels) on the development and incidence of microvascular complications (including CAN) in patients with T1DM[49,50]. The exact mechanisms for these associations are not clear but it is thought that the C-peptide activates Na/K channels, lowers inflammation and improves NO bioavailability and endothelial function[51,52]. Small RCTs have shown beneficial effect of C-peptide treatment on CAN parameters[53].

Genetic factors

More recently data suggesting genetic predisposition to CAN have emerged. In a study of 154 patients with T2DM, TCF7L2 gene was found to be strongly associated with the presence of CAN, as assessed by deep breathing, lying to standing, Valsalva manoeuvre and postural hypotension tests (OR = 8.28, $P = 0.022$ for the rs7903146 allele)[54]. Another study on healthy Japanese individuals showed that the T393C polymorphism of the gene encoding the Gs-protein-α-subunit (GNAS1) is significantly associated with cardiovascular autonomic dysfunction, detected with power spectral analysis ($P < 0.05$ for TT + TC *vs* CC polymorphism)[55]. Twins studies, however, failed to show an association between CAN and genetic factors[56].

Obstructive sleep apnoea

Obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA) is emerging as another possible factor in the development of CAN. OSA is very common in patients with diabetes and has been associated with increased sympathetic tone in patients without diabetes[57,58]. The interrelationship between OSA and CAN in patients with DM requires further investigation and is likely to be bidirectional. While the intermittent hypoxia that occurs in OSA could lead to increased oxidative stress, nitrosative stress, and impaired microvascular complications which could lead to CAN[59], CAN on the other hand could lead to changes in upper airways tone and changes in respiratory drive which could predispose the patient to OSA. One recent study presented in the Diabetic Neuropathy Study Group of the European Association for the Study of Diabetes 2012 meeting showed that the prevalence of CAN was similar in patients with T2DM with and without OSA, but CAN severity was worse in the OSA group (Tahrani *et al*[59], unpublished data). Furthermore, the presence of CAN was associated with more severe apnoea/hypopnea episodes (Tahrani *et al*[59], unpublished data).

NATURAL HISTORY OF CAN

DM affects the autonomic (as well as the peripheral) nervous system in an ascending length-dependent manner. The vagus nerve, which anatomically is the longest autonomic nerve and physiologically mediates 75% of the overall parasympathetic activity, tends to be involved early in the course of CAN development. The early stages of CAN therefore involve reduction in parasympathetic activity, which results in sympathetic predominance. This increase in sympathetic tone continues until the latest stage of CAN when sympathetic denervation ensues, which spreads gradually from the apex to the base of the heart[60,61].

CAN is divided into a sub-clinical and a clinical stage. During the initial sub-clinical stage, CAN is detected through abnormalities in frequency and time domains of the spectral analysis of HRV and the Baroreflex Sensitivity (BRS) tests, as well as an increased torsion of the left ventricle (LV) on cardiac imaging before the development of abnormalities in standard cardiac autonomic reflex testing (CART) (please see below for details)[62-67]. Studies have shown that these abnormalities can even be present at the time of diagnosis of DM[63]. CAN progresses and parasympathetic denervation is followed by compensatory sympathetic overdrive, resulting in abnormal CARTs followed by symptomatic CAN in which the clinical manifestations become apparent (please see below). At the stage of sympathetic denervation, autonomic dysfunction correlates clinically with postural hypotension[63] (Figure 2). The time scale for the progression of subclinical CAN to the development of abnormal CART is unclear; similarly the natural history of the development of early cardiac abnormalities (such as torsion or deficits in myocardial perfusion or cardiac energetic) and its relationship to subclinical CAN is also unclear. But we estimate that many patients with sub-clinical CAN will develop abnormal CART and early features of cardiac involvement within 5 years of developing abnormal frequency and time domain parameters.

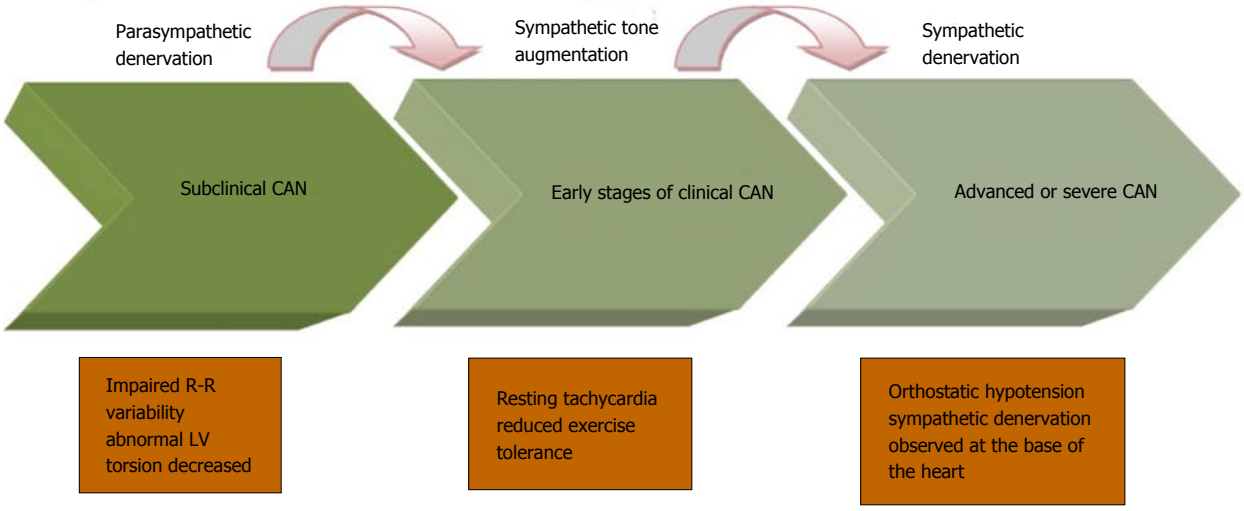


Figure 2 Natural progression of CAN and correlation with clinical signs and symptoms. CAN: Cardiac autonomic neuropathy; LV: Left ventricle.

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS OF CAN

Resting tachycardia

Resting tachycardia is a common manifestation of CAN that occurs at a relatively early stage of the disease. A HR of 90-130 beats per minute (bpm) can be observed and is associated with a reduction in parasympathetic tone followed by increased sympathetic activity as CAN progresses[68]. A fixed HR which does not change during sleep, exercise or stress is a sign of complete cardiac denervation[69]. Moreover, poor HR response to adenosine is associated with higher risk for adverse cardiac events[70], including all-cause and CVD mortality[71]. Hence, resting HR can be used as a diagnostic and prognostic tool in patients with DM after excluding other causes of tachycardia[10].

Exercise intolerance

Impaired blood pressure, HR and cardiac stroke volume in response to exercise in the absence of structural or coronary cardiac disease are all features of CAN[69]. As disease progresses, the parasympathetic-sympathetic imbalance can lead to further impairment of the above parameters[68] which limits the diagnostic utility of exercise tolerance testing in these patients due to increased false-negative outcomes caused by blunted HR response[72]. In addition, patients with CAN should be tested using stress cardiac imaging (usually echocardiography) prior to starting an exercise program, especially those with high-risk profile[69].

Orthostatic hypotension

Orthostatic hypotension is a manifestation of advanced CAN. Orthostatic hypotension is defined as the reduction in systolic blood pressure by > 20 mmHg or in diastolic blood pressure by > 10 mmHg 2 min following postural change from supine to standing[17,19,69]. Orthostatic hypotension occurs as a result of the impairment of the sympathetic response to postural change secondary to poor norepinephrine response and abnormalities in the baro-receptor sensitivity, resulting in inadequate HR response and peripheral vasoconstriction[23,69]. Orthostatic hypotension can be aggravated by many medications that are commonly used in patients with DM such as diuretics, vasodilators, tricyclic antidepressants and insulin[63]. Similar to resting tachycardia, assessing the presence of orthostatic hypotension is of prognostic value as a marker of advanced CAN[10]. In the middle-aged general population, orthostatic hypotension has been shown to be an independent prognostic factor for CVD and all-cause mortality[73].

Silent ischaemia

CAN is associated with a prolonged subjective angina threshold (which is defined as the time between the observation of 1 mm ST depression on the electrocardiogram and the development of symptoms of angina pectoris); thus rendering patients with CAN susceptible for experiencing silent myocardial ischaemia and potentially infarction, despite being asymptomatic[74]. A meta-analysis of 12 cross-sectional studies showed that CAN is associated with silent ischaemia in patients with DM (the Mantel-Haenszel estimate for prevalence rate risk was 1.96, 95%CI: 1.53-2.51)[17]. A study of 120 patients with DM and no previous CVD found evidence that CAN (detected using the Valsalva manoeuvre, the deep breath test and lying-to-standing HRV) was a better predictor of major cardiac events [*i.e.,* myocardial infarction or myocardial infarction (MI)] than the presence of silent ischaemia (OR = 4.16, 95%CI: 1.01-17.19) but when CAN was combined with silent ischaemia the risk was even higher (5 out of 10 had a major event)[75]. A study from Spain that included 217 patients with T1DM and T2DM, found that the presence of autonomic neuropathy is independently associated with increased risk for developing silent ischaemia (as demonstrated by positive exercise test) (OR = 6.5, 95%CI: 1.3-7.9) especially when combined with other cardiovascular risk factors such as microalbuminuria[76]. In the Detection of Ischaemia in Asymptomatic Diabetic subjects study which included 1123 patients with T2DM,

CAN (defined as abnormal Valsalva manoeuvre) was also a predictor of silent ischaemia (defined using stress cardiac perfusion imaging) (OR = 5.6, 95%CI: 2.6-12.4, P = 0.0001)[77].

It is evident that patients with DM and CAN are at high risk of sustaining a major cardiovascular event during exercise, due to the limited perception of ischaemic pain which could delay the appropriate and timely response to ischaemia. A recent statement from the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy has emphasised the importance of integration of cardiac autonomic function testing into the current risk stratification pathways for patients with DM and established CVD risk factors[10].

The mechanisms underpinning relationship between CAN and silent ischaemia are not clear. Several mechanisms have been proposed including altered pain threshold, impaired afferent myocardial autonomic pathways and ischaemic processes not detected by routine electrocardiography. There has also been debate over whether the relationship between them is indeed a causative one, or both CAN and silent ischaemia are a product of coronary artery disease observed in diabetes[78,79].

Diabetic cardiomyopathy and LV dysfunction

Diabetic cardiomyopathy is a clinical entity that is characterised by changes in the biochemical signalling in the presence of a sympathetic-vagal imbalance resulting ultimately in left ventricular hypertrophy and remodelling, and therefore cardiac dysfunction in patients with DM in the absence of coronary artery disease[63]. Diabetic cardiomyopathy results in variable degrees of systolic and predominantly diastolic dysfunction in the absence of structural or valvular cardiac disease, coronary vessel disease, or hypertension[80,81]. Changes in the diastolic and/or systolic function can be identified on various diagnostic imaging modalities in otherwise asymptomatic patients and can precede the occurrence of macrovascular diabetic complications[82]. Frequently, the only detectable abnormality in the early stages of CAN is an isolated diastolic dysfunction with a normal LV ejection fraction[83] associated with high CVD morbidity[84,85].

Conventional echocardiography studies, with or without Doppler technique, showed that CAN is associated with significant reduction in the peak diastolic filling and an increase in the atrial component of diastole[69]. The introduction of new diagnostic modalities, such as the cardiac magnetic resonance imaging has allowed even more sensitive means of diagnosing and classifying diabetic cardiomyopathy even in the early stages by examining myocardial twist, torsion and strain[86]. Torsion is a measure of the apical rotation along the long axis of the heart and is followed by a rapid untwisting, occurring during the isovolumic relaxation phase[87]. Both torsion and maximal torsion rate have been found to be increased in patients with T2DM and preserved systolic function[86]. In patients with T1DM, increased torsion appears to be independent of energetic deficits but related to microvascular perfusion deficits and correlates with changes in sympathetic denervation[88,89]. Myocardial Perfusion Reserve (another diagnostic tool used for the detection of microvascular abnormalities) has been shown to detect the early stages of CAN in asymptomatic patients and to assess CAN severity[90].

There are several proposed mechanisms for the development of diabetic cardiomyopathy. The parasympathetic denervation observed in the early stages of the disease leads to a dominant sympathetic tone[91], which promotes a cascade of intrinsic metabolic changes, including the release of high myocardial catecholamine levels and catecholamine toxicity[92,93]. This catecholamine rise has been shown to induce mitochondrial uncoupling[94,95], switching energy generation on a cardiac level from myocardial glucose to free fatty acids, which is considered an inefficient energy source[96] and therefore increases the oxygen demand[94,95]. These alterations on the cardiac biochemical and cellular level, lead ultimately to programmed cell death and fibrosis[97,98], elevated oxygen consumption relevant to the cardiac work[99,100] and finally hypertrophy and remodelling of the LV[101]. Crucial mediators in the above process are the mitochondrial reactive oxygen species[102,103], insulin resistance[104] and calcium dependent apoptosis[102,105,106].

On a macroscopic level, diastolic dysfunction in CAN is associated with delayed relaxation, impaired filling and increased stiffness of the LV[107]. The previously described sympathetic predominance is a stimulator of the rennin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis, resulting in increased HR, cardiac output and peripheral vasoconstriction[108]. Studies have shown that this alteration on the cardiac profile can lead to reduction of coronary blood perfusion and diastolic dysfunction in patients with evidence of early microangiopathy[60]. Sympathetic overdrive may also lead LV wall stress and LV hypertrophy. Pop-Busui et al have recently shown in a large cohort of the DCCT/EDIC study, that CAN is associated with a mass increase as well as a concentric remodelling of the LV, independent of other risk factors[109].

Mortality/sudden death

CAN is associated with an increased mortality risk (Table 2). This was described in longitudinal studies in the early 1990s showing a 50% increase in 5 year-mortality risk in patients with DM and autonomic neuropathy compared to those without[110-113]. In a meta-analysis of 15 studies on the basis that they included patients with DM who had baseline assessment of HRV using one or more tests described by Maser *et al*[114] showed that the pooled estimated relative mortality risk was 2.14, (95%CI: 1.83-2.51, P < 0.0001), for those who had CAN. CAN was also found to have the strongest association with mortality amongst other risk factors in the EURODIAB IDDM Complications Study[115].

Even in patients with high CVD risk profile such as the population of the ACCORD trial, CAN was an independent predictor of all-cause mortality (HR = 2.14, 95%CI: 1.37-3.37) as well as CVD mortality (HR = 2.62, 95%CI: 1.4-4.91) after a mean follow-up of 3.5 years[29].

Table 2 Observed mortality in significant studies in the last two decades

Ref.	Country	*N* of subjects	Type of DM	FUp (yr)	Diagnostic test for CAN	Criteria applied	Mortality figures (expressed in HR, RR and incidence)	Comments
Veglio *et al*[226]	Italy	316	T1DM	5	(1) Resting heart rate (2) HRV during deep breathing (3) BP response to standing	⩾ 2 abnormal tests	Relative risk: 3.55 (1.4-8.9) and 2.21 (0.62-7.84, $P = 0.22$) after multivariate analysis for all-cause mortality	The mortality rates were 13% and 4% in the presence and absence of CAN respectively
Gerritsen *et al*[164] the Hoorn Study	Nether-lands	446	Non-DM	9	Seven parameters assessing HRV and BP response to: (1) 3-min breathing and (2) six deep breaths	Cut–off set as the lowest 25th percentile of non-diabetic group	Only E/I had a statistically significant association with mortality- Relative Risk: 2.25 (1.13–4.45) for all cause and 2.04 (0.74–5.65) for CVD mortality	An additional four parameters showed a tendency ($P < 0.10$) for association with acc-cause mortality: mean NN, LF power, HF power, and BRS
Chen *et al*[227]	Taiwan	159 612	T2DM T2DM	7.7	HRV response to: (1) single deep breath (2) six consecutive breaths (3) standing, (4) Valsalva manoeuvre	⩾ 3 abnormal tests	All cause mortality: 29% *vs* 12% with and without CAN respectively CVD mortality: 9% *vs* 2% in pts with and without CAN	The 8-yr survival rate for pts with abnormal CAN tests was 63.6% in males and 76.4% in females, compared with 80.9% and 93.3% for patients with normal CAN tests
Wheeler *et al*[228]	United States	843	T1DM and T2DM		HRV response to deep breathing and postural BP	Drop in BP ⩾ 30 mmHg and HRV divided into 5 quintiles	Hazard Ratio: 1.49 (1.01-2.19) for all-cause mortality and 1.08 (0.69-1.70) for CVD mortality	Of the 142 patients for whom cause of death was available, 75 deaths (49.7%) were due to CVD. The lowest quintile of HRV was associated with a 50% increase in mortality after adjusting for other risk factors
Astrup *et al*[229]	Denmark	388	T1DM (197 with macro-, 191 normo-albuminuria)	10.1	HRV to deep breathing	HRV < 10 bpm at baseline abnormal E/I	in the lowest quintile of HRV. Relative Risk for orthostatic hypotension: 0.65 (0.69-1.70) Relative risk: 4.9 (2.1-11.5, $P < 0.0001$) after adjustment for traditional CVD risk factors	During follow-up, 33 Patients died from cardiovascular causes, During follow-up 54 of 104 patients died: 41 patients (80.4%) with diabetic nephropathy and 13 patients (24.5%) with normoalbuminuria. Thirty patients (55%) died from cardio-vascular causes
Astrup *et al*[230]	Denmark	104	T2DM (51 with nephropathy, 52 with normal albuminuria)	9.2	HRV to deep breathing		Hazard Ratio: 0.92 (0.87–0.98, $P = 0.005$) for HRV (1 beat/min increase)	
Soedamah-Muthu *et al*[115] the EURODIAB PCS	16 European countries	2787	T1DM	7	HRV response to standing and postural BP	R-R ratio of < 1.04 and drop in systolic BP ⩾ 20 mmHg	Hazard Ratio: 3.61 (1.49–8.76) for CVD mortality and 2.83 (1.82–4.38) for all-cause mortality.	Autonomic neuropathy and microalbuminuria were the most important independent predictors of mortality
Lykke *et al*[231]	Denmark	391	T1DM	10	HRV and QTc		All cause mortality Hazard Ratio: 2.5 (0.9–6.8, $P = 0.071$) in pts with abnormal HRV and 2.3 (1.3-4.0, $P = 0.005$) in those with abnormal QT combined hazard ratio 6.7 (1.8-25, $P = 0.005$)	Out of 34 patients with both tests abnormal, 15 died in the 10 yr period (14 from cardiovascular causes)
Ziegler *et al*[232] MONICA/ KORA Augsburg Cohort study	Germany	1560 160	Non-DM DM	9	HRV, QTc interval and QTD	Group (1) Lowest quartile for SDNN, CV and max-min R-R intervals Group (2) QTc > 440, Group (3) QTD > 60 ms	All-cause mortality Relative Risk: 0.93 (0.65-1.34)/2.02 (1.29-3.17)/0.98 (0.60-1.60) in patients without DM and 1.74 (0.95-3.18)/3.00 (1.34-6.71)/0.42 (0.06-3.16) in patients with DM for group 1/2/3 respectively	Prolonged QTc interval was an independent predictor of mortality both in patients with and without DM, Low HRV trended towards an increased risk of mortality by 73% in patients with DM but not the population without DM
Beijers *et al*[233] the Hoorn Study	Nether-lands	376 114	Non-DM T2DM	13.6	HRV and BP response to: (1) 3-min breathing, (2) six deep breaths (3) standing	Calculated z-score for each parameter and averaged into a total CAD score	Relative risk: 2.54 (1.60–4.04) for CVD mortality and 2.11 (1.58–2.81) for all cause mortality,	CAN was associated with all-cause and CVD mortality independent to other CVD risk factors and microalbuminuria
Pop-Busui *et al*[29]	United States and Canada	8135	T2DM	3.5	HRV and QTI computed from 10-s resting electrocardiograms	CAN1: lowest quartile of SDNN and highest QTI quartile, CAN2: CAN1 and resting heart rate, CAN3: CAN1 and peripheral neuropathy	Hazard ratios: 1.55 (1.09-2.21)/2.14 (1.37-2.37)/2.07 (1.14-3.76) for all-cause and 1.94 (1.20-3.12)/2.62 (1.40-4.91)/2.95 (1.33-6.53) for CVD mortality in CAN1/CAN2/CAN3 respectively	CAN was independently associated with overall and CVD mortality after adjusting for baseline CVD, DM duration, traditional CVD risk factors and medications

FUP: Follow up; HR: Hazard ratio; RR: Relative risk; HRV: Heart rate variability; BP: Blood pressure; E/I: Expiration/inspiration; SDNN: Standard deviation of normally conducted R-R intervals; NN: Normal to normal R-R intervals; LF: Low frequency; HF: High frequency; BRS: Baroreflex sensitivity; CV: Coefficient of variation; QTD: QT dispersion; QTI: QT index; DM: Diabetes mellitus; T1DM: Type 1 diabetes mellitus; CAN: Cardiac autonomic neuropathy; CVD: Cardiovascular disease.

Interestingly the relationship between CAN and mortality was similar regardless of treatment allocation to the intensive or standard glycaemic control groups[29].

CAN was also found to be associated with a higher mortality risk in patients who had myocardial infarction[116], suggesting that screening for CAN in patients with DM who suffered a myocardial infarction can be used for risk stratification[117].

CAN is also associated with increased risk of sudden cardiac death[112,113,118]. This can be explained by the increased rate of fatal cardiac arrhythmias due to the imbalance between the sympathetic and parasympathetic autonomic function[119], as well as cardiac sympathetic denervation[67]. QT prolongation which has been associated with autonomic neuropathy in several studies[120-122], can also provide an alternative mechanism, rendering patients with CAN more susceptible to suffer life-threatening cardiac arrhythmias, including Torsades de Pointes[69]. The exact relationship between CAN and sudden cardiac death remains, however, under question. As shown by the Rochester Diabetic Neuropathy Study, sudden death cases are also related to severe coronary artery disease or LV dysfunction rather than CAN itself[123]. Nonetheless, as we discussed above, CAN seems to contribute to cardiovascular mortality even in those with established coronary artery disease.

Several mechanisms have been implicated in explaining the relationship between CAN and mortality in patients with DM. Autonomic neuropathy can lead to impaired response to hypoxic state[124], reduced hypoglycaemia awareness and prolonged hypoglycaemic episodes[111]. The observed mortality can also be attributed to a direct effect of autonomic neuropathy and its microvascular complications[125] as well as to an indirect association with end-organ complications, such as nephropathy, left ventricular hypertrophy and diastolic dysfunction[100]. In addition, the lack of the physiological nocturnal parasympathetic dominance in patients with CAN can lead to nocturnal hypertension, causing LV hypertrophy[126,127] and increasing the CVD burden[93,128].

Perioperative and intraoperative complications

Patients with CAN exhibit 2- to 3-times fold increase in perioperative morbidity (perioperative complications, impaired wound healing, impaired drug metabolism) and mortality[129,130]. Patients with CAN are more likely to require vasopressor support in the theatre setting[130]. They are also prone to experience a blood pressure and HR reduction during the induction of anaesthesia, as well as severe intraoperative hypothermia[131]. The above findings can be explained by an impairment or absence of the normal vasoconstrictive response to vasodilating anaesthesia in patients with CAN[130].

Cerebrovascular disease

Unlike the strong links between CAN and CVD, there is only limited data regarding the impact of CAN on cerebrovascular disease. In a study conducted by Töyry *et al*[132] that included 133 patients with T2DM, CAN was found to be an independent risk factor for developing stroke after 10 years of follow-up (OR = 6.7, 95%CI: 1.5-29.9 for HRV response to deep breathing and OR = 1.1, 95%CI: 1.01-1.2 for lying-standing BP). In a subanalysis of the Appropriate Blood Pressure Control in Diabetes population, including 950 patients with T2DM over a 5-year period, CAN was significantly associated with the occurrence of stroke, independent to other risk factors[133]. The later was also confirmed by a recent study including 1458 patients with T2DM who were followed up for 7 years[134].

Diabetic nephropathy

Several authors have hypothesized that CAN is involved in the pathogenesis of diabetic nephropathy, although causation has not been proven[135]. Sympathetic overactivity has been shown to cause glomerular and tubular dysfunction in diabetic animal models *via* indirect (hypertension and angiotensin Ⅱ) and direct (vascular smooth muscles proliferation, vasoconstriction, podocytes injury) insults[136]. CAN is associated with increased CVD morbidity and mortality[63,135] and with haemodynamic changes such as lack of nocturnal BP dipping (causing increased intra-glomerular pressure resulting in albuminuria)[137] and diurnal postural falls in BP (resulting in lower intra-glomerular pressure)[138] and endothelial dysfunction in humans. In addition, CAN is associated with deficits in erythropoietin production and, as a result, erythropoietin-deficiency anaemia[137]. Subsequently, CAN patients are deprived from the direct nephroprotective action of erythropoietin and thus, anaemia becomes a strong predictor of nephropathy and progression of chronic kidney disease[68]. In streptozotocin-diabetic rats, sympathetic overactivation has been shown to be involved in the pathogenesis of diabetic nephropathy[139] and renal denervation was shown to prevent glomerular hyperfiltration[140]. Hence it is plausible that CAN is involved in the development and progression of diabetic nephropathy. Several studies examined the association between CAN and either albuminuria and/or glomerular filtration rate[141-145], but all these studies had a cross-sectional design, hence causation cannot be proven, particularly that the pathogenesis of CAN is similar to other microvascular complications including diabetic nephropathy. Longitudinal studies are scarce and limited to a small number of patients with T1DM[138,146]. Hence, data regarding the longitudinal impact of CAN on diabetic nephropathy in patients with T2DM is lacking.

Lower limb complications

CAN has been proposed as a contributing factor in the development of lower limb vascular and neurological complications. Autonomic neuropathy can cause alterations in microvascular blood flow (MBF), which predispose to changes in skin structure and quality and impairment of sweat glands' innervation resulting in dry skin and increased risk of oedema and foot deformity which increases pressure on certain areas causing ulceration[147]. It is also believed that CAN, through the sympathetic

denervation of the lower limb vasculature, can induce lower extremity hyperaemia, increase inflammation and erosion into the joints/bones and therefore contribute in Charcot's neuroarthropathy. As a result, the patient with Charcot will typically present with prominent peripheral pulses due to vasodilatation and autonomic neuropathy. Power Spectral Analysis and HRV has been employed in trials for the detection of autonomic neuropathy in patients with Charcot's disease[148]. Similarly to Charcot's arthropathy, patients with recurrent vascular neuropathic ulcers appear to share analogous cardiac autonomic dysfunction, as shown by the use of HRV, Valsalva ratio and orthostatic hypotension[149].

THE DIAGNOSIS OF CAN

CARTs

Ewing *et al*[150] proposed in early 1970s five simple non-invasive tests to measure cardiac autonomic function based on the HR and blood pressure response to certain physiological manoeuvres. These tests include: (1) the HR response to deep breathing, which assesses beat to beat HR variation (R-R variation) during paced deep breathing [expiration-to-inspiration ratio (E:I)]; (2) the HR response to standing, which is expressed as the 30:15 ratio which is the ratio of the longest R-R interval (between the 20th and 40th beat) to the shortest R-R interval (between beats 5-25) elicited by a change from horizontal to vertical position; (3) the Valsalva manoeuvre which evaluates the HR response during and after a provoked increase in the intra-thoracic and intra-abdominal pressures (the patient normally exhales for a period of 15 seconds against a fixed resistance); (4) the blood pressure response to standing, which assesses the baro-reflex mediated blood pressure change following postural change; and finally; and (5) the blood pressure response to sustained handgrip, as defined by the diastolic blood pressure increase caused by the sustained muscle contraction with the use of a handgrip dynamometer[17]. The first two tests reflect defects in the parasympathetic activity (*i.e.,* the ability of the vagal nerve to slow the HR during the procedures which increases the R-R interval and hence increases the ratios), while the last two also describe changes in the sympathetic function (*i.e.*, the ability to provide appropriate BP and HR response to the activity involved)[151,152]. The autonomic changes that occur during the Valsalva manoeuvre are complex and involve both the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems[153], although the Valsalva ratio mostly represents parasympathetic activity. For more details about the autonomic changes during Valsalva please see[17].

While the above described CARTs have been widely used since their introduction, there is no evidence on the superiority of one test over another when it comes to assessing CAN[10]. However, the HR response to deep breathing is the most commonly utilised, because of its high reproducibility and specificity[154] and its ease of use[10,155]. All the tests are considered to be valid markers of autonomic dysfunction, given that end organ failure is excluded and parameters such as concomitant illness, use of over the counter medications and lifestyle factors (exercise, smoking, exercise) are taken into consideration[156].

HRV

A reduction in HRV has been associated with the early stages of clinical CAN. In healthy individuals, the beat-to-beat variability with aspiration is predominantly affected by the direct sympathetic and parasympathetic activity[62,157], as well as various other stimuli, including certain neurohumoral factors (catecholamines, thyroid hormones), temperature changes and mechanical and ionic changes in the sinus node[158]. The efferent sympathetic and vagal stimulation is characterised by synchronised discharges, modulated by central and peripheral oscillators, with the former referring to vasomotor and respiratory centres and the later to respiratory movements and arterial pressure. These synchronous neural discharges can manifest as short and long -term oscillations in the HR[63].

The R-R intervals recorded under paced breathing are transformed to generate the time and frequency domains. Conceptually, if the faster respiratory sinus arrhythmia signal and the slower mean HR changes could each be separated from the patient's cardiogram and analyzed independently, the result would yield a measure of Vagal outflow from the respiratory sinus arrhythmia and a measure of sympathetic activity from the changes in mean HR. Effectively this is what is accomplished in the frequency- or spectral-domain. Spectral analysis of respiratory sinus arrhythmia provides the indication of where in the frequency domain the Vagus is influencing the heart. The frequency domains are generated using continuous wavelet transform method (Fourier transform) and separated to three basic components: very-low-frequency, low-frequency (LF) and high-frequency (HF)[61,159]. HF represents vagal activity, whereas LF is attributed to the combined effect of sympathetic and parasympathetic influence[62,160]. Modern software (such as ANSAR technology) adjusts for the respiratory rate, hence simplifying the process. Parameters generated include: respiratory frequency (Rfa, 0.15 to 0.4 Hz, represents parasympathetic function), and LF (Lfa, 0.04 to 0.15 Hz, represents sympathetic function). The HRV and BP are recorded with the patient in sitting position during resting, deep breathing, Valsalva manoeuvre and standing position.

The electrocardiogram (ECG) recordings were initially longer in duration, usually over a period of 24 h but recent data has demonstrated that recording of shorter duration can provide equally reliable information[16,158,161]. Time domain analysis is a useful tool in the assessment of parasympathetic activity by measuring the normal R-R intervals, whereas the frequency domain is based on the spectral analysis of R-R interval and other cardiovascular and respiratory signals based on short-term ECG recordings (2-5 min)[69,158].

The key element in the accurate use and interpretation of HRV models is the standardisation of the conditions under which the test is carried, including age, blood pres-

sure, HR, tobacco smoking or caffeine use and, above all, respiration control[69].

Baro-reflex sensitivity

The BRS measures the cardiac vagal and sympathetic baro-reflex function. The idea behind its function is that an increase in the BP normally induces a reflective increase in the vagal cardiac efferents and a reduction to the efferent sympathetic activity, resulting in bradycardia and hypotension, due to the reduction in cardiac output as well as the peripheral vasodilation[158]. A reduction in BP induces opposite responses. Thus, to correctly measure the baro-reflex function, both the vagal efferent activity (evidenced by changes in HR in response to changes in BP), and the sympathetic efferent activity (affecting the arterial vessels) should be taken into account.

In practice, the term "baro-reflex sensitivity" normally applies to the cardiac-vagal arm, and to methods measuring changes in HR in response to changes in (systolic) BP. The test can be performed either with the use of pharmacological methods (intravenous bolus injection of epinephrine)[162] or non-pharmacological techniques (physical manoeuvres such as postural change). Although the former is considered the gold standard to date for evaluating BRS, both of them correlate well clinically with each other[163]. Both techniques require a continuous measure of BP and a continuous and synchronised measure of HR (R-R interval)[158].

BRS can be used for detecting sub-clinical CAN[63], since BRS can be abnormal in diabetes, before the demonstration of any clinical signs of CAN or other conventional autonomic function tests detect any abnormalities[64,65]. Several studies on patients with diabetes have concluded that BRS is a strong independent risk factor for mortality[164], especially in cohorts suffering from heart failure or following a myocardial infarction[162,165].

Scintigraphy

The use of Single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) and/or positron emission tomography (PET) and sympathetic neurotransmitter analogues, such as the ^{123}I-metaiodobenylguanide (^{123}I-MIBG) (SPECT), the ^{11}C-metahydroxyephedrine (^{11}C-HED) (PET) and ^{11}C-epinephrine has enabled the quantitative scintigraphic evaluation of cardiac sympathetic innervation[63].

^{123}I-MIBG undergoes rapid uptake in the myocardium but as it is semi-quantitative is not a precise indicator of neuronal uptake[158]. Metabolically stable ^{11}C-HED demonstrates a highly specific uptake by the sympathetic nerves mediated by norepinephrine transporters[166]. It is important, however, to take myocardial perfusion (which affects the delivery of the tracer of interest) into consideration before interpreting the results of these imaging techniques. Retention defects of both ^{123}I-MIBG and ^{11}C-HED have been reported in patients with T1DM and T2DM and have been variably correlated with abnormal but also normal CARTs[60,67,167]. The consistent pattern of sympathetic denervation in patients with T1DM supports the notion that ^{11}C-HED can be used to monitor the population of sympathetic nerves and evaluate the regional autonomic deficits of sympathetic innervations[66,166,167]. In patients with CAN and T1DM, the wash rates of ^{11}C-epinephrine have been shown to correlate well with those of ^{11}C-HED[158]. The development of microvascular complications has been associated with the augmentation in sympathetic tone and adrenergic hyperresponsiveness, by the use of ^{11}C-HED[63]. As CAN reaches an advanced stage, a heterogenous pattern of ^{11}C-HED retention is observed, with a reduced ^{11}C-HED retention in the distal LV and a persistent or increased ^{11}C-HED retention seen proximally, indicating a proximal to distal pattern of sympathetic denervation of the LV[63].

Increases in the sympathetic nervous tone and elevated epinephrine levels can affect the retention of sympathetic neurotransmitter analogues, making the interpretation of the above scintigraphic models rather challenging. Furthermore, the lack of standardisation, the high cost and the demand on highly skilled operators, restricts the role of scintigraphy as a valuable research tool and not a part of daily clinical routine[68].

When it comes to radiation exposure, ^{123}I-MIBG lacks a β-particle emission and has a half-life of 13.2 h, whereas its energy of the primary imaging photon is calculated at 159 keV (kiloelectron volt)[168]. When compared to ^{131}I, ^{123}I-labelled agent is to be considered the radiopharmaceutical of choice as it has a more favourable dosimetry and better radiation profile. Whole-body radiation is markedly lower using ^{11}C-HED PET [effective dose equivalent in adults, 1.2 milliSieverts (mSv)] compared with ^{123}I-MIBG scintigraphy (effective dose equivalent in adults, 6.0 mSv)[169]. The radiation dose to the whole body from 20 milliCuri (mCi) ^{11}C-HED is 0.186 rad, less than that from 0.5 mCi ^{131}I-MIBG IBG (0.45 rad) or 10 mCi ^{123}I-MIBG (0.53 rad)[170].

Muscle nerve sympathetic nerve activity

Muscle sympathetic nerve activity (MSNA) is based on the ability to record efferent sympathetic nerve signals in the skeletal muscles either at rest or in response to physiological perturbations with the use of microelectrodes into a fascicle or a distal sympathetic nerve of the skin or muscle (microneurography)-usually the peroneal nerve[171].

MSNA is the most direct measure of peripheral sympathetic activity and therefore a useful research tool. However, its invasiveness, cost and time-consuming nature is not recommended for routine autonomic assessment[158].

Other tests

Occasionally, various tests have been proposed for the assessment, diagnosis and monitoring of CAN. A recent study on 167 patients with type I diabetes conducted by the University of Liege, found the use of pulsatile stress, which measures the arterial stiffness, correlates well with baro-reflex sensitivity, suggesting therefore that arterial stiffness can be used as a marker of CAN[172]. The association between arterial stiffness (expressed as carotid-femoral wave velocity (PWV)) had already been explored

Significance of CAN

According to the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy statement, *screening for CAN* in the patients with DM should be considered good clinical practice, due to the following:

(1) It enables the accurate and clinical relevant diagnosis of various CAN forms

(2) It assists in the appropriate detection and subsequently the tailored treatment of CAN multiple clinical manifestations as described in the previous section

(3) It provides a clinical tool for the risk stratification for diabetic complications as well as the cardiovascular morbidity and mortality

(4) It can be used for the modulation of targets of diabetes treatment

Figure 3 Current recommendations on screening for cardiac autonomic neuropathy. CAN: Cardiac autonomic neuropathy; DM: Diabetes mellitus.

by another study. After multivariable linear regression, the association between CAN (E/I index in particular) and PWV not only remained significant but E/I index was the strongest predictor of PWV in the model (β coefficient: -0.326, 95%CI: (-3.110)-(-0.750), $P = 0.002$)[173]. Catecholamine kinetics, most specifically epinephrine and norepinephrine plasma clearance have been labelled as the biochemical equivalent of MSNA but they have failed to date to produce reliable diagnostic data[158].

Another aspect of autonomic function is the assessment of cutaneous MBF. The skin offer an accessible organ to asses MBF and endothelial function, which is often involved in the development of micro and macrovascular diabetes, correlates with systematic endothelial function measures and myocardial microcirculation[174]. Several methods are available to assess skin MBF[175]. Laser Doppler (LD) allows the determination of blood flow under basal conditions or following physical (*e.g.,* heating) or pharmacological (*e.g.,* acetylcholine and/or sodium nitroprusside) stimulation; allowing the differentiation between endothelial-dependant and independent responses[174]. Furthermore, LD allows the measurement of nerve axon reflex-related vasodilation following acetylcholine iontophoresis which is the result of C-fibre stimulation[176]. LD techniques include LD flowmetry, LD perfusion imaging and laser speckle contrast imaging[158,174].

Another assessment of the peripheral autonomic system is intra epidermal nerve fibre density (IENFD) using immuno staining[177]. IENFD is highly sensitive and specific to diagnose small fibre neuropathy (88%-98% and 88.8%-95% respectively)[178]. IENFD correlates also inversely with thermal thresholds[178]. In addition, IENFD innervates the sweat glands. Reduction in sweat production in the feet contributes to the development of dry skin/callus and hence predispose to the development of foot ulceration. This function can be assessed by several methods such as Neuropad[147] and Sudoscan[179].

CRITERIA FOR DIAGNOSIS AND STAGING

HR responses to deep breathing, standing and Valsalva manoeuvre, as well as blood pressure response to standing (CART) are considered as the gold standard in clinical testing for autonomic neuropathy[10]. Their applicability in bedside clinical practice is based on their sensitivity, specificity, reproducibility, ease and safety of use and standardisation.

According to the CAN Subcommittee of the Toronto Consensus Panel statement following the 8th international symposium on diabetic neuropathy in 2010[10], the criteria for diagnosis and staging of CAN are as follows: (1) A single abnormal CART result suffices for the diagnosis of possible or early CAN; (2) The presence of two or three abnormal test among the seven autonomic cardiovascular indices (5 CARTS, time-domain and frequency-domain HRV tests) are required for the diagnosis of definite or confirmed CAN; and (3) The presence of orthostatic hypotension in addition to the above criteria signifies the presence of severe of advanced CAN.

SCREENING FOR CAN

The majority of diabetes patients with CAN have subclinical or asymptomatic disease, rendering the diagnosis and appreciation of CAN in clinical practice rather difficult[63]. Once CAN reaches the stage that becomes clinically evident, the disease might have reached an advanced level and management becomes more difficult. Screening for early CAN is therefore considered good clinical practice several reasons as summarised in Figure 3[10].

The Toronto Diabetic Neuropathy Expert Group in a recent statement have recommended that screening should be considered for patients at time of diagnosis of T2DM and within 5 years of diagnosis of T1DM, particularly in patients with other macro- and/or microvascular complications[180]. Patients with a history of poor glycaemic control are especially at risk for developing CAN, as demonstrated in several studies, suggesting that this clinical group may benefit from screening[17]. Due to its impact on exercise tolerance, testing for CAN should be a part of the screening in patients that are about to begin a new exercise programme that involves more intense physical activity than brisk walking[69,181]. Evidence also suggests that screening for CAN could be incorporated into the perioperative assessment of patients with poor glycaemic control and coronary artery disease, due to the association between CAN and haemodynamic instability peri- and intra-operatively[182]. Finally, testing for CAN could potentially be of benefit in patients with DM that have suffered MI, as this would serve in the risk stratifica-

tion of this subgroup and assist into adapting a more aggressive therapeutic approach for those at risk of sudden cardiac death or life threatening arrhythmias.

THERAPEUTIC APPROACHES FOR CAN

CAN treatment can either be symptomatic or aimed at slowing or reversing CAN progression. However, effective therapies to slow or reverse CAN progression are rather limited as the complete underlying pathogenesis remains unclear. However, based on our current understanding of CAN pathogenesis and risk factors, several potential treatments have been examined.

Lifestyle modification

Lifestyle changes have been shown to have a beneficial impact on the prevention of CAN progression in the Steno-2 trial[5] and the Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP)[183]. In the Steno-2 study, patients with T2DM and microalbuminuria were randomised to a multi-factorial cardiovascular risk factor intervention that included behavioural therapy (diet, physical exercise and smoking cessation) and pharmacological intervention (to control BP, lipids and hyperglycaemia) or conventional treatment in accordance to the national guidelines. After an average of 7.8 years of follow-up, the risk for developing CAN was significantly lower on the intervention arm (49% in the intensive group *vs* 65% in the conventional group, HR = 0.37, 95%CI: 0.18-0.79, $P = 0.002$). In the DPP, lifestyle modification demonstrated superior results in the improvement of autonomic dysfunction (assessed with HRV and QT indexes) as compared to the use of metformin or placebo.

Weight loss and dietary intervention accompanied[69] or not[184] by supervised training was associated with improvement on CAN indices. Aerobic training has also been shown to improve CAN, with some indication that mild physical exercise is recommended in less severe CAN cases. A recent review summarising the evidence for the impact of life style interventions on CAN has concluded that moderate endurance and aerobic exercise in both T1DM and T2DM, improve HRV and cardiac autonomic function significantly, in favour of parasympathetic dominance, independent of BMI, glycaemic or BP control and duration of diabetes[185].

Intensive glycaemic control

Hyperglycaemia is a major risk factor for CAN development and progression. Intensive glycaemic control has been shown to slow the progression and prevent/delay the development of CAN[18,66,186,187]. In the DCCT trial, intensive glycaemic control in a group of patients with T1DM reduced the CAN incidence by 50% over 6.5 years follow-up compared with conventional therapy (7% *vs* 14% respectively)[19]. These beneficial effects persisted 13-14 years after close-out of the trial[18]. Although both former treatment arms exhibited deterioration in CAN during follow-up after the end of the DCCT, the former intensive treatment group continued to demonstrate a statistically significant slower decline in CAN.

PET cardiac imaging with the use of 11C-HED showed similar beneficial effects in a 3-year prospective trial. Good glycaemic control (defined as mean HbA1c < 8%) was associated with reduction of sympathetic denervation as opposed to the group of poor diabetes control (HbA1c $\geqslant$ 8%)[167]. In the SEARCH CVD study, 354 young patients with T1DM were assessed for the presence of sub-clinical autonomic dysfunction, as demonstrated by the use of HRV parameters and the presence parasympathetic loss with sympathetic override. Poor glycaemic control, as defined by HbA1C > 7.5%, was independently associated with the presence of subclinical CAN as compared to a frequency-matched control group without DM[188].

The effects of glycaemic control in T2DM are not similarly encouraging. Data from recent studies have failed to demonstrate differences in the incidence of CAN based on the application of intensive therapy in T2DM patients[189,190]. The sensitivity of tests utilised for the diagnosis of CAN in those trials, however have been questioned, suggesting that more research is needed to investigate the relationship between metabolic control and CAN in patients with T2DM.

Therapies based on CAN pathogenesis

There is limited but increasing data on the use of pharmacotherapy targeting specific pathogenic pathways. The use of the specific antioxidant α-lipoic acid improved CAN in patients with T2DM in a 4-mo controlled randomised trial[191]. In animal models, the pharmacological agents FP15 and FeTMPS, which act by catalysing the decomposition of peroxynitrite, have shown promising results in improving neuronal function[192-194]. The use of glucagon-like peptide 1 analogues or the dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors have demonstrated cardioprotective[195] and neuroprotective properties[196], raising the possibility of their use for treatment not only for peripheral neuropathy, but autonomic neuropathy as well. In small scale studies, aldose reductase inhibitors have been shown to improve LV function in patients with DAN without any alteration on CAN indices[197]. There is also evidence suggesting the vitamin E and C-peptide can both improve HRV indices[10]. In a randomised controlled trial, vitamin E when compared to placebo managed to increase the R-R interval ($P < 0.05$) and the HF component of HRV (HF; $P < 0.05$) in 50 patients with T2DM over a period of 4 mo[198]. Small RCTs have shown beneficial effect of C-peptide treatment on CAN parameters[53]. In a recent randomised placebo-controlled trial of 44 patients with T1DM, treatment with a triple antioxidant regime (allopurinol, α-lipoic acid and nicotinamide) over the course of 2 years failed to prevent progression of CAN and had no benefit on myocardial perfusion as demonstrated with scintigraphic imaging modalities[199]. Further research is required to confirm these findings and explore other potential pathogenetic therapies.

The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis

There is substantial data to support the use of certain pharmacological agents in the improvement of the left ventricular dysfunction associated with autonomic neuropathy in diabetes. In patients with heart failure, the use of bisoprolol[200] or the addition of spironolactone to enalapril, furosemide and digoxin[201], demonstrated a beneficial effect on autonomic function, as shown by HRV testing and sympatho-vagal balance respectively. The use of angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors could potentially improve the parasympathetic/sympathetic balance[202] and improve prognosis in cardiac failure[203]. The addition of angiotensin receptor blockers to ACE inhibitors may be superior to monotherapy[204-206], due to the enhanced blockade on the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis[207]. In a small study by Didangelos *et al*[208], including 62 patients with type I and type II DM, the use of ACE inhibitors or ARBs, as well their combination, managed to improve both diabetic autonomic neuropathy and LV diastolic dysfunction.

Symptomatic treatment of orthostatic hypotension

Treatment of orthostatic hypotension is required in symptomatic patients with autonomic neuropathy. There are several strategies available, including lifestyle and behavioural measures as well as pharmacological options. The former include advice provided to the patients to avoid sudden changes in body posture, eat smaller and more frequent meals, avoid drugs-precipitants of postural hypotension (diuretics, tricyclic antidepressants, α-adrenoreceptor antagonists), perform physical countermanoeuvres (leg crossing, stooping and squatting), increase fluid and salt intake, avoid physical activity that leads to straining and finally use garments over legs and abdomen[69,209].

If the above measures fail to improve symptoms, pharmacological intervention may be considered. A risk-benefit consideration should take place for each individual before starting a medication, especially weighing up the risk of developing marked supine hypertension against the benefit of preserving the erect blood pressure. Should a pharmacological agent be considered appropriate by the clinician, there are several options available[210-212].

Midodrine, a peripheral selective α_1-adrenergic agonist, is considered a first line agent that acts through peripheral vasoconstriction of arterioles and veins. It remains to date the only drug approved by the food and drug administration (FDA) for the treatment of orthostatic hypotension[213,214]. However, post-market trials to prove drug's efficacy are still ongoing and the final results on midodrine's benefits are scheduled to be published in 2014, 18 years after the drug was given FDA approval[215].

9-α-fluorohydrocortisone, a synthetic mineralocorticoid, is another first line option that acts through sodium retention and plasma expansion[216]. In a double-blinded crossover study, 9-α-fluorohydrocortisone treated successfully the orthostatic hypotension of patients with diabetes and autonomic neuropathy[216]. 9-α-fluorohydrocortisone doses between 100 and 400 micrograms decreased significantly the orthostatic hypotension in 14 symptomatic patients with DM over a mean period of 12 mo ($P < 0.001$)[217]. Extra care should be taken when prescribed in patients with cardiac failure, as it can lead to fluid overload. There is usually a period of 10-14 d before its effects can become clinically evident[212].

Somatostatin and somatostatin analogues (octreotide) inhibit the release of vasoactive peptides from the GI tract and thus increase splanchnic vasoconstriction, leading to increase in mean blood pressure[218]. The use of long acting octreotide in patients with autonomic neuropathy increased the mean systolic BP from 83.8 ± 7.1 mmHg to 104.1 ± 3.1 mmHg ($P < 0.025$) within eight weeks, improving orthostatic dizziness and fatigue[219]. In a study of 18 patients with idiopathic orthostatic hypotension, octreotide reduced postural, postprandial and exertion-induced hypotension, as demonstrated by 24-h ambulatory blood pressure profiles and cusum analyses[220].

Other available pharmacological strategies include the use of erythropoietin which can increase the erect BP through the increase of red cell mass and circulating volume, the improvement of anaemia and its regulatory effect on vascular tone[221] and desmopressin acetate whose efficacy is mainly observed in morning time hypotension[212]. Finally, caffeine and acarbose can potentially be used in the management of post-prandial hypotension[212]. In a case report of 58 years old patient with DM and severe postprandial hypotension refractory to the use of midodrine and octreotide, acarbose (an alpha-glucosidase inhibitor) reduced the postural drop from 50 mmHg to 18 mmHg, improving the patients symptoms dramatically[222].

Unfortunately, despite the different options available, postural hypotension remains a difficult condition to treat and many patients require multiple therapies and develop severe intractable disabling symptoms. Beta blockers might help controlling the tachycardia in some patients[69].

CONCLUSION -SYNOPSIS AND FUTURE CONSIDERATIONS

CAN is very common and is an underdiagnosed complication of DM. CAN is associated with significant increase in morbidity and mortality and plays an important role in the development of diabetic cardiomyopathy and silent ischaemia. Clinicians interpreting exercise tolerance testing should be aware of the reduced accuracy of this test in patients with CAN. In addition, CAN might play a role in the pathogenesis of diabetes-related microvascular complications and the development of lower limb complications. However, before CAN is symptomatic and evident clinically, patients might have sub-clinical CAN for several years. The time scale for the progression from sub-clinical to clinically evident CAN is unknown. In addition, the time scale for the progression from early abnormalities (such as increased LV torsion) to clini-

cally detectable cardiac disease is also unknown. Recent guidelines have recommended screening for CAN in patients with diabetes and issued guidance regarding the criteria used to diagnose CAN. CAN is assessed using several methods including CARTs, HRV, and imaging amongst others. The use of HRV and spectral analysis has simplified CAN testing which nonetheless remains time consuming. Despite our improved understanding of the pathogenesis of CAN, disease modifying treatment is lacking. Improving glycaemic control, life style changes and CVD risk factors management are the mainstay of treatment, which generally slow the progression of CAN rather than reversing it.

Further research exploring the natural history of CAN and the natural history of the impact of CAN on CVD is needed. Better understanding of CAN pathogenesis is also required in order to develop disease modifying treatments. OSA is increasingly recognised as an important contributor to the development of microvascular complications in DM, hence it is important to clarify the relationship between CAN and OSA as this might identify new treatment targets.

REFERENCES

1 **Federation ID**. IDF Diabetes Atlas 2012 Update. 2012 Available from: URL: http: //www.idf.org/diabetesatlas/5e/Update2012

2 **Kannel WB**, McGee DL. Diabetes and cardiovascular disease. The Framingham study. *JAMA* 1979; **241**: 2035-2038 [PMID: 430798 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1979.03290450033020]

3 **Grundy SM**, Benjamin IJ, Burke GL, Chait A, Eckel RH, Howard BV, Mitch W, Smith SC, Sowers JR. Diabetes and cardiovascular disease: a statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association. *Circulation* 1999; **100**: 1134-1146 [PMID: 10477542 DOI: 10.1161/01.cir.100.10.1134]

4 **Colhoun HM**, Betteridge DJ, Durrington PN, Hitman GA, Neil HA, Livingstone SJ, Thomason MJ, Mackness MI, Charlton-Menys V, Fuller JH. Primary prevention of cardiovascular disease with atorvastatin in type 2 diabetes in the Collaborative Atorvastatin Diabetes Study (CARDS): multicentre randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2004; **364**: 685-696 [PMID: 15325833 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(04)16895-5]

5 **Gaede P**, Vedel P, Larsen N, Jensen GV, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Multifactorial intervention and cardiovascular disease in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 383-393 [PMID: 12556541 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa021778]

6 Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. *Lancet* 1998; **352**: 837-853 [PMID: 9742976 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(98)07019-6]

7 Tight blood pressure control and risk of macrovascular and microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes: UKPDS 38. UK Prospective Diabetes Study Group. *BMJ* 1998; **317**: 703-713 [PMID: 9732337 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.317.7160.703]

8 **Maser RE**, Pfeifer MA, Dorman JS, Kuller LH, Becker DJ, Orchard TJ. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy and cardiovascular risk. Pittsburgh Epidemiology of Diabetes Complications Study III. *Arch Intern Med* 1990; **150**: 1218-1222 [PMID: 2353855 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.1990.00390180056009]

9 **Maser RE**, Lenhard JM, DeCherney SG. Cardiovascular Autonomic Neuropathy: The Clinical Significance of Its Determination. *Endocrinologist* 2000; **10**: 27 [DOI: 10.1097/00019616-200010010-00006]

10 **Spallone V**, Ziegler D, Freeman R, Bernardi L, Frontoni S, Pop-Busui R, Stevens M, Kempler P, Hilsted J, Tesfaye S, Low P, Valensi P; on behalf of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy*. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: clinical impact, assessment, diagnosis, and management. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2011 Jun 22; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 21695768 DOI: 10.1002/dmrr.1239]

11 **Kennedy WR**, Navarro X, Sutherland DE. Neuropathy profile of diabetic patients in a pancreas transplantation program. *Neurology* 1995; **45**: 773-780 [PMID: 7723969 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.45.4.773]

12 **Pfeifer MA**, Weinberg CR, Cook DL, Reenan A, Halter JB, Ensinck JW, Porte D. Autonomic neural dysfunction in recently diagnosed diabetic subjects. *Diabetes Care* 1984; **7**: 447-453 [PMID: 6499637]

13 **Verrotti A**, Chiarelli F, Blasetti A, Morgese G. Autonomic neuropathy in diabetic children. *J Paediatr Child Health* 1995; **31**: 545-548 [PMID: 8924309 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1754.1995.tb00881.x]

14 **Ziegler D**. Diabetic cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy: prognosis, diagnosis and treatment. *Diabetes Metab Rev* 1994; **10**: 339-383 [PMID: 7796704 DOI: 10.1002/dmr.5610100403]

15 **Javorka K**, Javorková J, Petrásková M, Tonhajzerová I, Buchanec J, Chromá O. Heart rate variability and cardiovascular tests in young patients with diabetes mellitus type 1. *J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab* 1999; **12**: 423-431 [PMID: 10821222 DOI: 10.1515/JPEM.1999.12.3.423]

16 **Pop-Busui R**. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetes: a clinical perspective. *Diabetes Care* 2010; **33**: 434-441 [PMID: 20103559 DOI: 10.2337/dc09-1294]

17 **Vinik AI**, Freeman R, Erbas T. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Semin Neurol* 2003; **23**: 365-372 [PMID: 15088257 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-817720]

18 **Pop-Busui R**, Low PA, Waberski BH, Martin CL, Albers JW, Feldman EL, Sommer C, Cleary PA, Lachin JM, Herman WH. Effects of prior intensive insulin therapy on cardiac autonomic nervous system function in type 1 diabetes mellitus: the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications study (DCCT/EDIC). *Circulation* 2009; **119**: 2886-2893 [PMID: 19470886 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.108.837369]

19 The effect of intensive diabetes therapy on measures of autonomic nervous system function in the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT). *Diabetologia* 1998; **41**: 416-423 [PMID: 9562345]

20 **Karavanaki K**, Baum JD. Prevalence of microvascular and neurologic abnormalities in a population of diabetic children. *J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab* 1999; **12**: 411-422 [PMID: 10821221 DOI: 10.1515/JPEM.1999.12.3.411]

21 **Young RJ**, Ewing DJ, Clarke BF. Nerve function and metabolic control in teenage diabetics. *Diabetes* 1983; **32**: 142-147 [PMID: 6298040 DOI: 10.2337/diab.32.2.142]

22 **Boulton AJ**, Vinik AI, Arezzo JC, Bril V, Feldman EL, Freeman R, Malik RA, Maser RE, Sosenko JM, Ziegler D. Diabetic neuropathies: a statement by the American Diabetes Association. *Diabetes Care* 2005; **28**: 956-962 [PMID: 15793206]

23 **Low PA**, Benrud-Larson LM, Sletten DM, Opfer-Gehrking TL, Weigand SD, O'Brien PC, Suarez GA, Dyck PJ. Autonomic symptoms and diabetic neuropathy: a population-based study. *Diabetes Care* 2004; **27**: 2942-2947 [PMID: 15562211 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.27.12.2942]

24 **Witte DR**, Tesfaye S, Chaturvedi N, Eaton SE, Kempler P, Fuller JH. Risk factors for cardiac autonomic neuropathy in type 1 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetologia* 2005; **48**: 164-171 [PMID: 15619072 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-004-1617-y]

25 **Gaede P**, Lund-Andersen H, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Effect of a multifactorial intervention on mortality in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 580-591 [PMID: 18256393 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0706245]

26 **Ko SH**, Park SA, Cho JH, Song KH, Yoon KH, Cha BY, Son

HY, Yoo KD, Moon KW, Park YM, Ahn YB. Progression of cardiovascular autonomic dysfunction in patients with type 2 diabetes: a 7-year follow-up study. *Diabetes Care* 2008; **31**: 1832-1836 [PMID: 18509202 DOI: 10.2337/dc08-0682]

27 **Valensi P**, Pariès J, Attali JR. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetic patients: influence of diabetes duration, obesity, and microangiopathic complications--the French multicenter study. *Metabolism* 2003; **52**: 815-820 [PMID: 12870154 DOI: 10.1016/S0026-0495(03)00095-7]

28 **Kempler P**, Tesfaye S, Chaturvedi N, Stevens LK, Webb DJ, Eaton S, Kerényi Z, Tamás G, Ward JD, Fuller JH. Autonomic neuropathy is associated with increased cardiovascular risk factors: the EURODIAB IDDM Complications Study. *Diabet Med* 2002; **19**: 900-909 [PMID: 12421426 DOI: 10.1046/j.1464-5491.2002.00821.x]

29 **Pop-Busui R**, Evans GW, Gerstein HC, Fonseca V, Fleg JL, Hoogwerf BJ, Genuth S, Grimm RH, Corson MA, Prineas R. Effects of cardiac autonomic dysfunction on mortality risk in the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) trial. *Diabetes Care* 2010; **33**: 1578-1584 [PMID: 20215456 DOI: 10.2337/dc10-0125]

30 **Abbott CA**, Chaturvedi N, Malik RA, Salgami E, Yates AP, Pemberton PW, Boulton AJ. Explanations for the lower rates of diabetic neuropathy in Indian Asians versus Europeans. *Diabetes Care* 2010; **33**: 1325-1330 [PMID: 20215455 DOI: 10.2337/dc09-2067]

31 **Edwards JL**, Vincent AM, Cheng HT, Feldman EL. Diabetic neuropathy: mechanisms to management. *Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **120**: 1-34 [PMID: 18616962 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2008.05.005]

32 **Leinninger GM**, Edwards JL, Lipshaw MJ, Feldman EL. Mechanisms of disease: mitochondria as new therapeutic targets in diabetic neuropathy. *Nat Clin Pract Neurol* 2006; **2**: 620-628 [PMID: 17057749 DOI: 10.1038/ncpneuro0320]

33 **Soriano FG**, Virág L, Szabó C. Diabetic endothelial dysfunction: role of reactive oxygen and nitrogen species production and poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase activation. *J Mol Med (Berl)* 2001; **79**: 437-448 [PMID: 11511974 DOI: 10.1007/s001090100236]

34 **Obrosova IG**, Julius UA. Role for poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase activation in diabetic nephropathy, neuropathy and retinopathy. *Curr Vasc Pharmacol* 2005; **3**: 267-283 [PMID: 16026323 DOI: 10.2174/1570161054368634]

35 **Yamagishi S**, Uehara K, Otsuki S, Yagihashi S. Differential influence of increased polyol pathway on protein kinase C expressions between endoneurial and epineurial tissues in diabetic mice. *J Neurochem* 2003; **87**: 497-507 [PMID: 14511127 DOI: 10.1046/j.1471-4159.2003.02011.x]

36 **Giacco F**, Brownlee M. Oxidative stress and diabetic complications. *Circ Res* 2010; **107**: 1058-1070 [PMID: 21030723 DOI: 10.1161/circresaha.110.223545]

37 **Williams B**, Gallacher B, Patel H, Orme C. Glucose-induced protein kinase C activation regulates vascular permeability factor mRNA expression and peptide production by human vascular smooth muscle cells in vitro. *Diabetes* 1997; **46**: 1497-1503 [PMID: 9287052 DOI: 10.2337/diab.46.9.1497]

38 **Russell JW**, Sullivan KA, Windebank AJ, Herrmann DN, Feldman EL. Neurons undergo apoptosis in animal and cell culture models of diabetes. *Neurobiol Dis* 1999; **6**: 347-363 [PMID: 10527803 DOI: 10.1006/nbdi.1999.0254]

39 **Ramasamy R**, Vannucci SJ, Yan SS, Herold K, Yan SF, Schmidt AM. Advanced glycation end products and RAGE: a common thread in aging, diabetes, neurodegeneration, and inflammation. *Glycobiology* 2005; **15**: 16R-28R [PMID: 15764591 DOI: 10.1093/glycob/cwi053]

40 **Kolm-Litty V**, Sauer U, Nerlich A, Lehmann R, Schleicher ED. High glucose-induced transforming growth factor beta1 production is mediated by the hexosamine pathway in porcine glomerular mesangial cells. *J Clin Invest* 1998; **101**: 160-169 [PMID: 9421478 DOI: 10.1172/JCI119875]

41 **Wada R**, Yagihashi S. Role of advanced glycation end products and their receptors in development of diabetic neuropathy. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2005; **1043**: 598-604 [PMID: 16037282 DOI: 10.1196/annals.1338.067]

42 **Sayeski PP**, Kudlow JE. Glucose metabolism to glucosamine is necessary for glucose stimulation of transforming growth factor-alpha gene transcription. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 15237-15243 [PMID: 8663078 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.271.25.15237]

43 **Rabinowe SL**, Brown FM, Watts M, Smith AM. Complement-fixing antibodies to sympathetic and parasympathetic tissues in IDDM. Autonomic brake index and heart-rate variation. *Diabetes Care* 1990; **13**: 1084-1088 [PMID: 1698597 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.13.10.1084]

44 **Ejskjaer N**, Arif S, Dodds W, Zanone MM, Vergani D, Watkins PJ, Peakman M. Prevalence of autoantibodies to autonomic nervous tissue structures in Type 1 diabetes mellitus. *Diabet Med* 1999; **16**: 544-549 [PMID: 10445828 DOI: 10.1046/j.1464-5491.1999.00092.x]

45 **Vinik AI**, Leichter SB, Pittenger GL, Stansberry KB, Holland MT, Powers AC, Suwanwalaikorn S. Phospholipid and glutamic acid decarboxylase autoantibodies in diabetic neuropathy. *Diabetes Care* 1995; **18**: 1225-1232 [PMID: 8612435 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.18.9.1225]

46 **Granberg V**, Ejskjaer N, Peakman M, Sundkvist G. Autoantibodies to autonomic nerves associated with cardiac and peripheral autonomic neuropathy. *Diabetes Care* 2005; **28**: 1959-1964 [PMID: 16043739 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.28.8.1959]

47 **Stroud CR**, Heller SR, Ward JD, Hardisty CA, Weetman AP. Analysis of antibodies against components of the autonomic nervous system in diabetes mellitus. *QJM* 1997; **90**: 577-585 [PMID: 9349450 DOI: 10.1093/qjmed/90.9.577]

48 **Skärstrand H**, Dahlin LB, Lernmark A, Vaziri-Sani F. Neuropeptide Y autoantibodies in patients with long-term type 1 and type 2 diabetes and neuropathy. *J Diabetes Complications* 2013; **27**: 609-617 [PMID: 23910631 DOI: 10.1016/j.jdiacomp.2013.06.007]

49 **Panero F**, Novelli G, Zucco C, Fornengo P, Perotto M, Segre O, Grassi G, Cavallo-Perin P, Bruno G. Fasting plasma C-peptide and micro- and macrovascular complications in a large clinic-based cohort of type 1 diabetic patients. *Diabetes Care* 2009; **32**: 301-305 [PMID: 19017769 DOI: 10.2337/dc08-1241]

50 **Steffes MW**, Sibley S, Jackson M, Thomas W. Beta-cell function and the development of diabetes-related complications in the diabetes control and complications trial. *Diabetes Care* 2003; **26**: 832-836 [PMID: 12610045 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.26.3.832]

51 **Cotter MA**, Ekberg K, Wahren J, Cameron NE. Effects of proinsulin C-peptide in experimental diabetic neuropathy: vascular actions and modulation by nitric oxide synthase inhibition. *Diabetes* 2003; **52**: 1812-1817 [PMID: 12829651 DOI: 10.2337/diabetes.52.7.1812]

52 **Luppi P**, Cifarelli V, Tse H, Piganelli J, Trucco M. Human C-peptide antagonises high glucose-induced endothelial dysfunction through the nuclear factor-kappaB pathway. *Diabetologia* 2008; **51**: 1534-1543 [PMID: 18493738 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-008-1032-x]

53 **Johansson BL**, Borg K, Fernqvist-Forbes E, Kernell A, Odergren T, Wahren J. Beneficial effects of C-peptide on incipient nephropathy and neuropathy in patients with Type 1 diabetes mellitus. *Diabet Med* 2000; **17**: 181-189 [PMID: 10784221 DOI: 10.1046/j.1464-5491.2000.00274.x]

54 **Ciccacci C**, Di Fusco D, Cacciotti L, Morganti R, D'Amato C, Novelli G, Sangiuolo F, Spallone V, Borgiani P. TCF7L2 gene polymorphisms and type 2 diabetes: association with diabetic retinopathy and cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy. *Acta Diabetol* 2013; **50**: 789-799 [PMID: 22843023 DOI: 10.1007/s00592-012-0418-x]

55 **Yasuda K**, Matsunaga T, Moritani T, Nishikino M, Gu N, Yoshinaga M, Nagasumi K, Yamamura T, Aoki N, Tsuda K. T393C polymorphism of GNAS1 associated with the autonomic nervous system in young, healthy Japanese subjects.

Clin Exp Pharmacol Physiol 2004; **31**: 597-601 [PMID: 15479166 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1681.2004.04059.x]
56 **Osztovits J**, Horváth T, Littvay L, Steinbach R, Jermendy A, Tárnoki A, Tárnoki D, Métneki J, Kollai M, Jermendy G. Effects of genetic vs. environmental factors on cardiovascular autonomic function: a twin study. *Diabet Med* 2011; **28**: 1241-1248 [PMID: 21679234 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.2011.03363.x]
57 **Narkiewicz K**, Somers VK. Sympathetic nerve activity in obstructive sleep apnoea. *Acta Physiol Scand* 2003; **177**: 385-390 [PMID: 12609010 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-201X.2003.01091.x]
58 **Bradley TD**, Floras JS. Obstructive sleep apnoea and its cardiovascular consequences. *Lancet* 2009; **373**: 82-93 [PMID: 19101028 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)61622-0]
59 **Tahrani AA**, Ali A, Raymond NT, Begum S, Dubb K, Mughal S, Jose B, Piya MK, Barnett AH, Stevens MJ. Obstructive sleep apnea and diabetic neuropathy: a novel association in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2012; **186**: 434-441 [PMID: 22723291 DOI: 10.1164/rccm.201112-2135OC]
60 **Pop-Busui R**, Kirkwood I, Schmid H, Marinescu V, Schroeder J, Larkin D, Yamada E, Raffel DM, Stevens MJ. Sympathetic dysfunction in type 1 diabetes: association with impaired myocardial blood flow reserve and diastolic dysfunction. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2004; **44**: 2368-2374 [PMID: 15607400 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2004.09.033]
61 **Taskiran M**, Rasmussen V, Rasmussen B, Fritz-Hansen T, Larsson HB, Jensen GB, Hilsted J. Left ventricular dysfunction in normotensive Type 1 diabetic patients: the impact of autonomic neuropathy. *Diabet Med* 2004; **21**: 524-530 [PMID: 15154934 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.2004.01145.x]
62 **Montano N**, Ruscone TG, Porta A, Lombardi F, Pagani M, Malliani A. Power spectrum analysis of heart rate variability to assess the changes in sympathovagal balance during graded orthostatic tilt. *Circulation* 1994; **90**: 1826-1831 [PMID: 7923668 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.90.4.1826]
63 **Kuehl M**, Stevens MJ. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathies as complications of diabetes mellitus. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 2012; **8**: 405-416 [PMID: 22371159 DOI: 10.1038/nrendo.2012.21]
64 **Frattola A**, Parati G, Gamba P, Paleari F, Mauri G, Di Rienzo M, Castiglioni P, Mancia G. Time and frequency domain estimates of spontaneous baroreflex sensitivity provide early detection of autonomic dysfunction in diabetes mellitus. *Diabetologia* 1997; **40**: 1470-1475 [PMID: 9447956 DOI: 10.1007/s001250050851]
65 **Weston PJ**, James MA, Panerai RB, McNally PG, Potter JF, Thurston H. Evidence of defective cardiovascular regulation in insulin-dependent diabetic patients without clinical autonomic dysfunction. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 1998; **42**: 141-148 [PMID: 9925343 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8227(98)00094-1]
66 **Stevens MJ**, Dayanikli F, Raffel DM, Allman KC, Sandford T, Feldman EL, Wieland DM, Corbett J, Schwaiger M. Scintigraphic assessment of regionalized defects in myocardial sympathetic innervation and blood flow regulation in diabetic patients with autonomic neuropathy. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1998; **31**: 1575-1584 [PMID: 9626837 DOI: 10.1016/S0735-1097(98)00128-4]
67 **Stevens MJ**, Raffel DM, Allman KC, Dayanikli F, Ficaro E, Sandford T, Wieland DM, Pfeifer MA, Schwaiger M. Cardiac sympathetic dysinnervation in diabetes: implications for enhanced cardiovascular risk. *Circulation* 1998; **98**: 961-968 [PMID: 9737515 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.98.10.961]
68 **Pop-Busui R**. What do we know and we do not know about cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy in diabetes. *J Cardiovasc Transl Res* 2012; **5**: 463-478 [PMID: 22644723 DOI: 10.1007/s12265-012-9367-6]
69 **Vinik AI**, Ziegler D. Diabetic cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy. *Circulation* 2007; **115**: 387-397 [PMID: 17242296 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.634949]
70 **Hage FG**, Wackers FJ, Bansal S, Chyun DA, Young LH, Inzucchi SE, Iskandrian AE. The heart rate response to adenosine: a simple predictor of adverse cardiac outcomes in asymptomatic patients with type 2 diabetes. *Int J Cardiol* 2013; **167**: 2952-2957 [PMID: 22981277 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijcard.2012.08.011]
71 **Nauman J**, Janszky I, Vatten LJ, Wisløff U. Temporal changes in resting heart rate and deaths from ischemic heart disease. *JAMA* 2011; **306**: 2579-2587 [PMID: 22187277 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2011.1826]
72 **Albers AR**, Krichavsky MZ, Balady GJ. Stress testing in patients with diabetes mellitus: diagnostic and prognostic value. *Circulation* 2006; **113**: 583-592 [PMID: 16449735 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.105.584524]
73 **Fedorowski A**, Stavenow L, Hedblad B, Berglund G, Nilsson PM, Melander O. Orthostatic hypotension predicts all-cause mortality and coronary events in middle-aged individuals (The Malmo Preventive Project). *Eur Heart J* 2010; **31**: 85-91 [PMID: 19696189 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/ehp329]
74 **Ambepityia G**, Kopelman PG, Ingram D, Swash M, Mills PG, Timmis AD. Exertional myocardial ischemia in diabetes: a quantitative analysis of anginal perceptual threshold and the influence of autonomic function. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1990; **15**: 72-77 [PMID: 2295745 DOI: 10.1016/0735-1097(90)90178-R]
75 **Valensi P**, Sachs RN, Harfouche B, Lormeau B, Paries J, Cosson E, Paycha F, Leutenegger M, Attali JR. Predictive value of cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetic patients with or without silent myocardial ischemia. *Diabetes Care* 2001; **24**: 339-343 [PMID: 11213889 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.24.2.339]
76 **Chico A**, Tomás A, Novials A. Silent myocardial ischemia is associated with autonomic neuropathy and other cardiovascular risk factors in type 1 and type 2 diabetic subjects, especially in those with microalbuminuria. *Endocrine* 2005; **27**: 213-217 [PMID: 16230776 DOI: 10.1385/ENDO: 27: 3: 213]
77 **Wackers FJ**, Young LH, Inzucchi SE, Chyun DA, Davey JA, Barrett EJ, Taillefer R, Wittlin SD, Heller GV, Filipchuk N, Engel S, Ratner RE, Iskandrian AE. Detection of silent myocardial ischemia in asymptomatic diabetic subjects: the DIAD study. *Diabetes Care* 2004; **27**: 1954-1961 [PMID: 15277423 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.27.8.1954]
78 **Airaksinen KE**, Ikäheimo MJ, Linnaluoto MK, Niemelä M, Takkunen JT. Impaired vagal heart rate control in coronary artery disease. *Br Heart J* 1987; **58**: 592-597 [PMID: 3426895 DOI: 10.1136/hrt.58.6.592]
79 **Airaksinen KE**, Koistinen MJ. Association between silent coronary artery disease, diabetes, and autonomic neuropathy. Fact of fallacy? *Diabetes Care* 1992; **15**: 288-292 [PMID: 1547688 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.15.2.288]
80 **Hayat SA**, Patel B, Khattar RS, Malik RA. Diabetic cardiomyopathy: mechanisms, diagnosis and treatment. *Clin Sci (Lond)* 2004; **107**: 539-557 [PMID: 15341511 DOI: 10.1042/CS20040057]
81 **Sakamoto K**, Yamasaki Y, Nanto S, Shimonagata T, Morozumi T, Ohara T, Takano Y, Nakayama H, Kamado K, Nagata S, Kusuoka H, Nishimura T, Hori M. Mechanism of impaired left ventricular wall motion in the diabetic heart without coronary artery disease. *Diabetes Care* 1998; **21**: 2123-2128 [PMID: 9839104 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.21.12.2123]
82 **Didangelos TP**, Arsos GA, Karamitsos DT, Athyros VG, Karatzas ND. Left ventricular systolic and diastolic function in normotensive type 1 diabetic patients with or without autonomic neuropathy: a radionuclide ventriculography study. *Diabetes Care* 2003; **26**: 1955-1960 [PMID: 12832295 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.26.7.1955]
83 **Vanninen E**, Mustonen J, Vainio P, Länsimies E, Uusitupa M. Left ventricular function and dimensions in newly diagnosed non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Am J Cardiol* 1992; **70**: 371-378 [PMID: 1632406 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9149(92)90622-6]
84 **Ansari M**, Alexander M, Tutar A, Massie BM. Incident cases of heart failure in a community cohort: importance and

outcomes of patients with preserved systolic function. *Am Heart J* 2003; **146**: 115-120 [PMID: 12851618 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-8703(03)00123-6]

85 **Lenzen MJ**, Scholte op Reimer WJ, Boersma E, Vantrimpont PJ, Follath F, Swedberg K, Cleland J, Komajda M. Differences between patients with a preserved and a depressed left ventricular function: a report from the EuroHeart Failure Survey. *Eur Heart J* 2004; **25**: 1214-1220 [PMID: 15246639 DOI: 10.1016/j.ehj.2004.06.006]

86 **Chung J**, Abraszewski P, Yu X, Liu W, Krainik AJ, Ashford M, Caruthers SD, McGill JB, Wickline SA. Paradoxical increase in ventricular torsion and systolic torsion rate in type I diabetic patients under tight glycemic control. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2006; **47**: 384-390 [PMID: 16412865 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2005.08.061]

87 **Dong SJ**, Hees PS, Siu CO, Weiss JL, Shapiro EP. MRI assessment of LV relaxation by untwisting rate: a new isovolumic phase measure of tau. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol* 2001; **281**: H2002-H2009 [PMID: 11668061]

88 **Piya MK**, Shivu GN, Tahrani A, Dubb K, Abozguia K, Phan TT, Narendran P, Pop-Busui R, Frenneaux M, Stevens MJ. Abnormal left ventricular torsion and cardiac autonomic dysfunction in subjects with type 1 diabetes mellitus. *Metabolism* 2011; **60**: 1115-1121 [PMID: 21306747 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2010.12.004]

89 **Shivu GN**, Abozguia K, Phan TT, Ahmed I, Weaver R, Narendran P, Stevens M, Frenneaux M. Increased left ventricular torsion in uncomplicated type 1 diabetic patients: the role of coronary microvascular function. *Diabetes Care* 2009; **32**: 1710-1712 [PMID: 19509006 DOI: 10.2337/dc09-0408]

90 **Shivu GN**, Phan TT, Abozguia K, Ahmed I, Wagenmakers A, Henning A, Narendran P, Stevens M, Frenneaux M. Relationship between coronary microvascular dysfunction and cardiac energetics impairment in type 1 diabetes mellitus. *Circulation* 2010; **121**: 1209-1215 [PMID: 20194884 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.873273]

91 **Axelrod S**, Lishner M, Oz O, Bernheim J, Ravid M. Spectral analysis of fluctuations in heart rate: an objective evaluation of autonomic nervous control in chronic renal failure. *Nephron* 1987; **45**: 202-206 [PMID: 3574569 DOI: 10.1159/000184117]

92 **Felten SY**, Peterson RG, Shea PA, Besch HR, Felten DL. Effects of streptozotocin diabetes on the noradrenergic innervation of the rat heart: a longitudinal histofluorescence and neurochemical study. *Brain Res Bull* 1982; **8**: 593-607 [PMID: 6754009 DOI: 10.1016/0361-9230(82)90086-7]

93 **Poulsen PL**, Hansen KW, Mogensen CE. Increase in nocturnal blood pressure and progression to microalbuminuria in diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 260-24; author reply 260-24; [PMID: 12530446 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM200301163480318]

94 **Hirabara SM**, Silveira LR, Alberici LC, Leandro CV, Lambertucci RH, Polimeno GC, Cury Boaventura MF, Procopio J, Vercesi AE, Curi R. Acute effect of fatty acids on metabolism and mitochondrial coupling in skeletal muscle. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2006; **1757**: 57-66 [PMID: 16375848 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbabio.2005.11.007]

95 **Schrauwen P**, Hoeks J, Hesselink MK. Putative function and physiological relevance of the mitochondrial uncoupling protein-3: involvement in fatty acid metabolism? *Prog Lipid Res* 2006; **45**: 17-41 [PMID: 16384603 DOI: 10.1016/j.plipres.2005.11.001]

96 **Collins-Nakai RL**, Noseworthy D, Lopaschuk GD. Epinephrine increases ATP production in hearts by preferentially increasing glucose metabolism. *Am J Physiol* 1994; **267**: H1862-H1871 [PMID: 7977816]

97 **Francis GS**. Diabetic cardiomyopathy: fact or fiction? *Heart* 2001; **85**: 247-248 [PMID: 11179253 DOI: 10.1136/heart.85.3.247]

98 **Frustaci A**, Kajstura J, Chimenti C, Jakoniuk I, Leri A, Maseri A, Nadal-Ginard B, Anversa P. Myocardial cell death in human diabetes. *Circ Res* 2000; **87**: 1123-1132 [PMID: 11110769 DOI: 10.1161/01.RES.87.12.1123]

99 **Katz AM**. Potential deleterious effects of inotropic agents in the therapy of chronic heart failure. *Circulation* 1986; **73**: III184-III190 [PMID: 2417747]

100 **Eichhorn EJ**, Bristow MR. Medical therapy can improve the biological properties of the chronically failing heart. A new era in the treatment of heart failure. *Circulation* 1996; **94**: 2285-2296 [PMID: 8901684 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.94.9.2285]

101 **Yaplito-Lee J**, Weintraub R, Jamsen K, Chow CW, Thorburn DR, Boneh A. Cardiac manifestations in oxidative phosphorylation disorders of childhood. *J Pediatr* 2007; **150**: 407-411 [PMID: 17382120 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2006.12.047]

102 **Givertz MM**, Sawyer DB, Colucci WS. Antioxidants and myocardial contractility: illuminating the "Dark Side" of beta-adrenergic receptor activation? *Circulation* 2001; **103**: 782-783 [PMID: 11171781 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.103.6.782]

103 **Scacco S**, Vergari R, Scarpulla RC, Technikova-Dobrova Z, Sardanelli A, Lambo R, Lorusso V, Papa S. cAMP-dependent phosphorylation of the nuclear encoded 18-kDa (IP) subunit of respiratory complex I and activation of the complex in serum-starved mouse fibroblast cultures. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 17578-17582 [PMID: 10747996 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M001174200]

104 **An D**, Rodrigues B. Role of changes in cardiac metabolism in development of diabetic cardiomyopathy. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol* 2006; **291**: H1489-H1506 [PMID: 16751293 DOI: 10.1152/ajpheart.00278.2006]

105 **Iwai-Kanai E**, Hasegawa K, Araki M, Kakita T, Morimoto T, Sasayama S. alpha- and beta-adrenergic pathways differentially regulate cell type-specific apoptosis in rat cardiac myocytes. *Circulation* 1999; **100**: 305-311 [PMID: 10411857 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.100.3.305]

106 **Communal C**, Singh K, Pimentel DR, Colucci WS. Norepinephrine stimulates apoptosis in adult rat ventricular myocytes by activation of the beta-adrenergic pathway. *Circulation* 1998; **98**: 1329-1334 [PMID: 9751683 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.98.13.1329]

107 **Mandinov L**, Eberli FR, Seiler C, Hess OM. Diastolic heart failure. *Cardiovasc Res* 2000; **45**: 813-825 [PMID: 10728407 DOI: 10.1016/S0008-6363(99)00399-5]

108 **Perin PC**, Maule S, Quadri R. Sympathetic nervous system, diabetes, and hypertension. *Clin Exp Hypertens* 2001; **23**: 45-55 [PMID: 11270588 DOI: 10.1081/CEH-100001196]

109 **Pop-Busui R**, Cleary PA, Braffett BH, Martin CL, Herman WH, Low PA, Lima JA, Bluemke DA. Association between cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy and left ventricular dysfunction: DCCT/EDIC study (Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications). *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2013; **61**: 447-454 [PMID: 23265339 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2012.10.028]

110 **Navarro X**, Kennedy WR, Sutherland DE. Autonomic neuropathy and survival in diabetes mellitus: effects of pancreas transplantation. *Diabetologia* 1991; **34 Suppl 1**: S108-S112 [PMID: 1936671 DOI: 10.1007/BF00587633]

111 **O'Brien IA**, McFadden JP, Corrall RJ. The influence of autonomic neuropathy on mortality in insulin-dependent diabetes. *Q J Med* 1991; **79**: 495-502 [PMID: 1946930]

112 **Rathmann W**, Ziegler D, Jahnke M, Haastert B, Gries FA. Mortality in diabetic patients with cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy. *Diabet Med* 1993; **10**: 820-824 [PMID: 8281726 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.1993.tb00173.x]

113 **Sampson MJ**, Wilson S, Karagiannis P, Edmonds M, Watkins PJ. Progression of diabetic autonomic neuropathy over a decade in insulin-dependent diabetics. *Q J Med* 1990; **75**: 635-646 [PMID: 2217668]

114 **Maser RE**, Mitchell BD, Vinik AI, Freeman R. The association between cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy and mortality in individuals with diabetes: a meta-analysis. *Diabetes Care* 2003; **26**: 1895-1901 [PMID: 12766130 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.26.6.1895]

115 **Soedamah-Muthu SS**, Chaturvedi N, Witte DR, Stevens LK, Porta M, Fuller JH. Relationship between risk factors and mortality in type 1 diabetic patients in Europe: the EU-

RODIAB Prospective Complications Study (PCS). *Diabetes Care* 2008; **31**: 1360-1366 [PMID: 18375412 DOI: 10.2337/dc08-0107]

116 **Miettinen H**, Lehto S, Salomaa V, Mähönen M, Niemelä M, Haffner SM, Pyörälä K, Tuomilehto J. Impact of diabetes on mortality after the first myocardial infarction. The FINMONICA Myocardial Infarction Register Study Group. *Diabetes Care* 1998; **21**: 69-75 [PMID: 9538972 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.21.1.69]

117 **Katz A**, Liberty IF, Porath A, Ovsyshcher I, Prystowsky EN. A simple bedside test of 1-minute heart rate variability during deep breathing as a prognostic index after myocardial infarction. *Am Heart J* 1999; **138**: 32-38 [PMID: 10385760 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-8703(99)70242-5]

118 **Ewing DJ**, Campbell IW, Clarke BF. The natural history of diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Q J Med* 1980; **49**: 95-108 [PMID: 7433630]

119 **Kleiger RE**, Miller JP, Bigger JT, Moss AJ. Decreased heart rate variability and its association with increased mortality after acute myocardial infarction. *Am J Cardiol* 1987; **59**: 256-262 [PMID: 3812275 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9149(87)90795-8]

120 **Pappachan JM**, Sebastian J, Bino BC, Jayaprakash K, Vijayakumar K, Sujathan P, Adinegara LA. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy in diabetes mellitus: prevalence, risk factors and utility of corrected QT interval in the ECG for its diagnosis. *Postgrad Med J* 2008; **84**: 205-210 [PMID: 18424578 DOI: 10.1136/pgmj.2007.064048]

121 **Sivieri R**, Veglio M, Chinaglia A, Scaglione P, Cavallo-Perin P. Prevalence of QT prolongation in a type 1 diabetic population and its association with autonomic neuropathy. The Neuropathy Study Group of the Italian Society for the Study of Diabetes. *Diabet Med* 1993; **10**: 920-924 [PMID: 8306587]

122 **Veglio M**, Borra M, Stevens LK, Fuller JH, Perin PC. The relation between QTc interval prolongation and diabetic complications. The EURODIAB IDDM Complication Study Group. *Diabetologia* 1999; **42**: 68-75 [PMID: 10027581 DOI: 10.1007/s001250051115]

123 **Suarez GA**, Clark VM, Norell JE, Kottke TE, Callahan MJ, O'Brien PC, Low PA, Dyck PJ. Sudden cardiac death in diabetes mellitus: risk factors in the Rochester diabetic neuropathy study. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 2005; **76**: 240-245 [PMID: 15654040 DOI: 10.1136/jnnp.2004.039339]

124 **Page MM**, Watkins PJ. Cardiorespiratory arrest and diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Lancet* 1978; **1**: 14-16 [PMID: 74496 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(78)90360-4]

125 **Clarke BF**, Ewing DJ, Campbell IW. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Diabetologia* 1979; **17**: 195-212 [PMID: 387501 DOI: 10.1007/BF01235856]

126 **Furlan R**, Guzzetti S, Crivellaro W, Dassi S, Tinelli M, Baselli G, Cerutti S, Lombardi F, Pagani M, Malliani A. Continuous 24-hour assessment of the neural regulation of systemic arterial pressure and RR variabilities in ambulant subjects. *Circulation* 1990; **81**: 537-547 [PMID: 2297860 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.81.2.537]

127 **Spallone V**, Bernardi L, Ricordi L, Soldà P, Maiello MR, Calciati A, Gambardella S, Fratino P, Menzinger G. Relationship between the circadian rhythms of blood pressure and sympathovagal balance in diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Diabetes* 1993; **42**: 1745-1752 [PMID: 8243821 DOI: 10.2337/diab.42.12.1745]

128 **Schwartz PJ**, La Rovere MT, Vanoli E. Autonomic nervous system and sudden cardiac death. Experimental basis and clinical observations for post-myocardial infarction risk stratification. *Circulation* 1992; **85**: I77-I91 [PMID: 1728509]

129 **Latson TW**, Ashmore TH, Reinhart DJ, Klein KW, Giesecke AH. Autonomic reflex dysfunction in patients presenting for elective surgery is associated with hypotension after anesthesia induction. *Anesthesiology* 1994; **80**: 326-337 [PMID: 8311315 DOI: 10.1097/00000542-199402000-00013]

130 **Burgos LG**, Ebert TJ, Asiddao C, Turner LA, Pattison CZ, Wang-Cheng R, Kampine JP. Increased intraoperative cardiovascular morbidity in diabetics with autonomic neuropathy. *Anesthesiology* 1989; **70**: 591-597 [PMID: 2929996 DOI: 10.1097/00132586-198912000-00016]

131 **Kitamura A**, Hoshino T, Kon T, Ogawa R. Patients with diabetic neuropathy are at risk of a greater intraoperative reduction in core temperature. *Anesthesiology* 2000; **92**: 1311-1318 [PMID: 10781276 DOI: 10.1097/00000542-200005000-00019]

132 **Töyry JP**, Niskanen LK, Länsimies EA, Partanen KP, Uusitupa MI. Autonomic neuropathy predicts the development of stroke in patients with non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Stroke* 1996; **27**: 1316-1318 [PMID: 8711794 DOI: 10.1161/01.STR.27.8.1316]

133 **Cohen JA**, Estacio RO, Lundgren RA, Esler AL, Schrier RW. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy is associated with an increased incidence of strokes. *Auton Neurosci* 2003; **108**: 73-78 [PMID: 14614967 DOI: 10.1016/j.autneu.2003.07.001]

134 **Ko SH**, Song KH, Park SA, Kim SR, Cha BY, Son HY, Moon KW, Yoo KD, Park YM, Cho JH, Yoon KH, Ahn YB. Cardiovascular autonomic dysfunction predicts acute ischaemic stroke in patients with Type 2 diabetes mellitus: a 7-year follow-up study. *Diabet Med* 2008; **25**: 1171-1177 [PMID: 19046195 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.2008.02567.x]

135 **Maser RE**, Lenhard MJ. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy due to diabetes mellitus: clinical manifestations, consequences, and treatment. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2005; **90**: 5896-5903 [PMID: 16014401 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2005-0754]

136 **Joles JA**, Koomans HA. Causes and consequences of increased sympathetic activity in renal disease. *Hypertension* 2004; **43**: 699-706 [PMID: 14981063 DOI: 10.1161/01.HYP.0000121881.77212.b1]

137 **Spallone V**, Gambardella S, Maiello MR, Barini A, Frontoni S, Menzinger G. Relationship between autonomic neuropathy, 24-h blood pressure profile, and nephropathy in normotensive IDDM patients. *Diabetes Care* 1994; **17**: 578-584 [PMID: 8082528 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.17.6.578]

138 **Sundkvist G**, Lilja B. Autonomic neuropathy predicts deterioration in glomerular filtration rate in patients with IDDM. *Diabetes Care* 1993; **16**: 773-779 [PMID: 8495619 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.16.5.773]

139 **Salman IM**, Ameer OZ, Sattar MA, Abdullah NA, Yam MF, Abdullah GZ, Abdulkarim MF, Khan MA, Johns EJ. Renal sympathetic nervous system hyperactivity in early streptozotocin-induced diabetic kidney disease. *Neurourol Urodyn* 2011; **30**: 438-446 [PMID: 21284025 DOI: 10.1002/nau.21007]

140 **Luippold G**, Beilharz M, Mühlbauer B. Chronic renal denervation prevents glomerular hyperfiltration in diabetic rats. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2004; **19**: 342-347 [PMID: 14736957 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfg584]

141 **Moran A**, Palmas W, Field L, Bhattarai J, Schwartz JE, Weinstock RS, Shea S. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy is associated with microalbuminuria in older patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2004; **27**: 972-977 [PMID: 15047658 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.27.4.972]

142 **Sterner NG**, Nilsson H, Rosén U, Lilja B, Sundkvist G. Relationships among glomerular filtration rate, albuminuria, and autonomic nerve function in insulin-dependent and non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *J Diabetes Complications* 1997; **11**: 188-193 [PMID: 9174901]

143 **Smulders YM**, Jager A, Gerritsen J, Dekker JM, Nijpels G, Heine RJ, Bouter LM, Stehouwer CD. Cardiovascular autonomic function is associated with (micro-)albuminuria in elderly Caucasian sujects with impaired glucose tolerance or type 2 diabetes: the Hoorn Study. *Diabetes Care* 2000; **23**: 1369-1374 [PMID: 10977035 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.23.9.1369]

144 **Lafferty AR**, Werther GA, Clarke CF. Ambulatory blood pressure, microalbuminuria, and autonomic neuropathy in adolescents with type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2000; **23**: 533-538 [PMID: 10857948 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.23.4.533]

145 **Poulsen PL**, Ebbehøj E, Hansen KW, Mogensen CE. 24-h blood pressure and autonomic function is related to albumin excretion within the normoalbuminuric range in IDDM

patients. *Diabetologia* 1997; **40**: 718-725 [PMID: 9222653 DOI: 10.1007/s001250050739]
146 **Forsén A**, Kangro M, Sterner G, Norrgren K, Thorsson O, Wollmer P, Sundkvist G. A 14-year prospective study of autonomic nerve function in Type 1 diabetic patients: association with nephropathy. *Diabet Med* 2004; **21**: 852-858 [PMID: 15270788 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.2004.01255.xDME1255]
147 **Kempler P**, Amarenco G, Freeman R, Frontoni S, Horowitz M, Stevens M, Low P, Pop-Busui R, Tahrani A, Tesfaye S, Várkonyi T, Ziegler D, Valensi P; on behalf of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy*. Gastrointestinal autonomic neuropathy, erectile-, bladder- and sudomotor dysfunction in patients with diabetes mellitus: clinical impact, assessment, diagnosis, and management. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2011 Jul 11; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 21748841 DOI: 10.1002/dmrr.1223]
148 **Jirkovská A**, Boucek P, Wu S, Hosová J, Bém R, Fejfarova V, Skibová J. Power spectral analysis of heart rate variability in patients with Charcot's neuroarthropathy. *J Am Podiatr Med Assoc* 2006; **96**: 1-8 [PMID: 16415277]
149 **Stevens MJ**, Edmonds ME, Foster AV, Watkins PJ. Selective neuropathy and preserved vascular responses in the diabetic Charcot foot. *Diabetologia* 1992; **35**: 148-154 [PMID: 1547919 DOI: 10.1007/bf00402547]
150 **Ewing DJ**, Campbell IW, Clarke BF. Assessment of cardiovascular effects in diabetic autonomic neuropathy and prognostic implications. *Ann Intern Med* 1980; **92**: 308-311 [PMID: 7356219 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-92-2-308]
151 **Pfeifer MA**, Cook D, Brodsky J, Tice D, Reenan A, Swedine S, Halter JB, Porte D. Quantitative evaluation of cardiac parasympathetic activity in normal and diabetic man. *Diabetes* 1982; **31**: 339-345 [PMID: 7152130 DOI: 10.2337/diab.31.4.339]
152 **Ewing DJ**, Campbell IW, Murray A, Neilson JM, Clarke BF. Immediate heart-rate response to standing: simple test for autonomic neuropathy in diabetes. *Br Med J* 1978; **1**: 145-147 [PMID: 620228 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.1.6106.145]
153 **Sandroni P**, Benarroch EE, Low PA. Pharmacological dissection of components of the Valsalva maneuver in adrenergic failure. *J Appl Physiol (1985)* 1991; **71**: 1563-1567 [PMID: 1757382]
154 **England JD**, Gronseth GS, Franklin G, Carter GT, Kinsella LJ, Cohen JA, Asbury AK, Szigeti K, Lupski JR, Latov N, Lewis RA, Low PA, Fisher MA, Herrmann D, Howard JF, Lauria G, Miller RG, Polydefkis M, Sumner AJ. Evaluation of distal symmetric polyneuropathy: the role of autonomic testing, nerve biopsy, and skin biopsy (an evidence-based review). *Muscle Nerve* 2009; **39**: 106-115 [PMID: 19086069 DOI: 10.1002/mus.21227]
155 **Low PA**, Denq JC, Opfer-Gehrking TL, Dyck PJ, O'Brien PC, Slezak JM. Effect of age and gender on sudomotor and cardiovagal function and blood pressure response to tilt in normal subjects. *Muscle Nerve* 1997; **20**: 1561-1568 [PMID: 9390669 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-4598(199712)20: 12<1561: : AID-MUS11>3.0.CO; 2-3]
156 Proceedings of a consensus development conference on standardized measures in diabetic neuropathy. Summary and recommendations. *Diabetes Care* 1992; **15**: 1104-1107 [PMID: 1505320 DOI: 10.1002/mus.880151014]
157 **Niskanen JP**, Tarvainen MP, Ranta-Aho PO, Karjalainen PA. Software for advanced HRV analysis. *Comput Methods Programs Biomed* 2004; **76**: 73-81 [PMID: 15313543 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmpb.2004.03.004]
158 **Bernardi L**, Spallone V, Stevens M, Hilsted J, Frontoni S, Pop-Busui R, Ziegler D, Kempler P, Freeman R, Low P, Tesfaye S, Valensi P; on behalf of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy*. Investigation methods for cardiac autonomic function in human research studies. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2011 Jun 21; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 21695761 DOI: 10.1002/dmrr.1224]
159 Heart rate variability: standards of measurement, physiological interpretation and clinical use. Task Force of the European Society of Cardiology and the North American Society of Pacing and Electrophysiology. *Circulation* 1996; **93**: 1043-1065 [PMID: 8598068 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.93.5.1043]
160 **Appel ML**, Berger RD, Saul JP, Smith JM, Cohen RJ. Beat to beat variability in cardiovascular variables: noise or music? *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1989; **14**: 1139-1148 [PMID: 2681319 DOI: 10.1016/0735-1097(89)90408-7]
161 Assessment: Clinical autonomic testing report of the Therapeutics and Technology Assessment Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. *Neurology* 1996; **46**: 873-880 [PMID: 8618715]
162 **La Rovere MT**, Bigger JT, Marcus FI, Mortara A, Schwartz PJ. Baroreflex sensitivity and heart-rate variability in prediction of total cardiac mortality after myocardial infarction. ATRAMI (Autonomic Tone and Reflexes After Myocardial Infarction) Investigators. *Lancet* 1998; **351**: 478-484 [PMID: 9482439 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(97)11144-8]
163 **Gasch J**, Reimann M, Reichmann H, Rüdiger H, Ziemssen T. Determination of baroreflex sensitivity during the modified Oxford maneuver by trigonometric regressive spectral analysis. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e18061 [PMID: 21437258 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0018061]
164 **Gerritsen J**, Dekker JM, TenVoorde BJ, Kostense PJ, Heine RJ, Bouter LM, Heethaar RM, Stehouwer CD. Impaired autonomic function is associated with increased mortality, especially in subjects with diabetes, hypertension, or a history of cardiovascular disease: the Hoorn Study. *Diabetes Care* 2001; **24**: 1793-1798 [PMID: 11574444 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.24.10.1793]
165 **La Rovere MT**, Pinna GD, Maestri R, Robbi E, Caporotondi A, Guazzotti G, Sleight P, Febo O. Prognostic implications of baroreflex sensitivity in heart failure patients in the beta-blocking era. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2009; **53**: 193-199 [PMID: 19130988 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacc.2008.09.034]
166 **Raffel DM**, Wieland DM. Assessment of cardiac sympathetic nerve integrity with positron emission tomography. *Nucl Med Biol* 2001; **28**: 541-559 [PMID: 11516699 DOI: 10.1016/S0969-8051(01)00210-4]
167 **Stevens MJ**, Raffel DM, Allman KC, Schwaiger M, Wieland DM. Regression and progression of cardiac sympathetic dysinnervation complicating diabetes: an assessment by C-11 hydroxyephedrine and positron emission tomography. *Metabolism* 1999; **48**: 92-101 [PMID: 9920151 DOI: 10.1016/S0026-0495(99)90016-1]
168 **Bombardieri E**, Giammarile F, Aktolun C, Baum RP, Bischof Delaloye A, Maffioli L, Moncayo R, Mortelmans L, Pepe G, Reske SN, Castellani MR, Chiti A. 131I/123I-metaiodobenzylguanidine (mIBG) scintigraphy: procedure guidelines for tumour imaging. *Eur J Nucl Med Mol Imaging* 2010; **37**: 2436-2446 [PMID: 20644928 DOI: 10.1007/s00259-010-1545-7]
169 **Franzius C**, Hermann K, Weckesser M, Kopka K, Juergens KU, Vormoor J, Schober O. Whole-body PET/CT with 11C-meta-hydroxyephedrine in tumors of the sympathetic nervous system: feasibility study and comparison with 123I-MIBG SPECT/CT. *J Nucl Med* 2006; **47**: 1635-1642 [PMID: 17015899]
170 **Shulkin BL**, Wieland DM, Schwaiger M, Thompson NW, Francis IR, Haka MS, Rosenspire KC, Shapiro B, Sisson JC, Kuhl DE. PET scanning with hydroxyephedrine: an approach to the localization of pheochromocytoma. *J Nucl Med* 1992; **33**: 1125-1131 [PMID: 1597727]
171 **Hamner JW**, Taylor JA. Automated quantification of sympathetic beat-by-beat activity, independent of signal quality. *J Appl Physiol (1985)* 2001; **91**: 1199-1206 [PMID: 11509516]
172 **Scheen AJ**, Marchand M, Philips JC. [Relationships between baroreflex gain and pulsatile stress in type 1 diabetic patients]. *Ann Cardiol Angeiol (Paris)* 2012; **61**: 178-183 [PMID: 22575439 DOI: 10.1016/j.ancard.2012.04.001]
173 **Liatis S**, Alexiadou K, Tsiakou A, Makrilakis K, Katsilambros N, Tentolouris N. Cardiac autonomic function correlates with arterial stiffness in the early stage of type 1 diabetes.

Exp Diabetes Res 2011; **2011**: 957901 [PMID: 21804819 DOI: 10.1155/2011/957901]
174 **Turner J**, Belch JJ, Khan F. Current concepts in assessment of microvascular endothelial function using laser Doppler imaging and iontophoresis. *Trends Cardiovasc Med* 2008; **18**: 109-116 [PMID: 18555183 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcm.2008.02.001]
175 **Chao CY**, Cheing GL. Microvascular dysfunction in diabetic foot disease and ulceration. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2009; **25**: 604-614 [PMID: 19681035 DOI: 10.1002/dmrr.1004]
176 **Caselli A**, Rich J, Hanane T, Uccioli L, Veves A. Role of C-nociceptive fibers in the nerve axon reflex-related vasodilation in diabetes. *Neurology* 2003; **60**: 297-300 [PMID: 12552048 DOI: 10.1212/01.wnl.0000040250.31755.f9]
177 **Tahrani AA**, Zeng W, Shakher J, Piya MK, Hughes S, Dubb K, Stevens MJ. Cutaneous structural and biochemical correlates of foot complications in high-risk diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2012; **35**: 1913-1918 [PMID: 22751961 DOI: 10.2337/dc11-2076]
178 **Malik R**, Veves A, Tesfaye S, Smith G, Cameron N, Zochodne D, Lauria G; on behalf of the Toronto Consensus Panel on Diabetic Neuropathy*. Small Fiber Neuropathy: Role in the diagnosis of Diabetic Sensorimotor Polyneuropathy. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2011 Jun 22; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 21695760 DOI: 10.1002/dmrr.1222]
179 **Eranki VG**, Santosh R, Rajitha K, Pillai A, Sowmya P, Dupin J, Calvet JH. Sudomotor function assessment as a screening tool for microvascular complications in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2013; **101**: e11-e13 [PMID: 23880037 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2013.07.003]
180 **Tesfaye S**, Boulton AJ, Dyck PJ, Freeman R, Horowitz M, Kempler P, Lauria G, Malik RA, Spallone V, Vinik A, Bernardi L, Valensi P. Diabetic neuropathies: update on definitions, diagnostic criteria, estimation of severity, and treatments. *Diabetes Care* 2010; **33**: 2285-2293 [PMID: 20876709 DOI: 10.2337/dc10-1303]
181 **Buse JB**, Ginsberg HN, Bakris GL, Clark NG, Costa F, Eckel R, Fonseca V, Gerstein HC, Grundy S, Nesto RW, Pignone MP, Plutzky J, Porte D, Redberg R, Stitzel KF, Stone NJ. Primary prevention of cardiovascular diseases in people with diabetes mellitus: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association and the American Diabetes Association. *Circulation* 2007; **115**: 114-126 [PMID: 17192512 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.106.179294]
182 **Kadoi Y**. Anesthetic considerations in diabetic patients. Part I: preoperative considerations of patients with diabetes mellitus. *J Anesth* 2010; **24**: 739-747 [PMID: 20640453 DOI: 10.1007/s00540-010-0987-1]
183 **Carnethon MR**, Prineas RJ, Temprosa M, Zhang ZM, Uwaifo G, Molitch ME. The association among autonomic nervous system function, incident diabetes, and intervention arm in the Diabetes Prevention Program. *Diabetes Care* 2006; **29**: 914-919 [PMID: 16567837]
184 **Maser RE**, Lenhard MJ. An overview of the effect of weight loss on cardiovascular autonomic function. *Curr Diabetes Rev* 2007; **3**: 204-211 [PMID: 18220673 DOI: 10.2174/157339907781368931]
185 **Voulgari C**, Pagoni S, Vinik A, Poirier P. Exercise improves cardiac autonomic function in obesity and diabetes. *Metabolism* 2013; **62**: 609-621 [PMID: 23084034 DOI: 10.1016/j.metabol.2012.09.005]
186 **LeRoith D**, Fonseca V, Vinik A. Metabolic memory in diabetes--focus on insulin. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2005; **21**: 85-90 [PMID: 15619272 DOI: 10.1002/dmrr.530]
187 **Ceriello A**, Esposito K, Ihnat M, Thorpe J, Giugliano D. Long-term glycemic control influences the long-lasting effect of hyperglycemia on endothelial function in type 1 diabetes. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **94**: 2751-2756 [PMID: 19491221 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2009-0762]
188 **Jaiswal M**, Urbina EM, Wadwa RP, Talton JW, D'Agostino RB, Hamman RF, Fingerlin TE, Daniels S, Marcovina SM, Dolan LM, Dabelea D. Reduced heart rate variability among youth with type 1 diabetes: the SEARCH CVD study. *Diabetes Care* 2013; **36**: 157-162 [PMID: 22961570 DOI: 10.2337/dc12-0463]
189 **Duckworth W**, Abraira C, Moritz T, Reda D, Emanuele N, Reaven PD, Zieve FJ, Marks J, Davis SN, Hayward R, Warren SR, Goldman S, McCarren M, Vitek ME, Henderson WG, Huang GD. Glucose control and vascular complications in veterans with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 129-139 [PMID: 19092145 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0808431]
190 **Azad N**, Emanuele NV, Abraira C, Henderson WG, Colwell J, Levin SR, Nuttall FQ, Comstock JP, Sawin CT, Silbert C, Rubino FA. The effects of intensive glycemic control on neuropathy in the VA cooperative study on type II diabetes mellitus (VA CSDM). *J Diabetes Complications* 1999; **13**: 307-313 [PMID: 10765007 DOI: 10.1016/S1056-8727(99)00062-8]
191 **Ziegler D**, Schatz H, Conrad F, Gries FA, Ulrich H, Reichel G. Effects of treatment with the antioxidant alpha-lipoic acid on cardiac autonomic neuropathy in NIDDM patients. A 4-month randomized controlled multicenter trial (DEKAN Study). Deutsche Kardiale Autonome Neuropathie. *Diabetes Care* 1997; **20**: 369-373 [PMID: 9051389 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.20.3.369]
192 **Drel VR**, Pacher P, Vareniuk I, Pavlov I, Ilnytska O, Lyzogubov VV, Tibrewala J, Groves JT, Obrosova IG. A peroxynitrite decomposition catalyst counteracts sensory neuropathy in streptozotocin-diabetic mice. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2007; **569**: 48-58 [PMID: 17644085 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2007.05.055]
193 **Drel VR**, Pacher P, Vareniuk I, Pavlov IA, Ilnytska O, Lyzogubov VV, Bell SR, Groves JT, Obrosova IG. Evaluation of the peroxynitrite decomposition catalyst Fe(III) tetramesitylporphyrin octasulfonate on peripheral neuropathy in a mouse model of type 1 diabetes. *Int J Mol Med* 2007; **20**: 783-792 [PMID: 17982684]
194 **Arora M**, Kumar A, Kaundal RK, Sharma SS. Amelioration of neurological and biochemical deficits by peroxynitrite decomposition catalysts in experimental diabetic neuropathy. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2008; **596**: 77-83 [PMID: 18768138 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2008.08.003]
195 **Anagnostis P**, Athyros VG, Adamidou F, Panagiotou A, Kita M, Karagiannis A, Mikhailidis DP. Glucagon-like peptide-1-based therapies and cardiovascular disease: looking beyond glycaemic control. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2011; **13**: 302-312 [PMID: 21205117 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2010.01345.x]
196 **Harkavyi A**, Abuirmeileh A, Lever R, Kingsbury AE, Biggs CS, Whitton PS. Glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor stimulation reverses key deficits in distinct rodent models of Parkinson's disease. *J Neuroinflammation* 2008; **5**: 19 [PMID: 18492290]
197 **Johnson BF**, Nesto RW, Pfeifer MA, Slater WR, Vinik AI, Chyun DA, Law G, Wackers FJ, Young LH. Cardiac abnormalities in diabetic patients with neuropathy: effects of aldose reductase inhibitor administration. *Diabetes Care* 2004; **27**: 448-454 [PMID: 14747227 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.27.2.448]
198 **Manzella D**, Barbieri M, Ragno E, Paolisso G. Chronic administration of pharmacologic doses of vitamin E improves the cardiac autonomic nervous system in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2001; **73**: 1052-1057 [PMID: 11382659]
199 **Pop-Busui R**, Stevens MJ, Raffel DM, White EA, Mehta M, Plunkett CD, Brown MB, Feldman EL. Effects of triple antioxidant therapy on measures of cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy and on myocardial blood flow in type 1 diabetes: a randomised controlled trial. *Diabetologia* 2013; **56**: 1835-1844 [PMID: 23740194 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-013-2942-9]
200 **Pousset F**, Copie X, Lechat P, Jaillon P, Boissel JP, Hetzel M, Fillette F, Remme W, Guize L, Le Heuzey JY. Effects of bisoprolol on heart rate variability in heart failure. *Am J Cardiol* 1996; **77**: 612-617 [PMID: 8610612 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9149(97)89316-2]
201 **Korkmaz ME**, Müderrisoğlu H, Uluçam M, Ozin B. Effects

of spironolactone on heart rate variability and left ventricular systolic function in severe ischemic heart failure. *Am J Cardiol* 2000; **86**: 649-653 [PMID: 10980217 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9149(00)01046-8]
202 **Kontopoulos AG**, Athyros VG, Didangelos TP, Papageorgiou AA, Avramidis MJ, Mayroudi MC, Karamitsos DT. Effect of chronic quinapril administration on heart rate variability in patients with diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Diabetes Care* 1997; **20**: 355-361 [PMID: 9051387 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.20.3.355]
203 **Garg R**, Yusuf S. Overview of randomized trials of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors on mortality and morbidity in patients with heart failure. Collaborative Group on ACE Inhibitor Trials. *JAMA* 1995; **273**: 1450-1456 [PMID: 7654275 DOI: 10.1001/jama.273.18.1450]
204 **Hamroff G**, Katz SD, Mancini D, Blaufarb I, Bijou R, Patel R, Jondeau G, Olivari MT, Thomas S, Le Jemtel TH. Addition of angiotensin II receptor blockade to maximal angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibition improves exercise capacity in patients with severe congestive heart failure. *Circulation* 1999; **99**: 990-992 [PMID: 10051289 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.99.8.990]
205 **Baruch L**, Anand I, Cohen IS, Ziesche S, Judd D, Cohn JN. Augmented short- and long-term hemodynamic and hormonal effects of an angiotensin receptor blocker added to angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor therapy in patients with heart failure. Vasodilator Heart Failure Trial (V-HeFT) Study Group. *Circulation* 1999; **99**: 2658-2664 [PMID: 10338459 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.99.20.2658]
206 **McKelvie RS**, Yusuf S, Pericak D, Avezum A, Burns RJ, Probstfield J, Tsuyuki RT, White M, Rouleau J, Latini R, Maggioni A, Young J, Pogue J. Comparison of candesartan, enalapril, and their combination in congestive heart failure: randomized evaluation of strategies for left ventricular dysfunction (RESOLVD) pilot study. The RESOLVD Pilot Study Investigators. *Circulation* 1999; **100**: 1056-1064 [PMID: 10477530 DOI: 10.1161/01.CIR.100.10.1056]
207 **Gainer JV**, Morrow JD, Loveland A, King DJ, Brown NJ. Effect of bradykinin-receptor blockade on the response to angiotensin-converting-enzyme inhibitor in normotensive and hypertensive subjects. *N Engl J Med* 1998; **339**: 1285-1292 [PMID: 9791144 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199810293391804]
208 **Didangelos TP**, Arsos GA, Karamitsos DT, Athyros VG, Georga SD, Karatzas ND. Effect of quinapril or losartan alone and in combination on left ventricular systolic and diastolic functions in asymptomatic patients with diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *J Diabetes Complications* 2006; **20**: 1-7 [PMID: 16389160 DOI: 10.1016/j.jdiacomp.2005.05.002]
209 **Freeman R**. Autonomic peripheral neuropathy. *Lancet* 2005; **365**: 1259-1270 [PMID: 15811460 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(05)74815-7]
210 **Lahrmann H**, Cortelli P, Hilz M, Mathias CJ, Struhal W, Tassinari M. EFNS guidelines on the diagnosis and management of orthostatic hypotension. *Eur J Neurol* 2006; **13**: 930-936 [PMID: 16930356 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2006.01512.x]
211 **Aronson D**. Pharmacologic modulation of autonomic tone: implications for the diabetic patient. *Diabetologia* 1997; **40**: 476-481 [PMID: 9112027 DOI: 10.1007/s001250050704]
212 **Freeman R**. Clinical practice. Neurogenic orthostatic hypotension. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 615-624 [PMID: 18256396 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcp074189]
213 **Low PA**, Gilden JL, Freeman R, Sheng KN, McElligott MA. Efficacy of midodrine vs placebo in neurogenic orthostatic hypotension. A randomized, double-blind multicenter study. Midodrine Study Group. *JAMA* 1997; **277**: 1046-1051 [PMID: 9091692 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1997.03540370036033]
214 **Jankovic J**, Gilden JL, Hiner BC, Kaufmann H, Brown DC, Coghlan CH, Rubin M, Fouad-Tarazi FM. Neurogenic orthostatic hypotension: a double-blind, placebo-controlled study with midodrine. *Am J Med* 1993; **95**: 38-48 [PMID: 7687093 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(93)90230-M]
215 **Mitka M**. Trials to address efficacy of midodrine 18 years after it gains FDA approval. *JAMA* 2012; **307**: 1124, 1127 [PMID: 22436941 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2012.291]
216 **Campbell IW**, Ewing DJ, Clarke BF. 9-Alpha-fluorohydrocortisone in the treatment of postural hypotension in diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Diabetes* 1975; **24**: 381-384 [PMID: 1094320 DOI: 10.2337/diab.24.4.381]
217 **Campbell IW**, Ewing DJ, Clarke BF. Therapeutic experience with fludrocortisone in diabetic postural hypotension. *Br Med J* 1976; **1**: 872-874 [PMID: 769906 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.1.6014.872]
218 **Hoeldtke RD**, O'Dorisio TM, Boden G. Treatment of autonomic neuropathy with a somatostatin analogue SMS-201-995. *Lancet* 1986; **2**: 602-605 [PMID: 2875321 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(86)92428-1]
219 **Hoeldtke RD**, Bryner KD, Hoeldtke ME, Hobbs G. Treatment of autonomic neuropathy, postural tachycardia and orthostatic syncope with octreotide LAR. *Clin Auton Res* 2007; **17**: 334-340 [PMID: 17767379 DOI: 10.1007/s10286-007-0436-x]
220 **Alam M**, Smith G, Bleasdale-Barr K, Pavitt DV, Mathias CJ. Effects of the peptide release inhibitor, octreotide, on daytime hypotension and on nocturnal hypertension in primary autonomic failure. *J Hypertens* 1995; **13**: 1664-1669 [PMID: 8903629]
221 **Low PA**, Singer W. Management of neurogenic orthostatic hypotension: an update. *Lancet Neurol* 2008; **7**: 451-458 [PMID: 18420158 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(08)70088-7]
222 **Sasaki E**, Goda K, Nagata K, Kitaoka H, Ohsawa N, Hanafusa T. Acarbose improved severe postprandial hypotension in a patient with diabetes mellitus. *J Diabetes Complications* 1995; **15**: 158-161 [PMID: 11358685 DOI: 10.1016/S1056-8727(01)00138-6]
223 **Ziegler D**, Gries FA, Spüler M, Lessmann F. The epidemiology of diabetic neuropathy. Diabetic Cardiovascular Autonomic Neuropathy Multicenter Study Group. J Diabetes Complications. 1992; 6: 49-57 [PMID: 1562759 DOI: 10.1016/1056-8727(92)90049-Q]
224 **Gaede P**, Vedel P, Parving HH, Pedersen O. Intensified multifactorial intervention in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and microalbuminuria: the Steno type 2 randomised study. *Lancet* 1999; **353**: 617-622 [PMID: 10030326 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(98)07368-1]
225 **Armstrong FM**, Bradbury JE, Ellis SH, Owens DR, Rosen I, Sonksen P, Sundkvist G. A study of peripheral diabetic neuropathy. The application of age-related reference values. *Diabet Med* 1991; **8 Spec No**: S94-S99 [PMID: 1825968 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.1991.tb02166.x]
226 **Veglio M**, Sivieri R, Chinaglia A, Scaglione L, Cavallo-Perin P. QT interval prolongation and mortality in type 1 diabetic patients: a 5-year cohort prospective study. Neuropathy Study Group of the Italian Society of the Study of Diabetes, Piemonte Affiliate. *Diabetes Care* 2000; **23**: 1381-1383 [PMID: 10977037 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.23.9.1381]
227 **Chen HS**, Hwu CM, Kuo BI, Chiang SC, Kwok CF, Lee SH, Lee YS, Weih MJ, Hsiao LC, Lin SH, Ho LT. Abnormal cardiovascular reflex tests are predictors of mortality in Type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabet Med* 2001; **18**: 268-273 [PMID: 11437856 DOI: 10.1046/j.1464-5491.2001.00442.x]
228 **Wheeler SG**, Ahroni JH, Boyko EJ. Prospective study of autonomic neuropathy as a predictor of mortality in patients with diabetes. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2002; **58**: 131-138 [PMID: 12213355 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8227(02)00128-6]
229 **Astrup AS**, Tarnow L, Rossing P, Hansen BV, Hilsted J, Parving HH. Cardiac autonomic neuropathy predicts cardiovascular morbidity and mortality in type 1 diabetic patients with diabetic nephropathy. *Diabetes Care* 2006; **29**: 334-339 [PMID: 16443883 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.29.02.06.dc05-1242]
230 **Astrup AS**, Nielsen FS, Rossing P, Ali S, Kastrup J, Smidt UM, Parving HH. Predictors of mortality in patients with type 2 diabetes with or without diabetic nephropathy: a follow-up study. *J Hypertens* 2007; **25**: 2479-2485 [PMID:

17984670 DOI: 10.1097/HJH.0b013e3282f06428]
231 **Lykke JA**, Tarnow L, Parving HH, Hilsted J. A combined abnormality in heart rate variation and QT corrected interval is a strong predictor of cardiovascular death in type 1 diabetes. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 2008; **68**: 654-659 [PMID: 19378439 DOI: 10.1080/00365510802018330]
232 **Ziegler D**, Zentai CP, Perz S, Rathmann W, Haastert B, Döring A, Meisinger C. Prediction of mortality using measures of cardiac autonomic dysfunction in the diabetic and nondiabetic population: the MONICA/KORA Augsburg Cohort Study. *Diabetes Care* 2008; **31**: 556-561 [PMID: 18086873 DOI: 10.2337/dc07-1615]
233 **Beijers HJ**, Ferreira I, Bravenboer B, Dekker JM, Nijpels G, Heine RJ, Stehouwer CD. Microalbuminuria and cardiovascular autonomic dysfunction are independently associated with cardiovascular mortality: evidence for distinct pathways: the Hoorn Study. *Diabetes Care* 2009; **32**: 1698-1703 [PMID: 19564456 DOI: 10.2337/dc08-1544]

P- Reviewers: Mitra A, Padwal R
S- Editor: Cui XM **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.40

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 40-51
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

REVIEW

Insulin plus incretin: A glucose-lowering strategy for type 2-diabetes

Bo Ahrén

Bo Ahrén, Department of Clinical Sciences Lund, Lund University, 221 84 Lund, Sweden
Author contributions: Ahrén B designed and wrote the article.
Correspondence to: Dr. Bo Ahrén, Professor, Department of Clinical Sciences Lund, Lund University, B11 BMC, 221 84 Lund, Sweden. bo.ahren@med.lu.se
Telephone: +46-46-2220758 Fax: +46-46-2220757
Received: October 14, 2013 Revised: November 25, 2013
Accepted: December 12, 2013
Published online: February 15, 2014

Abstract

There are many advantages of combining incretin therapy [glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) receptor agonists and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors] with insulin therapy as a glucose-lowering strategy in type 2 diabetes. One important advantage is the complementary mode of the mechanistic action of incretin and insulin therapy. Another advantage is the reduction in risk of hypoglycemia and weight gain when adding incretin therapy to insulin. Several clinical trials have studied the addition of GLP-1 receptor agonists [exenatide BID (twice daily), lixisenatide, albiglutide] or DPP-4 inhibitors (vildagliptin, sitagliptin, saxagliptin, alogliptin, linagliptin) to ongoing insulin therapy or adding insulin to ongoing therapy with a GLP-1 receptor agonist (liraglutide). These studies show improved glycemia in the presence of limited risk for hypoglycemia and weight gain with the combination of incretin therapy with insulin. This article reviews the background and clinical studies on this combination.

Key words: Type 2 diabetes; Glucose lowering; Insulin therapy; Glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists; Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors; Incretin therapy; Combination

Core tip: Incretin therapy (glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists or dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors) combined with insulin therapy is a glucose-lowering strategy in type 2 diabetes. The combination allows a complementary mode of mechanistic action and, as demonstrated in several clinical trials, is glucose-lowering in association with limited risk for hypoglycemia and weight gain. The combination is a promising strategy in patients in whom metformin with either incretin therapy or basal insulin is insufficient for adequate glycemic control. This article reviews the background and clinical studies on this combination.

Ahrén B. Insulin plus incretin: A glucose-lowering strategy for type 2-diabetes. *World J Diabetes* 2014; 5(1): 40-51 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/full/v5/i1/40.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.40

INSULIN IN COMBINATION WITH INCRETINS: A MORE COMMONLY USED GLUCOSE-LOWERING THERAPY

Life style changes accompanied by addition of metformin are often first line glucose reducing therapy in type 2 diabetes[1,2]. When metformin as the only pharmaceutical agent is insufficient for adequate glycemic control, several options are currently available. Of these, sulfonylureas, thiazolidinediones, dipeptidyl peptidase-4 (DPP-4) inhibitors, glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) receptor agonists and insulin were recently suggested by the joint position statement from the American Diabetes Association and the European Association of the Study of Diabetes to be potentials as an add-on to metformin[1]. They were suggested to be individualized to target the best combination for the individual patient. However, even after combination of metformin with any of these second-line thera-

pies, many patients still do not reach the glycemic target which is mainly due to the progression of the disease. At this stage, three-drug combinations are suggested to be used, involving metformin in combination with two of the other options. One such three-drug combination is the combination of insulin therapy with incretin therapy (+ metformin) as a glucose-reducing strategy of type 2 diabetes[2-6]. This article reviews the current evidence and experience for this combination.

BASIS FOR INCRETIN THERAPY

Incretin therapy is based on the anti-diabetic effects of GLP-1[7]. As an incretin hormone, GLP-1 is released from the gut after meal ingestion and augments insulin secretion in a glucose-dependent manner[7,8]. This effect on the beta cells is achieved through activating specific GLP-1 receptors, which are G protein coupled receptors[9]. GLP-1 also has an important effect to inhibit glucagon secretion[10]. These double effects on islet hormone secretion are of importance for the anti-diabetic action of incretin therapy and, furthermore, by targeting the double alpha and beta cell dysfunction, incretin therapy targets a main pathophysiological cause of the disease[11]. GLP-1 receptors are, however, also expressed in other cells and therefore GLP-1 also exhibits extra-islet effects, such as delay of gastric emptying[12] and satiety through a central effect in the hypothalamus[13]. GLP-1 also has the potential of preserving beta cell function through inhibition of apoptosis[14], although this has so far only been demonstrated in animal studies and not shown in humans.

The first study showing an anti-diabetic action of GLP-1 was published in 1992[15]. In the early development of GLP-1 as a therapy, GLP-1 had to be given as an intravenous infusion since the hormone is rapidly inactivated by DPP-4[16]. The two successful strategies for incretin therapy used this knowledge and today we have several GLP-1 receptor agonists which are not or only weakly inactivated by DPP-4 and DPP-4 inhibitors[17-20].

GLP-1 receptor agonists are injected subcutaneously once or twice daily [exenatide BID (twice daily), liraglutide, lixisenatide] or once weekly {exenatide once weekly [Quaque weekly (QW)]}. In addition, once weekly GLP-1 receptor agonists are in late clinical development (albiglutide, semaglutide, dulaglutide)[17,20]. The GLP-1 receptor agonists therefore differ in several respects, such as dosage regimen. However, GLP-1 receptor agonists also differ in other aspects, as was recently reviewed[17-20]. Thus, the different GLP-1 receptor agonists have different molecular structures and in this context, they may be derived from exendin-4, showing approximately 50% homology with native GLP-1 (exenatide, lixisenatide), or they may be true GLP-1 analogues with a structure showing a high (> 90%) homology to GLP-1 (liraglutide, albiglutide, semaglutide, dulaglutide). The GLP-1 receptor agonists also differ in molecular size since they may be similar in size to native GLP-1 (exenatide, lixisenatide, liraglutide, semaglutide) or be 15-20 times bigger because of fusion of GLP-1 with albumin (albiglutide) or immunoglobulin (dulaglutide).

DPP-4 inhibitors are oral agents given once or twice daily (sitagliptin, vildagliptin, saxagliptin, linagliptin, alogliptin, tenelagliptin, anagliptin, gemagliptin)[18,19]. They are different from each other in terms of molecular structure, although they are all small molecules, and they also differ, besides in pharmacokinetics with relevance for dosing regimen, in elimination mechanisms, as was recently reviewed[21].

Incretin therapy is today established as an add-on treatment to metformin and is also used in other conditions; it results in reduction of both fasting and postprandial glucose and it is associated with a low risk of hypoglycemia and no weight gain (weight reduction or weight neutrality)[19,20,22].

RATIONALE FOR COMBINATION INSULIN THERAPY PLUS INCRETIN THERAPY

The combination of incretin therapy and insulin therapy was initially not clearly evident during the development of incretin therapy. Instead, incretin therapy was mainly developed for combination with oral antihyperglycemic agents, in particular metformin. This is still a very important combination. However, as discussed for GLP-1 receptor agonists[4] and DPP-4 inhibitors[2,3], incretin therapy offers mechanistic advantages when used in association with insulin, which makes this combination a promising strategy for treatment.

The mechanistic complementary actions of the two approaches relate to reduction in fasting glucose, reduction in postprandial glucose, the low risk for hypoglycemia and the prevention of weight gain. More mechanistic studies are required, however, for a full appreciation of the complementary actions of insulin and incretins in combination.

Fasting glucose

Reduction of fasting glucose is a major goal for glucose-lowering therapy since fasting glucose contributes largely to hemoglobin A1c (HbA1c)[23,24]. A main effect of basal insulin is the reduction of fasting glucose, which is achieved through increased peripheral (mainly muscle and fat tissue) glucose utilization and inhibited hepatic glucose output[25,26]. Also, GLP-1-receptor agonists and DPP-4 inhibitors reduce fasting glucose but this is achieved through other mechanisms than insulin; mainly a glucose-dependent inhibition of glucagon secretion from the islet alpha cells[10,27]. In addition, direct liver effects of GLP-1 may also contribute[28]. Hence, the combination of insulin with incretin therapy would be expected to complement each other to reduce fasting glucose.

Postprandial glucose

Postprandial glucose also contributes to HbA1c and is therefore a target for glucose-lowering therapy[23,24]. Postprandial glucose is mainly regulated by gastric emptying

and the meal-induced islet hormone responses[29-31]. These effects are not appreciably affected by basal insulin. In contrast, incretin therapy reduces postprandial glucose, although the mode of action to achieve this effect differs between GLP-1 receptor agonists and DPP-4 inhibitors. GLP-1 receptor agonists reduce postprandial glucose mainly by delaying gastric emptying[29-31]. This effect of GLP-1 shows, however, tachyphylaxis, meaning that during long-term and continuous stimulation, the effect is reduced[32,33]. Consequently, intermittently acting GLP-1 receptor agonists (exenatide BID, lixisenatide) have been shown to be more potent to reduce gastric emptying than continuously acting GLP-1 receptor agonists (liraglutide, exenatide QW)[34,35]. In contrast, DPP-4 inhibitors do not inhibit gastric emptying[36] but instead reduce postprandial glucose mainly through inhibiting postprandial glucagon levels and stimulating beta cell function[27,37]. Both incretin therapy strategies therefore reduce postprandial glucose and thus complement the lack of such an effect by insulin in the combination therapy.

Hypoglycemia

Hypoglycemia is an adverse event for glucose-lowering therapy and is occasionally the limitation factor for achieving good glycemic control. Hypoglycemia is associated with negative impact, such as unpleasant and sometimes dangerous symptoms, weight gain (due to defense eating), deterioration of glycemic control (due to reduced adherence to therapy and therapeutic goals because of fear of new hypoglycemic episodes), increased cardiovascular risk and increased risk for microvascular complications[38-41]. Insulin therapy is associated with a high risk of hypoglycemia[29-31]. In contrast, incretin therapy is associated with a low risk of hypoglycemia[30,31,39-47]. This is because the islet effect of GLP-1 is glucose dependent[7,9] and the glucagon counter-regulation to hypoglycemia is preserved or augmented[48-50]. Therefore, incretin therapy has the potential to prevent the hypoglycemia induced by insulin when the two treatments are used in combination.

Body weight

Since increased body weight is associated with long-term negative effects, prevention of weight gain or weight reduction is of importance for glucose-lowering therapies. Body weight is increased by insulin therapy[51]. This is due to the anabolic action of insulin but may also be due to the self-defense eating associated with hypoglycemic events. Incretin therapy, on the other hand, prevents weight gain since its lowering of glycemia is not associated with increased risk of hypoglycemia and therefore the therapy avoid the self-defense eating[52]. GLP-1 receptor agonists also induce satiety through effects on the satiety center in the hypothalamus, thereby inducing weight reduction[13]. Therefore, the combination of incretin therapy with insulin has a great advantage of preventing the weight gain induced by insulin.

Disease modifying effects

Type 2 diabetes is a progressive disease with is mainly due to a continuous decline in beta cell function[53]. It has been discussed whether insulin therapy and incretin therapy may have complementary disease modifying effects[5]. The rationale for this suggestion is that insulin has been suggested to improve beta cell function through its normalization of fasting glucose, thereby preventing glucotoxicity and may also result in "beta cell rest"[54]. On the other hand, GLP-1 based therapies may improve beta cell function so much that beta cell function will also be improved over a long-term perspective, particularly in association with inhibited beta cell apoptosis[7,9].

ADVANTAGES OF COMBINING INSULIN WITH INCRETIN THERAPY

The complementary actions of insulin and incretin therapy, as discussed above, may result in potential advantages that may be observed by using this combination as a glucose-lowering strategy when treating people with type 2 diabetes. The main advantages are: (1) the combined reduction of fasting and postprandial glycemia which will lower HbA1c; (2) the lower risk of hypoglycemia which is due to the protection against hypoglycemia with incretin therapy in association with the often observed reduction in insulin dose when using this combination; (3) the lower risk for weight gain, which again is due to the protection against weight gain by incretin therapy in association with reduced weight gain through reduction in the insulin dose; and (4) the potential long-term disease modifying prospect of the combination.

CLINICAL STUDIES OF ADDING GLP-1 RECEPTOR AGONISTS TO INSULIN

Exenatide

The first proper clinical trial exploring the combination of incretin therapy with insulin was a study in 259 patients with type 2 diabetes who were treated with insulin glargine (± metformin and/or pioglitazone) with insufficient glycemic control (HbA1c 7.5%-10.5%; mean 8.4%). Patients were randomized to receive additional therapy with exenatide BID (n = 138) or placebo (n = 123) and the dose of insulin glargine was titrated to achieve a fasting glucose level less than 5.6 mmol/L[55]. After the study period of 30 wk, HbA1c was reduced by 1.7% in the group treated with exenatide BID as an add-on compared to 1.0% by placebo ($P < 0.001$). The daily insulin glargine dose had increased by 20 U (95%CI: 16-24) in the placebo group and by 13 U (95%CI: 9-17) in the exenatide BID-group ($P = 0.030$) (baseline insulin glargine dose was 48 U). Postprandial glucose was reduced in the exenatide BID-treated group (by 2.0 mmol/L, 95%CI: 1.5-2.5 mmol/L) but not changed in the placebo group ($P < 0.001$), whereas changes in fasting glucose did not differ between the two groups. Body weight was reduced (by 1.8 kg) in the exenatide BID group but increased (by 1.0 kg) in the placebo-treated group (baseline 94 kg). Furthermore, the number of hypoglycemic events did

Table 1 Published clinical trials with glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists added to ongoing insulin therapy

		Exenatide BID		Lixisenatide	
Ref		56	58	59	60
Number of patients		259	495	446	311
Duration (wk)		30	24	24	24
HbA1c	Baseline	8.3 ± 0.9	8.4 ± 0.9	7.6 ± 0.5	8.5 ± 0.7
	Change	-1.7 (-1.9, -1.6)	-0.7 ± 0.1	-0.7 ± 0.1	-0.8 ± 0.2
	Baseline comparator	8.5 ± 1.0	8.4 ± 0.8	7.6 ± 0.5	8.5 ± 0.8
	Change comparator	-1.0 (-1.2, -0.9)	-0.4 ± 0.1	-0.4 ± 0.1	+0.1 ± 0.2
FPG (mmol/L)	Baseline	7.9 ± 2.1	8.1 ± 2.8	6.6 ± 1.7	7.8 ± 2.2
	Change	-1.6 (-1.9, -1.3)	-0.6 ± 0.2	-0.3 ± 0.2	-0.4 ± 0.3
	Baseline comparator	8.3 ± 2.3	8.0 ± 2.7	6.7 ± 2.0	7.7 ± 2.3
	Change comparator	-1.5 (-1.8, -1.2)	-0.6 ± 0.3	-0.5 ± 0.2	0.3 ± 0.3
Hypoglycemia	GLP-1RA	1.4[1]	206[2]	28[3]	42[3]; 33[4]
	Comparator	1.2[1]	522[2]	22[3]	24[3]; 28[4]
Body weight	Baseline	95 ± 20	89 ± 21	88 ± 22	66 ± 13
	Change	-1.8 (-2.4, -1.1)	-1.8 ± 0.2	0.3 ± 0.3	-0.4
	Baseline comparator	93 ± 21	88 ± 20	87 ± 21	66 ± 12
	Change comparator	1.0 (0.2, 1.7)	-0.5 ± 0.3	1.2 ± 0.3	+0.1

Insulin glargine was used in all studies. Occurrence of hypoglycemia was reported as number of episodes per patient year[1], number of events[2] or as percentage of patients with at least one hypoglycemic episode[3]. One study also reported percentage of patients not on sulfonylurea who experienced at least one hypoglycemic episode[4]. Variation in baseline is SD, variation in effect is SE. Variation within parenthesis is the 95%CI. FPG: Fasting glucose; GLP-1: Glucagon-like peptide-1; HbA1c: Hemoglobin A1c.

not differ significantly between the groups inspite of the difference in HbA1c (1.4 episodes per patient year in the exenatide BID-treated group *vs* 1.2 episodes per patient year in the placebo group) (Table 1).

In another study, a direct comparison was performed between adding exenatide BID *vs* short-acting prandial insulin lispro to ongoing insulin glargine (+ metformin) in patients who were inadequately controlled on insulin glargine + metformin. The study used an initial 12 wk titration phase with insulin glargine [fasting glucose (FPG) glucose target < 5.6 mmol/L]. Patients who failed to reduce HbA1c below 7% during this titration period (mean 8.3%) were randomized to receive additional exenatide BID (n = 316) or insulin lispro (n = 321). The results showed that after 30 wk, HbA1c had been reduced by 1.1% ± 0.1% in both groups (not significantly different). Fasting glucose was reduced by 0.5 ± 0.2 mmol/L in the exenatide group *vs* 0.2 ± 0.2 mmol/L in the insulin lispor group (P = 0.002) and whereas postprandial glucose was similarly reduced after breakfast and evening meals, it was more pronouncedly reduced by lispro at lunch (when exenatide was not given; P < 0.001). Body weight was reduced in the exenatide BID group (by 2.4 ± 0.2 kg) and increased in the insulin lispro group (by 2.1 ± 0.2 kg). The number of hypoglycemic events was lower in the exenatide group (n = 206) than in the insulin lispro group (n = 522)[56].

Lixisenatide

The GLP-1 receptor agonist lixisenatide has been examined as an add-on to basal insulin in three studies. In the first study, patients treated with basal insulin with inadequate glycemic control (HbA1c 7%-10%, mean 7.6%) were randomized to addition of lixisenatide (n = 328) or placebo (n = 167) without any insulin titration[57]. The used basal insulins in the study were insulin glargine (50%), insulin detemir (47%), neutral protamine Hagedorn (NPH) insulin (7%) or premix insulin (2%) and 80% of the patients were additionally treated with metformin. After the study period of 24 wk, HbA1c was reduced by 0.7% by lixisenatide and by 0.4% by placebo (P < 0.001). Fasting glucose was reduced in both groups but with no significant difference. In contrast, postprandial glucose was more pronouncedly reduced in the lixisenatide group (by 5.5 ± 0.5 mmol/L) than in the placebo group (by 1.7 ± 0.5 mmol/L, P < 0.001). Body weight (from baseline of 88 kg) was reduced by 1.8 kg by lixisenatide and 0.5 kg by placebo (P < 0.001). The daily insulin dose (mean 56 U at baseline) had been reduced by 5 U in the lixisenatide group and by 2 U in the placebo group. Twenty-eight percent of patients in the lixisenatide group reported hypoglycemia *vs* 22% in the placebo group.

In the second study on add-on with lixisenatide to basal insulin, lixisenatide was added to insulin glargine in patients who initially failed to control glycemia with oral agents (HbA1c 7%-10%, mean HbA1c 8.6%)[58]. After an initial titration phase of insulin glargine alone for 12 wk targeting a fasting glucose of 4.4-5.6 mmol/L (mean HbA1c was reduced to 7.6%), patients were randomized to lixisenatide (n = 223) or placebo (n = 223) together with ongoing insulin therapy (+ metformin) for 24 wk. It was found that mean HbA1c was further reduced to 7.0% in the lixisenatide group *vs* to 7.3% in the placebo group (P < 0.001). Fasting glucose was similarly reduced in both groups, whereas postprandial glucose was reduced more in the lixisenatide group (by 3.4 ± 0.5 mmol/L) than in the placebo group (0.1 ± 0.5 mmol/L; P < 0.001). Body weight was increased by 1.2 kg in the placebo group and by 0.3 kg in the lixisenatide group (baseline 86 kg) (P = 0.0012). Confirmed hypoglycemia was reported in 0.80 episodes per patient year in the lixisenatide group *vs* 0.44 in the placebo group.

Finally, the effect of adding lixisenatide to ongoing insulin therapy has also been examined in Asian patients with inadequate glycemic control on basal insulin [with (70%) or without sulfonylurea therapy][59]. Of the patients, 60% were treated with insulin glargine, 27% with insulin detemir and 13% with NPH insulin with a mean daily insulin dose of 25 U. The patients were randomized to addition of lixisenatide (n = 154) or placebo (n = 157) together with ongoing therapy with basal insulin ± sulfonylurea. After the 24 wk study period, HbA1c was reduced by 0.8% in the lixisenatide group *vs* increased by 0.1% in the placebo group (P < 0.001). There was a reduction in fasting glucose in the lixisenatide group compared to the placebo group (P = 0.0187) and postprandial

Table 2 Published clinical trials with dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors combined with basal ± prandial insulin

		Vildagliptin		Sitagliptin		Alogliptin	Saxagliptin	Linagliptin
Ref		62	63	64	65	67	69	70
Number of patients		296	449	641	124	390	455	1261
Study duration (wk)		24	24	24	24	26	52	24
Comparator		Stable insulin	Stable insulin	Stable insulin	Increasing insulin	Stable insulin	Stable insulin	Stable insulin
HbA1c (%)	Baseline	8.4 ± 1.0	8.8 ± 1.0	8.7 ± 0.9	9.2 ± 1.0	9.3 ± 1.1	8.7 ± 0.9	8.3 ± 0.1
	Change	-0.5 ± 0.1	-0.8 ± 0.1	-0.6 (-0.7, -0.5)	-0.6 (-0.9, -0.3)	-0.7	-0.8 ± 0.1	-0.6 ± 0.1
	Baseline placebo	8.4 ± 1.1	8.8 ± 1.0	8.6 ± 0.9	9.2 ± 1.1	9.3 ± 1.1	8.6 ± 0.9	8.3 ± 0.1
	Change placebo	-0.2 ± 0.1	-0.1 ± 0.1	0 (-0.1, 0.1)	-0.2 (-0.5, 0.3)	-0.1	-0.4 ± 0.1	-0.1 ± 0.1
FPG (mmol/L)	Baseline	9.3 ± 3.1	9.6 ± 2.6	9.8 ± 2.9	9.0 ± 3.3	10.3 ± 3.9	NR	8.2 ± 2.6
	Change	-0.8 ± 0.3	-0.8	-1.0 (-1.4, -0.7)	-1.0 (-2.7, -0.2)	-0.6 ± 0.3		-0.2 ± 0.2
	Baseline placebo	8.7 ± 3.1	9.1 ± 2.5	9.9 ± 3.3	8.4 ± 2.8	10.9 ± 4.3	NR	8.4 ± 2.6
	Change placebo	-0.2 ± 0.4	-0.2	-0.2 (-0.6, 0.2)	-1.3 (-1.8, -0.5)	0.3 ± 0.3		-0.3 ± 0.2
Hypoglycemia		113[1]	8.4[2]	16[2]	7[2]	20[2]	23[2]	23[2]
Hypoglycemia placebo		185[1]	7.2[2]	8[2]	14[2]	40[2]	27[2]	22[2]
Body weight (kg)	Baseline	95 ± 2	78 ± 16	87 ± 19	69 ± 12	87 ± 19	88 ± 18	BMI (31 ± 5)
	Change	1.3 ± 0.3	0.1	-0.1 (-0.2, 0.4)	-0.7 (-1.4, -0.1)	0.6 ± 0.2	0.8	-0.2 ± 0.1
	Baseline placebo	95 ± 2	79 ± 17	87 ± 18	66 ± 10	91 ± 21	86 ± 16	BMI (31 ± 5)
	Change placebo	0.6 ± 0.3	-0.4	-0.1 (-0.3, 0.4)	1.1 (0.2, 1.8)	0.6 ± 0.2	0.5	0.1 ± 0.1

In the studies long and medium acting insulin and premixed insulins were used. Occurrence of hypoglycemia was reported as number of events[1] or as percentage of patients with at least one hypoglycemic episode[2]. Variation in baseline is SD, variation in effect is SE. Variation within parenthesis is the 95%CI. FPG: Fasting glucose; BMI: Body mass index (kg/m^2); HbA1c: Hemoglobin A1c.

glucose was reduced by 8 mmol/L in the lixisenatide group but not changed in the placebo group ($P < 0.001$). Symptomatic hypoglycemia was more frequent with lixisenatide (42.9%) *vs* placebo (23.6%). In contrast, in patients not treated with sulfonylurea, hypoglycemia was similar between groups (32.6% *vs* 28.3%, respectively). Change in body weight was not significantly different between the groups whereas the daily insulin dose was reduced by 1.4 U in lixisenatide group *vs* by 0.1 U in the placebo group ($P = 0.0019$).

Albiglutide

A study compared the effects of the once weekly GLP-1 receptor agonist albiglutide ($n = 285$) *vs* insulin lispro ($n = 281$) to ongoing insulin glargine therapy (+ oral agents, no sulfonylurea) in patients with type 2 diabetes with inadequate glycemic control (mean HbA1c 8.5%)[60]. There was a titration algorithm for insulin glargine to achieve fasting glucose of 4.4-7.2 mmol/L. After the 26 wk study period, HbA1c was similarly reduced by albiglutide (0.8% ± 0.1%) and by insulin lispro (0.7% ± 0.2%). Fasting glucose was reduced in both groups with no significant difference. Body weight (baseline 92 kg) was reduced 0.7 ± 0.2 kg by albiglutide and increased by 0.8 ± 0.2 kg by insulin lispro ($P < 0.001$). Mean insulin glargine dose did not change during the study. Thirty-two percent of patients on albiglutide experienced hypoglycemia *vs* 50% with insulin lispro.

CLINICAL STUDIES OF ADDING DPP-4 INHIBITORS TO INSULIN

Vildagliptin

The first study examining a DPP-4 inhibitor in combination with insulin added vildagliptin (*vs* placebo) to insulin treated patients with insufficient glycemic control (HbA1c 7.5%-11%, mean HbA1c 8.4%; $n = 296$)[61]. Patients were treated with basal and prandial insulin (mean 2.8 injections per day, mean daily insulin dose 82 U). After the 24 wk study period, HbA1c was reduced by 0.5% in the vildagliptin group *vs* 0.2% in the placebo group (baseline 8.4%) ($P = 0.01$). During the course of the study, there were 113 hypoglycemic events in the vildagliptin group compared to 185 in the placebo group and whereas there were 6 episodes of severe hypoglycemia in the placebo group, no severe hypoglycemic episode was seen in the vildagliptin group. The mean daily insulin dose was reduced by 1.9 U in the vildaglitpin *vs* increased by 2.4 U in the placebo group. Change in body weight did not differ between the groups (Table 2).

Another study examined the addition of vildagliptin to ongoing insulin (+ metformin) therapy in 449 patients over 24 wk[62]. The patients were treated with long-acting insulin (22%), intermediate acting insulin (17%) and premixed insulin (60%), with a mean daily insulin dose of 40 U. They had insufficient glycemic control (HbA1c 7.5%-11%; mean HbA1c 8.8%). It was found that HbA1c was reduced by vildagliptin by 0.8% and by placebo by 0.1% ($P < 0.001$). Fasting glucose was reduced in the vildagliptin group but not in the placebo group ($P = 0.050$). Hypoglycemia was reported in 8.4% of patients in the vildagliptin group and by 7.2% in the placebo group. The daily insulin dose was 41 U at baseline and slightly reduced in both groups with no difference. There was no change in body weight in any of the groups.

Sitagliptin

The first study examining the combination of sitagliptin with insulin therapy added the DPP-4 inhibitor *vs* placebo to ongoing insulin (+ metformin) treatment over 24 wk in 641 patients with poorly controlled type 2 diabetes

(HbA1c 7.5%-11%, mean HbA1c 8.6%)[63]. Seventy-four percent of the patients were treated with long-acting or intermediate-acting insulin and 26% were treated with premixed insulin. After the 24 wk study period, HbA1c was reduced by 0.6% by sitagliptin *vs* no change by placebo ($P < 0.001$). Fasting glucose was reduced in the sitagliptin group but not in the placebo group ($P < 0.001$). Similarly, postprandial glucose was reduced in the sitagliptin group (by -1.7 mmol/L, 95%CI: -2.2, -1.2) but not changed in the placebo group (0.3 mmol/L, 95%CI: -0.2-0.7) ($P < 0.001$). Hypoglycemia was observed in 16% of the patients on sitagliptin *vs* 8% of patients on placebo. Insulin dose was reduced by 0.1 U in the sitagliptin and by 1.6 U in the placebo group (baseline 44 U for long acting insulin and 67-74 U with premixed insulin). Body weight was reduced by 0.1 kg in both groups.

Another study compared adding sitagliptin to insulin therapy *vs* increasing the insulin dose in 140 patients on insulin therapy (+ oral agents) who had inadequate glycemic control (baseline HbA1c 7.5%-11%, mean HbA1c 9.2%). Patients were treated with insulin glargine alone (48%), insulin glargine together with rapid acting insulin (23%) or NPH insulin in combination with regular insulin (29%); mean daily insulin dose was 37 U. It was found that over the 24 wk study period, sitagliptin (mean insulin dose reduced by 2 U) reduced HbA1c by 0.6%, whereas increasing the insulin dose (by 10 U) reduced HbA1c by 0.2% ($P < 0.005$)[64]. Fasting glucose was reduced by approximately 1 mmol/L in both groups with no significant difference. Hypoglycemia occurred in 7 events per patient year in the sitagliptin group *vs* 14.3 events per patient year in the insulin group. Body weight was reduced by 0.7 kg in the sitagliptin group *vs* increased by 1.1 kg in the insulin group ($P < 0.05$).

A third study examined the add-on of sitagliptin ($n = 236$) *vs* placebo ($n = 232$) to patients who were treated with insulin (long-acting, intermediate-acting or premixed insulin) in combination with metformin over 6 mo. It was found that with the addition of sitagliptin, HbA1c was reduced by 0.8% (baseline 8.5%) *vs* no change in HbA1c after addition of placebo ($P < 0.001$). Relative to the placebo group, fasting glucose was reduced by 1.0 mmol/L and postprandial glucose by 2.0 mmol/L. Hypoglycemia was observed in 18% of patients in the sitagliptin group *vs* 8% in the placebo group[65].

Alogliptin

Alogliptin (two doses) or placebo was added to ongoing insulin therapy alone (40%) or with metformin in 390 patients with inadequate glycemic control (HbA1c $\geqslant$ 8.0%; baseline HbA1c 9.3%)[66]. The insulin treatment that was used was premixed insulin or insulin combinations (64%), as well as long-acting basal insulin alone (34%) or short-acting insulin alone (2%); mean daily insulin dose was 57 U. During the course of the 26 wk study, daily insulin dose was kept constant. Alogliptin reduced HbA1c by 0.6% (12.5 mg daily; $n = 131$) and 0.7% (25 mg daily; $n = 129$) *vs* a reduction by 0.1% in the placebo group ($n = 130$) ($P < 0.001$). Fasting glucose was reduced by aloglitin in the 25 mg group (by -0.6 ± 0.3 mmol/L *vs* the placebo group (0.3 ± 0.3 mmol/L; $P = 0.030$) but not changed in the 12.5 mg group. The number of patients reporting hypoglycemia was lower in the two alogliptin groups (21% and 20%, respectively) than in the placebo group (40%; $P < 0.001$). There was no difference in hypoglycemia events (24%-27% of patients reported hypoglycemic episodes in the three groups). Body weight increased by 0.6 kg (baseline 88 kg) in all groups.

Saxagliptin

Saxagliptin or placebo was added to ongoing insulin therapy (basal insulin or premixed insulin ± metformin) in 455 patients with inadequate glycemic control (HbA1c 7.5-11). During the course of the 24 wk study, daily insulin dose was kept constant[67]. Placebo-adjusted reduction in HbA1c by saxagliptin was 0.4% ($P < 0.001$). There was no difference in hypoglycemia events (18% with saxagliptin, 20% with placebo). Body weight was increased by 0.4 kg in the saxagliptin group and by 0.2 kg in the placebo group. An extension phase of this study showed sustained effects over 52 wk[68].

Linagliptin

Linagliptin or placebo was added to ongoing basal insulin therapy (± metformin and/or pioglitazone) in 1261 patients with inadequate glycemic control (HbA1c 7-10). During the study, daily insulin dose was kept constant during the first 24 wk but could thereafter be titrated according to fasting glucose[69]. After 24 wk, HbA1c was reduced by 0.6% (baseline 8.3%) by linagliptin and by 0.1% by placebo ($P < 0.001$). Placebo-adjusted reduction in fasting glucose with linagliptin was 0.6 mmol/L (95%CI: -0.9-0.4). During the following 28 wk, insulin dose was increased by 2.6 U in the linagliptin group and by 4.2 U in the placebo group but with no further change in HbA1c. There was no difference in hypoglycemia events (23% with linagliptin, 22% with placebo after 24 wk). Body weight was reduced by 0.3 kg in the linagliptin group and by 0.04 kg in the placebo group.

COMPARING CONTROLLED TRIALS COMBINING ADDING INCRETIN THERAPY TO INSULIN

As outlined above, the reduction in HbA1c, fasting and postprandial glucose, the lower risk of hypoglycemia, the prevention of weight gain and the potential disease modification are the main advantages of combining incretin therapy with insulin. Except for any direct evidence of a disease modifying effect of the combination, the controlled trials summarized above include information on these aspects and therefore it is of interest to compare their results in this regard (Tables 1 and 2).

HbA1c

The mean reduction in HbA1c in the controlled clinical studies adding incretin therapy to stable dose for 6 mo

was -0.8% ± 0.1% compared to -0.3% ± 0.1% when placebo was added ($P < 0.001$; Tables 1 and 2). There does not seem to be a difference between the two different strategies of incretin therapy since the placebo-adjusted reduction in HbA1c was -0.6% ± 0.2% for GLP-1 receptor agonists ($n = 4$ studies) *vs* -0.5% ± 0.1% for DPP-4 inhibitors ($n = 6$ studies).

Fasting glucose

Fasting glucose is also reduced by adding incretin therapy to stable dose of insulin. It was found to be reduced by -0.7 ± 0.1 mmol/L by the incretin therapy *vs* by -0.3 ± 0.1 mmol/L in the placebo groups ($P = 0.027$; Tables 1 and 2). There does not seem to be a difference between the two different strategies of incretin therapy since fasting glucose was reduced by 0.2 ± 0.2 mmol/L by GLP-1 receptor agonists ($n = 4$ studies) *vs* by -0.6 ± 0.2 mmol/L by DPP-4 inhibitors ($n = 5$ studies).

Postprandial glucose

A few studies also examined postprandial glucose after adding incretin therapy to a stable dose of insulin. They showed that postprandial glucose was markedly reduced when adding GLP-1 receptor agonists exenatide BID[55] and lixisenatide[58], whereas after adding the DPP-4 inhibitor sitagliptin, postprandial glucose was more modestly reduced[63].

Hypoglycemia

In the studies where incretin therapy has been added to insulin compared to ongoing insulin, the occurrence of hypoglycemia was not different between the incretin treatment and placebo in most studies (Tables 1 and 2). Since in most of these studies HbA1c is lower after addition of incretin therapy compared to placebo, an increased risk of hypoglycemia would be expected after incretin therapy. Since the opposite was the case, a conclusion is that incretin therapy will reduce the risk of hypoglycemia. This conclusion is also evident in the studies in which incretin therapy as an add-on to basal insulin was compared with the active comparator of either adding short-acting insulin[56,60] or increasing the insulin dose[64]. A reason for the low risk of hypoglycemia when adding incretin therapy to insulin therapy could be the reduced dose of insulin which often accompanies the combination. It may, however, also be caused be a sustainment of the glucagon counterregulation to hypoglycemia, as was recently demonstrated for the DPP-4 inhibitor vildagliptin when added to insulin; the sustained glucagon counterregulation assures a sufficient hepatic glucose response to prevent hypoglycemia[50].

Weight gain

Body weight was significantly reduced by -0.9 ± 0.5 kg by adding GLP-1 receptor agonists to ongoing insulin therapy compared to 0.4 ± 0.4 kg in the placebo groups, corresponding to a placebo-adjusted reduction by -1.4 ± 0.5 kg (Table 1). In contrast, DPP-4 inhibitors are weight neutral when added to insulin with a placebo-adjusted change in body weight of -0.2 ± 0.1 kg (Table 2).

OTHER STUDIES COMBINING INCRETIN THERAPY WITH INSULIN

Adding insulin to a GLP-1 receptor agonist

One study has examined the addition of basal insulin to patients who are treated with a GLP-1 receptor agonist with insufficient glycemic control. The study initially examined addition of liraglutide to patients failing glycemic control on metformin (± sulfonylurea; sulfonylurea was removed at start of study) ($n = 988$)[70]. After 12 wk, patients who were still uncontrolled (HbA1c > 7%) were randomized to continue metformin plus liraglutide or addition of insulin detemir to titrate fasting glucose to 4-6 mmol/L. After another 26 wk, HbA1c had been reduced by 0.5% by the combination of insulin detemir plus liraglutide, whereas those on liraglutide alone (all with metformin) had no further change in HbA1c ($P < 0.001$). FPG decreased more in the liraglutide + insulin group than in the liraglutide control group ($P < 0.001$). Hypoglycemia rates were 9.2% in the group given insulin detemir and liraglutide *vs* 1.3% with liraglutide alone. Body weight (baseline 96 kg) decreased by 3.5 kg by liraglutide during the initial period and then by 0.16 kg with insulin detemir and liraglutide *vs* by 0.95 kg with liraglutide without insulin detemir ($P = 0.03$).

Initial combination of incretin therapy with insulin

Liraglutide has been examined in a fixed ratio combination with insulin degludec in a randomized study in subjects with type 2 diabetes[71]. It was a large trial in which patients treated with metformin ± pioglitazone and inadequate glycemic control (baseline HbA1c 8.3%) were randomized to the addition of insulin degludec ($n = 414$), liraglutide ($n = 415$) or the combination of insulin degludec and liraglutide ($n = 834$). After 26 wk of treatment, HbA1c had been reduced by 1.4% with insulin degludec alone, 1.3% with liraglutide alone and 1.9% with insulin degludec in combination with liraglutide. Body weight had increased by 2.2 kg with insulin degludec alone, was reduced by 2.4 kg by liraglutide and was neutral with the combination. Cumulative episodes of hypoglycemia were 1.3 per patient in the insulin degludec group and reduced to 0.9 per patient in the combination group (0.1 in the liraglutide alone group).

Another study randomized 217 patients who had insufficient glycemic control on metformin ± sulfonylurea to receiving sitagliptin plus sulfonylurea or sitagliptin plus insulin detemir (all on metformin). After the 26 wk study period, sitagliptin had reduced HbA1c by 0.9% (mean baseline HbA1c 8.5%), whereas sitagliptin plus insulin detemir had decreased HbA1c by 1.4%. Hypoglycemia was reported in 1.3% of patients in the insulin detemir plus sitagliptin group and 1.7% in the sitagliptin alone group. Body weight decreased in both arms with a mean decrease of -1.7 kg in the sitagliptin control group *vs* -0.8

kg with sitagliptin plus insulin detemir group[72].

Uncontrolled studies combining incretin therapy with insulin

There are also a few uncontrolled studies of combining insulin therapy and incretin therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes which arrive at similar conclusions as the previously summarized controlled trials. One retrospective report showed that addition of exenatide BID to 188 insulin-treated patients resulted in a reduction in HbA1c by 0.66% (baseline 8.1%) after 6 mo with a persistent effect throughout two years; mean insulin dose could be reduced by 15% and only 4% of patients experienced hypoglycemia[73]. Furthermore, a study in obese patients with type 2 diabetes added exenatide BID (n = 21) or liraglutide (n = 40) to ongoing insulin therapy and showed a reduction in HbA1c in these patients by 1.0% (baseline 8.9%) after 7 mo. At the same time, the daily insulin dose was reduced from 91 U to 52 U and only a few hypoglycemia episodes were reported[74]. Moreover, a study in severely insulin resistant obese subjects treated with insulin U-500 (mean daily dose 192 U) received liraglutide for twelve weeks which reduced HbA1c by 1.4% (mean baseline HbA1c 8.5%) and at the same time the insulin dose was reduced by 28%. There were no reports of hypoglycemia and body weight was reduced by 5 kg (baseline body weight 136 kg)[75].

SAFETY OF THE COMBINATION OF INSULIN AND INCRETIN THERAPY

Incretin therapy has been shown to be safe with high tolerability and the only consistent adverse event is nausea and vomiting during the initial treatment period with GLP-1 receptor agonists[17-20,76]. Local injection site reactions (nodules and/or erythema) sometimes occur in association with treatment with GLP-1 receptor agonists, although such reactions are rare and commonly transient. Antibodies may be formed against GLP-1 receptor agonists; more commonly with exendin-4-based agonists (exenatide, lixisenatide) than after GLP-1-based agonists. In contrast, adverse events are rare during treatment with DPP-4 inhibitors, as evident from pooled analysis of clinical trials[77,78]. Recently, there has been a discussion about whether there is an increased risk of acute pancreatitis in incretin therapy. However, pooled or meta-analysis analyses have not demonstrated any increased risk when compared to placebo or other comparators[76-79]. Nevertheless, it is important to follow patients on GLP-1 receptor agonists in this regard and in patients with a history of acute pancreatitis, incretin therapy should not be given. Rodent data also suggest that GLP-1 receptor agonists may be associated with medullary thyroid carcinoma[80]. This has not, however, been observed in other animal species or humans, possibly because C-cells in humans have a lower expression of GLP-1 receptors than rodent C-cells[81].

Incretin therapy has also been discussed in relationship to cardiovascular safety and meta-analyses have shown that there is no detrimental effect of GLP-1 receptor agonists[82] or DPP-4 inhibitors[83]. Furthermore, several cardiovascular safety trials with incretin therapy are at present ongoing and two such recently published studies showed no increased risk for cardiovascular disease with saxagliptin[84] or alogliptin[85].

Also, insulin therapy is safe with the only concern being the increased risk of hypoglycemia and weight gain, expected adverse events through the glucose-lowering actions of the therapy. By combining incretin therapy and insulin, there is no additional concern for safety or tolerability, as evident from the studies reported in this review[55-69]. Hence, the number of adverse events is not higher in the incretin therapy + insulin treatment groups than in placebo groups in placebo-controlled clinical trials on GLP-1 receptor agonists or DPP-4 inhibitors as an add-on to insulin therapy, except the nausea and vomiting for the GLP-1 receptor agonists. This also includes recently discussed potential adverse events such as acute pancreatitis.

Some practical aspects need to be taken into account for incretin therapy. This includes the dose reduction of sitagliptin, vildagliptin, saxagliptin and alogliptin in patients with renal impairment due to their renal excretion. Furthermore, exenatide and liraglutide should be cautiously used in patients with renal impairment due to insufficient experience in this patient group. Furthermore, in patients with hepatic impairment, vildagliptin is not recommended. As for all new treatment combinations, however, the combination of incretin therapy with insulin also needs careful follow-up for examining potential adverse events which have not yet been observed.

SUMMARY AND CLINICAL POSITIONING OF INCRETIN PLUS INSULIN COMBINATION

The combination of insulin therapy with incretin therapy is attractive due to experience that this combination improves glycemia with a low risk of increasing risk for hypoglycemia and low risk of weight gain. The combination is therefore of particular value in patients on insulin therapy in whom HbA1c is not sufficiently reduced. In some patients, insufficient improvement of glycemia may be caused by clinical inertia with reluctance to increase the insulin dose due to fear of hypoglycemia or weight gain. Addition of incretin therapy with its lower risk of hypoglycemia and low risk of weight gain may therefore prevent the clinical inertia in these patients.

Incretin addition is also of value in patients who have insufficient reduction in HbA1c by intensified basal insulin therapy due to persistent high postprandial glycemia or frequent hypoglycemia. Incretin therapy offers advantages over addition of prandial insulin in these patients. Of particular importance is the prevention of hypoglycemia, since hypoglycemia is associated with both short-

term and long-term negative impact, not least on cardiovascular outcomes. The combination of incretin therapy with insulin may therefore provide advantages both in the short-term and by reducing long-term complications to the disease.

A main indication for the combination of incretin therapy and insulin is thus in patients who are treated with basal insulin (± metformin) in whom there is insufficient glycemic control and/or an unacceptable high rate of hypoglycemia and/or unacceptable weight gain. In patients with HbA1c levels which are not very high (< 7.5%), it is advisable to reduce the basal insulin dose when starting incretin therapy. The combination of incretin therapy with insulin is also an important treatment strategy in patients who are treated with metformin and incretin therapy in combination and in whom the glycemic control is insufficient, *i.e.*, to add basal insulin therapy to incretin therapy (+ metformin). The combination with incretin therapy and insulin may thus be introduced in either way, starting with incretin therapy or starting with insulin. It is also a possibility to start immediately with initial combination with incretin therapy and insulin in patients who are treated with metformin and who are in insufficient metabolic control. Such an early introduction of the combination may be a solution to the unmet need to start aggressive therapy early on during the disease development to achieve long-term control. Further studies are required to examine the long-term effects of this initial combination. One important set of trials would be studies comparing this treatment strategy with other three-drug combinations. This would be of interest to further analyze the potential for the combination of incretin plus insulin therapy (+ metformin). What would also be of value would be to compare different incretin therapies (different GLP-1 receptor agonists and different DPP-4 inhibitors) to elucidate potential differences in effects of the different compounds when combined with insulin. More mechanistic studies would also be of value, for example to examine the relationship between insulin therapy and incretin hormones for the regulation of hepatic glucose output, glucose utilization and islet function and, furthermore, to study impact of the combination therapy on gastric emptying and satiety. Moreover, it would also be of great value to analyze the cardiovascular outcome of this three-drug combination. This would be possible in sub-group analysis on the cardiovascular outcome trials of incretin treatment in which patients on insulin therapy have also been enrolled. Finally, studies directly aiming at examining the potential disease modifying effect of the combination of incretin therapy and insulin are important; these studies need to have a long duration and include mechanistic studies on islet function.

The combination of incretin therapy with insulin (± metformin) is thus a promising glucose-lowering strategy in type 2 diabetes, allowing a more intensified treatment at an earlier stage of the disease with a lower risk for hypoglycemia and weight gain when compared to other intensifying therapies.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author has consulted for AstraZeneca, BMS, Boehringer Ingelheim, SK, Merck, Novartis, Novo Nordisk, Sanofi-Aventis and Takeda, all of which produce GLP-1 receptor agonists or DPP-4 inhibitors.

REFERENCES

1 **Inzucchi SE**, Bergenstal RM, Buse JB, Diamant M, Ferrannini E, Nauck M, Peters AL, Tsapas A, Wender R, Matthews DR. Management of hyperglycaemia in type 2 diabetes: a patient-centered approach. Position statement of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD). *Diabetologia* 2012; **55**: 1577-1596 [PMID: 22526604 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-012-2534-0]

2 **Charbonnel B**, Schweizer A, Dejager S. Combination therapy with DPP-4 inhibitors and insulin in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus: what is the evidence? *Hosp Pract* (1995) 2013; **41**: 93-107 [PMID: 23680741 DOI: 10.3810/hp.2013.04.1059]

3 **Schweizer A**, Foley JE, Kothny W, Ahrén B. Clinical evidence and mechanistic basis for vildagliptin's effect in combination with insulin. *Vasc Health Risk Manag* 2013; **9**: 57-64 [PMID: 23431062 DOI: 10.2147/VHRM.S40972]

4 **Balena R**, Hensley IE, Miller S, Barnett AH. Combination therapy with GLP-1 receptor agonists and basal insulin: a systematic review of the literature. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2013; **15**: 485-502 [PMID: 23061470 DOI: 10.1111/dom.12025]

5 **Vora J**. Combining incretin-based therapies with insulin: realizing the potential in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2013; **36** Suppl 2: S226-S232 [PMID: 23882050 DOI: 10.2337/dcS13-2036]

6 **Berlie H**, Hurren KM, Pinelli NR. Glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists as add-on therapy to basal insulin in patients with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review. *Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes* 2012; **5**: 165-174 [PMID: 22826635 DOI: 10.2147/DMSO.S27528]

7 **Drucker DJ**, Nauck MA. The incretin system: glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors in type 2 diabetes. *Lancet* 2006; **368**: 1696-1705 [PMID: 17098089 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(06)69705-5]

8 **Ahrén B**, Carr RD, Deacon CF. Incretin hormone secretion over the day. *Vitam Horm* 2010; **84**: 203-220 [PMID: 21094901 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-381517-0.00007-2]

9 **Doyle ME**, Egan JM. Mechanisms of action of glucagon-like peptide 1 in the pancreas. *Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **113**: 546-593 [PMID: 17306374 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2006.11.007]

10 **Dunning BE**, Foley JE, Ahrén B. Alpha cell function in health and disease: influence of glucagon-like peptide-1. *Diabetologia* 2005; **48**: 1700-1713 [PMID: 16132964 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-005-1878-0]

11 **Ahrén B**. Beta- and alpha-cell dysfunction in subjects developing impaired glucose tolerance: outcome of a 12-year prospective study in postmenopausal Caucasian women. *Diabetes* 2009; **58**: 726-731 [PMID: 19095762 DOI: 10.2337/db08-1158]

12 **Nauck MA**, Niedereichholz U, Ettler R, Holst JJ, Orskov C, Ritzel R, Schmiegel WH. Glucagon-like peptide 1 inhibition of gastric emptying outweighs its insulinotropic effects in healthy humans. *Am J Physiol* 1997; **273**: E981-E988 [PMID: 9374685]

13 **Gutzwiller JP**, Drewe J, Göke B, Schmidt H, Rohrer B, Lareida J, Beglinger C. Glucagon-like peptide-1 promotes satiety and reduces food intake in patients with diabetes mellitus type 2. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **276**: R1541-R1544 [PMID: 10233049]

14 **Perfetti R**, Hui H. The role of GLP-1 in the life and death of pancreatic beta cells. *Horm Metab Res* 2004; **36**: 804-810 [PMID: 15655712 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-826167]

15 **Gutniak M**, Orskov C, Holst JJ, Ahrén B, Efendic S. Antidia-

betogenic effect of glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36)amide in normal subjects and patients with diabetes mellitus. *N Engl J Med* 1992; **326**: 1316-1322 [PMID: 1348845 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199205143262003]

16 **Deacon CF**, Nauck MA, Toft-Nielsen M, Pridal L, Willms B, Holst JJ. Both subcutaneously and intravenously administered glucagon-like peptide I are rapidly degraded from the NH2-terminus in type II diabetic patients and in healthy subjects. *Diabetes* 1995; **44**: 1126-1131 [PMID: 7657039 DOI: 10.2337/diab.44.9.1126]

17 **Ahrén B**. GLP-1 receptor agonists in the treatment of type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Manage* 2013; **3**: 401-413 [DOI: 10.2217/dmt.13.41]

18 **Ahrén B**. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors: clinical data and clinical implications. *Diabetes Care* 2007; **30**: 1344-1350 [PMID: 17337494]

19 **Ahrén B**. Incretin therapy of type 2 diabetes. GLP-1 receptor agonists and DPP-4 inhibitors. *Eur Diabet Nursing* 2013; **10**: 31-36 [DOI: 10.1002/edn.221]

20 **Meier JJ**. GLP-1 receptor agonists for individualized treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Nat Rev Endocrinol* 2012; **8**: 728-742 [PMID: 22945360 DOI: 10.1038/nrendo.2012.140]

21 **Deacon CF**. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors in the treatment of type 2 diabetes: a comparative review. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2011; **13**: 7-18 [PMID: 21114598 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2010.0136.x]

22 **Deacon CF**, Mannucci E, Ahrén B. Glycaemic efficacy of glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors as add-on therapy to metformin in subjects with type 2 diabetes-a review and meta analysis. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2012; **14**: 762-767 [PMID: 22471248 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.01603.x]

23 **Monnier L**, Lapinski H, Colette C. Contributions of fasting and postprandial plasma glucose increments to the overall diurnal hyperglycemia of type 2 diabetic patients: variations with increasing levels of HbA(1c). *Diabetes Care* 2003; **26**: 881-885 [PMID: 12610053]

24 **Riddle M**, Umpierrez G, DiGenio A, Zhou R, Rosenstock J. Contributions of basal and postprandial hyperglycemia over a wide range of A1C levels before and after treatment intensification in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2011; **34**: 2508-2514 [PMID: 22028279 DOI: 10.2337/dc11-0632]

25 **Edgerton DS**, Johnson KM, Cherrington AD. Current strategies for the inhibition of hepatic glucose production in type 2 diabetes. *Front Biosci* (Landmark Ed) 2009; **14**: 1169-1181 [PMID: 19273123]

26 **González-Sánchez JL**, Serrano-Ríos M. Molecular basis of insulin action. *Drug News Perspect* 2007; **20**: 527-531 [PMID: 18080040]

27 **Balas B**, Baig MR, Watson C, Dunning BE, Ligueros-Saylan M, Wang Y, He YL, Darland C, Holst JJ, Deacon CF, Cusi K, Mari A, Foley JE, DeFronzo RA. The dipeptidyl peptidase IV inhibitor vildagliptin suppresses endogenous glucose production and enhances islet function after single-dose administration in type 2 diabetic patients. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2007; **92**: 1249-1255 [PMID: 17244786]

28 **Seghieri M**, Rebelos E, Gastaldelli A, Astiarraga BD, Casolaro A, Barsotti E, Pocai A, Nauck M, Muscelli E, Ferrannini E. Direct effect of GLP-1 infusion on endogenous glucose production in humans. *Diabetologia* 2013; **56**: 156-161 [PMID: 23064290 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-2738-3]

29 **Linnebjerg H**, Park S, Kothare PA, Trautmann ME, Mace K, Fineman M, Wilding I, Nauck M, Horowitz M. Effect of exenatide on gastric emptying and relationship to postprandial glycemia in type 2 diabetes. *Regul Pept* 2008; **151**: 123-129 [PMID: 18675854 DOI: 10.1016/j.regpep.2008.07.003]

30 **Lorenz M**, Pfeiffer C, Steinsträsser A, Becker RH, Rütten H, Ruus P, Horowitz M. Effects of lixisenatide once daily on gastric emptying in type 2 diabetes--relationship to postprandial glycemia. *Regul Pept* 2013; **185**: 1-8 [PMID: 23665027 DOI: 10.1016/j.regpep.2013.04.001]

31 **Cervera A**, Wajcberg E, Sriwijitkamol A, Fernandez M, Zuo P, Triplitt C, Musi N, DeFronzo RA, Cersosimo E. Mechanism of action of exenatide to reduce postprandial hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2008; **294**: E846-E852 [PMID: 18334612 DOI: 10.1152/ajpendo.00030.2008]

32 **Nauck MA**, Kemmeries G, Holst JJ, Meier JJ. Rapid tachyphylaxis of the glucagon-like peptide 1-induced deceleration of gastric emptying in humans. *Diabetes* 2011; **60**: 1561-1565 [PMID: 21430088 DOI: 10.2337/db10-0474]

33 **Umapathysivam MM**, Lee MY, Jones KL, Annink CE, Cousins CE, Trahair LG, Rayner CK, Chapman MJ, Nauck MA, Horowitz M, Deane AM. Comparative effects of prolonged and intermittent stimulation of the glucagon-like Peptide 1 receptor on gastric emptying and glycemia. *Diabetes* 2014; **63**: 785-790 [PMID: 24089511 DOI: 10.2337/db13-0893]

34 **Drucker DJ**, Buse JB, Taylor K, Kendall DM, Trautmann M, Zhuang D, Porter L. Exenatide once weekly versus twice daily for the treatment of type 2 diabetes: a randomised, open-label, non-inferiority study. *Lancet* 2008; **372**: 1240-1250 [PMID: 18782641 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)61206-4]

35 **Jelsing J**, Vrang N, Hansen G, Raun K, Tang-Christensen M, Knudsen LB. Liraglutide: short-lived effect on gastric emptying -- long lasting effects on body weight. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2012; **14**: 531-538 [PMID: 22226053 DOI: 10.1111/J.1463-1326.2012.01557.x]

36 **Vella A**, Bock G, Giesler PD, Burton DB, Serra DB, Saylan ML, Deacon CF, Foley JE, Rizza RA, Camilleri M. The effect of dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibition on gastric volume, satiation and enteroendocrine secretion in type 2 diabetes: a double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover study. *Clin Endocrinol* (Oxf) 2008; **69**: 737-744 [PMID: 18331607 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2265.2008.03235.x]

37 **Ahrén B**, Landin-Olsson M, Jansson PA, Svensson M, Holmes D, Schweizer A. Inhibition of dipeptidyl peptidase-4 reduces glycemia, sustains insulin levels, and reduces glucagon levels in type 2 diabetes. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2004; **89**: 2078-2084 [PMID: 15126524]

38 **Wysham CH**. New perspectives in type 2 diabetes, cardiovascular risk, and treatment goals. *Postgrad Med* 2010; **122**: 52-60 [PMID: 20463414 DOI: 10.3810/pgm.2010.05.2142]

39 **Barnett AH**, Brice R, Hanif W, James J, Langerman H. Increasing awareness of hypoglycaemia in patients with type 2 diabetes treated with oral agents. *Curr Med Res Opin* 2013; **29**: 1503-1513 [PMID: 23952328]

40 **Ahrén B**. Avoiding hypoglycemia: a key to success for glucose-lowering therapy in type 2 diabetes. *Vasc Health Risk Manag* 2013; **9**: 155-163 [PMID: 23637538 DOI: 10.2147/VHRM.S33934]

41 **Desouza CV**, Bolli GB, Fonseca V. Hypoglycemia, diabetes, and cardiovascular events. *Diabetes Care* 2010; **33**: 1389-1394 [PMID: 20508232 DOI: 10.2337/dc09-282]

42 **Ferrannini E**, Fonseca V, Zinman B, Matthews D, Ahrén B, Byiers S, Shao Q, Dejager S. Fifty-two-week efficacy and safety of vildagliptin vs. glimepiride in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus inadequately controlled on metformin monotherapy. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2009; **11**: 157-166 [PMID: 19125777 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2008.00994.x]

43 **Charbonnel B**, Karasik A, Liu J, Wu M, Meininger G; Sitagliptin Study 020 Group. Efficacy and safety of the dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitor sitagliptin added to ongoing metformin therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with metformin alone. *Diabetes Care* 2006; **29**: 2638-2643 [PMID: 17130197]

44 **DeFronzo RA**, Hissa MN, Garber AJ, Luiz Gross J, Yuyan Duan R, Ravichandran S, Chen RS. The efficacy and safety of saxagliptin when added to metformin therapy in patients with inadequately controlled type 2 diabetes with metformin alone. *Diabetes Care* 2009; **32**: 1649-1655 [PMID: 19478198 DOI: 10.2337/dc08-1984]

45 **Davis JN**, Weigensberg MJ, Shaibi GQ, Crespo NC, Kelly

LA, Lane CJ, Goran MI. Influence of breastfeeding on obesity and type 2 diabetes risk factors in Latino youth with a family history of type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2007; **30**: 784-789 [PMID: 17277039]
46 **Taskinen MR**, Rosenstock J, Tamminen I, Kubiak R, Patel S, Dugi KA, Woerle HJ. Safety and efficacy of linagliptin as add-on therapy to metformin in patients with type 2 diabetes: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2011; **13**: 65-74 [PMID: 21114605 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2010.01326.x]
47 **Nauck M**, Frid A, Hermansen K, Shah NS, Tankova T, Mitha IH, Zdravkovic M, Düring M, Matthews DR. Efficacy and safety comparison of liraglutide, glimepiride, and placebo, all in combination with metformin, in type 2 diabetes: the LEAD (liraglutide effect and action in diabetes)-2 study. *Diabetes Care* 2009; **32**: 84-90 [PMID: 18931095 DOI: 10.2337/dc08-1355]
48 **Zetterberg H**, Andreasen N, Blennow K. Increased cerebrospinal fluid levels of transforming growth factor-beta1 in Alzheimer's disease. *Neurosci Lett* 2004; **367**: 194-196 [PMID: 15331151]
49 **Ahrén B**, Schweizer A, Dejager S, Dunning BE, Nilsson PM, Persson M, Foley JE. Vildagliptin enhances islet responsiveness to both hyper- and hypoglycemia in patients with type 2 diabetes. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **94**: 1236-1243 [PMID: 19174497 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2008-2152]
50 **Ahrén B**, Farngren J, Persson M, Schweizer A, Foley J. Improved glucagon dynamics during hypoglycaemia and food-re-challenge by DPP-4 inhibition by vildagliptin in insulin-treated patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetologia* 2013; **56** suppl 1: S51-S52
51 **Pontiroli AE**, Miele L, Morabito A. Increase of body weight during the first year of intensive insulin treatment in type 2 diabetes: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2011; **13**: 1008-1019 [PMID: 21645195 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2011.01433.x]
52 **Foley JE**, Jordan J. Weight neutrality with the DPP-4 inhibitor, vildagliptin: mechanistic basis and clinical experience. *Vasc Health Risk Manag* 2010; **6**: 541-548 [PMID: 20730070 DOI: 10.2147/VHRM.S10952]
53 **Wajchenberg BL**. beta-cell failure in diabetes and preservation by clinical treatment. *Endocr Rev* 2007; **28**: 187-218 [PMID: 17353295 DOI: 10.1210/10.1210/er.2006-0038]
54 **Cusi K**, Cunningham GR, Comstock JP. Safety and efficacy of normalizing fasting glucose with bedtime NPH insulin alone in NIDDM. *Diabetes Care* 1995; **18**: 843-851 [PMID: 7555511 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.18.6.843]
55 **Buse JB**, Bergenstal RM, Glass LC, Heilmann CR, Lewis MS, Kwan AY, Hoogwerf BJ, Rosenstock J. Use of twice-daily exenatide in Basal insulin-treated patients with type 2 diabetes: a randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2011; **154**: 103-112 [PMID: 21138825 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-154-201101180-00300]
56 **Wolffenbuttel BHR**, Nauck MA, Shaginian R, Malone J, Cleall S, deVries D, Hoogwerf B, MacConell L, Diamant M. Glycaemic control and hypoglycaemia in metformin-treated T2DM patients with exenatide BID vs. insulin lispro TID added to titrated insulin glargin QD: the 4B study. *Diabetologia* 2013; **56** suppl 1: S7
57 **Riddle MC**, Aronson R, Home P, Marre M, Niemoeller E, Miossec P, Ping L, Ye J, Rosenstock J. Adding once-daily lixisenatide for type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled by established basal insulin: a 24-week, randomized, placebo-controlled comparison (GetGoal-L). *Diabetes Care* 2013; **36**: 2489-2496 [PMID: 23628617 DOI: 10.2337/dc]
58 **Riddle MC**, Forst T, Aronson R, Sauque-Reyna L, Souhami E, Silvestre L, Ping L, Rosenstock J. Adding once-daily lixisenatide for type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with newly initiated and continuously titrated basal insulin glargine: a 24-week, randomized, placebo-controlled study (GetGoal-Duo 1). *Diabetes Care* 2013; **36**: 2497-2503 [PMID: 23564915 DOI: 10.2337/dc12-2462]
59 **Seino Y**, Min KW, Niemoeller E, Takami A. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of the once-daily GLP-1 receptor agonist lixisenatide in Asian patients with type 2 diabetes insufficiently controlled on basal insulin with or without a sulfonylurea (GetGoal-L-Asia). *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2012; **14**: 910-917 [PMID: 22564709 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326]
60 **Rosenstock J**, Ahrén B, Chow F, Fonseca V, Gross J, Ratner R, Johnson S, Stewart M, Yang F, Leiter L. Once-weekly GLP-1 receptor agonist albiglutide vs. titrated prandial lispro added on to titrated basal insulin glargine in type 2 diabetes unconctrolled on glargine plus oral agents: similar glycemic control with weight loss and less hypoglycemia. *Diabetes* 2012; **61**: A15-A16
61 **Fonseca V**, Schweizer A, Albrecht D, Baron MA, Chang I, Dejager S. Addition of vildagliptin to insulin improves glycaemic control in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetologia* 2007; **50**: 1148-1155 [PMID: 17387446 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-007-0633-0]
62 **Teichman RF**, Goldstein MD. Filling the void of well-trained occupational medicine physicians: a challenge for the 1990s. *J Occup Med* 1990; **32**: 124-126 [PMID: 2303921 DOI: 10.1111/dom]
63 **Vilsbøll T**, Rosenstock J, Yki-Järvinen H, Cefalu WT, Chen Y, Luo E, Musser B, Andryuk PJ, Ling Y, Kaufman KD, Amatruda JM, Engel SS, Katz L. Efficacy and safety of sitagliptin when added to insulin therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2010; **12**: 167-177 [PMID: 20092585 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2009.01173.x]
64 **Hong ES**, Khang AR, Yoon JW, Kang SM, Choi SH, Park KS, Jang HC, Shin H, Walford GA, Lim S. Comparison between sitagliptin as add-on therapy to insulin and insulin dose-increase therapy in uncontrolled Korean type 2 diabetes: CSI study. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2012; **14**: 795-802 [PMID: 22443183 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-13262012.01600.x]
65 **Singh DP**, Srivastava A, Sinha K. Study of efficacy and safety of sitagliptin in patients with type 2 diabetes when added to insulin therapy alone or with metformin. *Diabetes* 2013; **62** Suppl 1: A373
66 **Rosenstock J**, Rendell MS, Gross JL, Fleck PR, Wilson CA, Mekki Q. Alogliptin added to insulin therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes reduces HbA(1C) without causing weight gain or increased hypoglycaemia. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2009; **11**: 1145-1152 [PMID: 19758359 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2009.01124.x]
67 **Barnett AH**, Charbonnel B, Donovan M, Fleming D, Chen R. Effect of saxagliptin as add-on therapy in patients with poorly controlled type 2 diabetes on insulin alone or insulin combined with metformin. *Curr Med Res Opin* 2012; **28**: 513-523 [PMID: 22313154 DOI: 10.1185/03007995.2012.665046]
68 **Barnett AH**, Charbonnel B, Li J, Donovan M, Fleming D, Iqbal N. Saxagliptin add-on therapy to insulin with or without metformin for type 2 diabetes mellitus: 52-week safety and efficacy. *Clin Drug Investig* 2013; **33**: 707-717 [PMID: 23949898 DOI: 10.1007/s40261-013-0107-8]
69 **Yki-Järvinen H**, Rosenstock J, Durán-Garcia S, Pinnetti S, Bhattacharya S, Thiemann S, Patel S, Woerle HJ. Effects of adding linagliptin to basal insulin regimen for inadequately controlled type 2 diabetes: a ≥ 52-week randomized, double-blind study. *Diabetes Care* 2013; **36**: 3875-3881 [PMID: 24062327]
70 **DeVries JH**, Bain SC, Rodbard HW, Seufert J, D'Alessio D, Thomsen AB, Zychma M, Rosenstock J. Sequential intensification of metformin treatment in type 2 diabetes with liraglutide followed by randomized addition of basal insulin prompted by A1C targets. *Diabetes Care* 2012; **35**: 1446-1454 [PMID: 22584132 DOI: 10.2337/dc11-1928]
71 **Buse JB**, Gough SCL, Woo V, Rodbad HW, Linjawi S, Poulsen P, Damgaard LH, Bode BW. IDegLira, a novel fixed ratio combination of insulin degludec and liraglutide, is efficacious and safe in subjects with type 2 diabetes: a large, ran-

domized phase 3 trial. *Diabetes* 2013; **62**: A16
72 **Hollander P**, Raslova K, Skjøth TV, Råstam J, Liutkus JF. Efficacy and safety of insulin detemir once daily in combination with sitagliptin and metformin: the TRANSITION randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2011; **13**: 268-275 [PMID: 21205123 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2010.01351.x]
73 **Yoon NM**, Cavaghan MK, Brunelle RL, Roach P. Exenatide added to insulin therapy: a retrospective review of clinical practice over two years in an academic endocrinology outpatient setting. *Clin Ther* 2009; **31**: 1511-1523 [PMID: 19695400 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinther.2009.07.021]
74 **Lind M**, Jendle J, Torffvit O, Lager I. Glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) analogue combined with insulin reduces HbA1c and weight with low risk of hypoglycemia and high treatment satisfaction. *Prim Care Diabetes* 2012; **6**: 41-46 [PMID: 22015237 DOI: 10.1016/j.pcd.2011.09.002]
75 **Lane W**, Weinrib S, Rappaport J. The effect of liraglutide added to U-500 insulin in patients with type 2 diabetes and high insulin requirements. *Diabetes Technol Ther* 2011; **13**: 592-595 [PMID: 21406014 DOI: 10.1089/dia.2010.0221]
76 **Funch D**, Gydesen H, Tornøe K, Major-Pedersen A, Chan KA. A prospective, claims-based assessment of the risk of pancreatitis and pancreatic cancer with liraglutide compared to other antidiabetic drugs. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2014; **16**: 273-275 [PMID: 24199745 DOI: 10.1111/dom.12230]
77 **Schweizer A**, Dejager S, Foley JE, Couturier A, Ligueros-Saylan M, Kothny W. Assessing the cardio-cerebrovascular safety of vildagliptin: meta-analysis of adjudicated events from a large Phase III type 2 diabetes population. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2010; **12**: 485-494 [PMID: 20518804 DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1326.2010.01215.x]
78 **Williams-Herman D**, Engel SS, Round E, Johnson J, Golm GT, Guo H, Musser BJ, Davies MJ, Kaufman KD, Goldstein BJ. Safety and tolerability of sitagliptin in clinical studies: a pooled analysis of data from 10,246 patients with type 2 diabetes. *BMC Endocr Disord* 2010; **10**: 7 [PMID: 20412573 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6823-10.7]
79 **Alves C**, Batel-Marques F, Macedo AF. A meta-analysis of serious adverse events reported with exenatide and liraglutide: acute pancreatitis and cancer. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 2012; **98**: 271-284 [PMID: 23010561 DOI: 10.1016/j.diabres.2012.09.008]
80 **Bjerre Knudsen L**, Madsen LW, Andersen S, Almholt K, de Boer AS, Drucker DJ, Gotfredsen C, Egerod FL, Hegelund AC, Jacobsen H, Jacobsen SD, Moses AC, Mølck AM, Nielsen HS, Nowak J, Solberg H, Thi TD, Zdravkovic M, Moerch U. Glucagon-like Peptide-1 receptor agonists activate rodent thyroid C-cells causing calcitonin release and C-cell proliferation. *Endocrinology* 2010; **151**: 1473-1486 [PMID: 20203154 DOI: 10.1210/en.2009-1272]
81 **Drucker DJ**, Sherman SI, Bergenstal RM, Buse JB. The safety of incretin-based therapies--review of the scientific evidence. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2011; **96**: 2027-2031 [PMID: 21734003 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2011-0599]
82 **Giulianelli R**, Albanesi L, Attisani F, Gentile BC, Vincenti G, Pisanti F, Shestani T, Mavilla L, Granata D, Schettini M. Comparative randomized study on the efficaciousness of endoscopic bipolar prostate resection versus monopolar resection technique. 3 year follow-up. *Arch Ital Urol Androl* 2013; **85**: 86-91 [PMID: 23820656 DOI: 10.1111/dom.12175]
83 **Monami M**, Ahrén B, Dicembrini I, Mannucci E. Dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors and cardiovascular risk: a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. *Diabetes Obes Metab* 2013; **15**: 112-120 [PMID: 22925682 DOI: 10.1111/dom.12000]
84 **Scirica BM**, Bhatt DL, Braunwald E, Steg PG, Davidson J, Hirshberg B, Ohman P, Frederich R, Wiviott SD, Hoffman EB, Cavender MA, Udell JA, Desai NR, Mosenzon O, McGuire DK, Ray KK, Leiter LA, Raz I. Saxagliptin and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 1317-1326 [PMID: 23992601 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa]
85 **White WB**, Cannon CP, Heller SR, Nissen SE, Bergenstal RM, Bakris GL, Perez AT, Fleck PR, Mehta CR, Kupfer S, Wilson C, Cushman WC, Zannad F. Alogliptin after acute coronary syndrome in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 1327-1335 [PMID: 23992602 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1305889]

P- Reviewers: Chang ST, Faerch K, Liu SH, Rateb M
S- Editor: Cui XM **L- Editor**: Roemmele A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.52

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 52-58
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Hepatitis C virus infection and insulin resistance

Sandip K Bose, Ranjit Ray

Sandip K Bose, Ranjit Ray, Department of Molecular Microbiology and Immunology, Saint Louis University, St. Louis, MO 63104, United States
Ranjit Ray, Division of Infectious Diseases, Allergy and Immunology, Edward A Doisy Research Center, St. Louis, MO 63104, United States
Ranjit Ray, Department of Internal Medicine, Saint Louis University, St. Louis, MO 63104, United States
Author contributions: Bose SK performed literature search and wrote the initial draft of the paper; Ray R edited the paper and made additional changes as needed.
Supported by The National Institutes of Health, NO. DK080812
Correspondence to: Ranjit Ray, PhD, Division of Infectious Diseases, Allergy and Immunology, Edward A Doisy Research Center, 1100 S. Grand Blvd., 8th Floor, St. Louis, MO 63104, United States. rayr@slu.edu
Telephone: +1-314- 9779034 Fax: +1-314-7713816
Received: November 9, 2013 Revised: December 20, 2013
Accepted: January 13, 2014
Published online: February 15, 2014

Abstract

Approximately 170 million people worldwide are chronically infected with hepatitis C virus (HCV). Chronic HCV infection is the leading cause for the development of liver fibrosis, cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) and is the primary cause for liver transplantation in the western world. Insulin resistance is one of the pathological features in patients with HCV infection and often leads to development of type Ⅱ diabetes. Insulin resistance plays an important role in the development of various complications associated with HCV infection. Recent evidence indicates that HCV associated insulin resistance may result in hepatic fibrosis, steatosis, HCC and resistance to anti-viral treatment. Thus, HCV associated insulin resistance is a therapeutic target at any stage of HCV infection. HCV modulates normal cellular gene expression and interferes with the insulin signaling pathway. Various mechanisms have been proposed in regard to HCV mediated insulin resistance, involving up regulation of inflammatory cytokines, like tumor necrosis factor-α, phosphorylation of insulin-receptor substrate-1, Akt, up-regulation of gluconeogenic genes like glucose 6 phosphatase, phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase 2, and accumulation of lipid droplets. In this review, we summarize the available information on how HCV infection interferes with insulin signaling pathways resulting in insulin resistance.

Key words: Hepatitis C virus; Insulin resistance; Insulin receptor substrate 1; Protein kinase B; mammalian target of rapamycin/S6K1; Suppressor of cytokine signaling 3; Glucose transporter-4; Lipid metabolism; Anti-viral therapy

Core tip: Insulin resistance is one of the pathological features in patients with hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection and often leads to development of type Ⅱ diabetes. Recent evidence indicates that HCV associated insulin resistance may result in hepatic fibrosis, steatosis, hepatocellular carcinoma and resistance to anti-viral treatment. In this review, we summarize the available information on how HCV infection interferes with insulin signaling pathways.

Bose SK, Ray R. Hepatitis C virus infection and insulin resistance. *World J Diabetes* 2014; 5(1): 52-58 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/full/v5/i1/52.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.52

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis C virus (HCV) contains a positive sense single stranded RNA genome and belongs to the family Flaviviridae and genus Hepacivirus[1]. HCV genome, 9.6 kb in length, is composed of a 5' non-translated region (NTR), a long open reading frame (ORF) encoding a polyprotein and a 3' NTR. The ORF encodes a polyprotein of about 3000 amino acids that is translated *via* an internal ribosome entry site at the 5' NTR. The polyprotein is then cleaved by both cellular and viral proteases into at least

10 different proteins[1]. These include three structural proteins namely, core and two envelope glycoproteins (E1 and E2). In addition, a protein called F or ARFP can be produced from a frame-shift of the core protein[2]. An ion channel protein p7 is formed by cleavage of E2[3]. Non structural proteins of HCV include NS2, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, NS5A, and NS5B.

The primary host cell for HCV is hepatocytes but replication may also occur in other cell types, such as peripheral blood mononuclear cells, as well as in B and T cell lines[4,5]. HCV is a major cause of acute and chronic liver disease worldwide. More than 170 million people are currently infected with HCV[6]. Currently HCV vaccine is not available. Acute infection is usually asymptomatic, making early diagnosis difficult. Approximately 70% of acutely infected individuals fail to clear the virus and become chronically infected[7]. Chronic HCV infection is the leading cause for the development of liver fibrosis, cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), and is the primary cause for liver transplantation in the western world. The sustained antiviral response rate in treatment of chronic HCV infection with interferon (IFN)-α with ribavirin is limited (about 30%-40%)[8,9]. Boceprevir and telaprevir protease inhibitors, have been shown to exhibit significantly higher rates of sustained virologic response (SVR) against HCV genotype 1 (about 65%-75%) as compared with peginterferon-ribavirin alone[10,11]. However, use of these antiviral agents display higher incidence of adverse events, such as rash, gastrointestinal disorders, and anemia.

Insulin resistance plays an important role in the development of various complications associated with HCV infection. Recent evidence indicates that HCV associated insulin resistance may result in hepatic fibrosis, steatosis, HCC and resistance to anti-viral treatment[12]. Thus, HCV associated insulin resistance is a therapeutic target at any stage of HCV infection. HCV modulates normal cellular gene expression and interferes with the insulin signaling pathway. The aim of this review is to summarize the currently available information on how chronic HCV infection interferes with insulin signaling pathways resulting in insulin resistance.

GLUCOSE UPTAKE AND INSULIN RESISTANCE

Glucose is a key metabolite essential for the production of energy (mostly ATP) which is required by cells. There are several mechanisms underlying increased glucose production. These include production of free glucose by increased glycogenolysis in the liver, increased gluconeogenesis, activation of forkhead box transcription factor (FoxO1) and improper insulin-glucagon hormonal balance, which stimulates increased glucose production[13]. Several factors contribute to elevated gluconeogenesis in diabetes, namely (1) increased supply of glucogenic precursors to the liver (glycerol, amino acids, free fatty acids), (2) increased lipid content, (3) increased cytokines and adipokines, and (4) decreased insulin receptor (IR) signaling in hepatocytes[13]. Glucose uptake into cells is regulated by the action of specific hormones, namely insulin and glucagon. Insulin is a peptide hormone secreted by the β-cells of the pancreatic islets of langerhans and maintains normal blood glucose levels by facilitating cellular glucose uptake, regulating carbohydrate, lipid and protein metabolism and promoting cell division and growth through its mitogenic effects[14]. The ability of insulin to stimulate glucose uptake into tissues is central to the maintenance of whole-body glucose homeostasis[15]. Type Ⅱ diabetes mellitus (T2DM), occurs when the production of insulin is not sufficient to overcome a difficulty the body has in properly using insulin. This difficulty is called insulin resistance, resulting in increased glucose levels. Both forms of diabetes can pose an increased risk of major lifelong complications. In the case of insulin resistance, this includes a fivefold increased risk of coronary vascular disease, diabetic retinopathy and neuropathy[16-19]. Fatty liver is relatively common in overweight and obese persons with T2DM and is an aspect of body composition related to severity of insulin resistance, dyslipidemia, and inflammatory markers[20].

Glucose transporter-4 (GLUT-4) was shown to be the major isoform responsible for enhanced glucose uptake into muscle and adipose tissues following the secretion of insulin into the bloodstream[21,22]. The process of glucose uptake by cells requires a series of events to take place in a timely manner. It involves the binding of insulin to the IR resulting in subsequent phosphorylation and activation of IR substrate 1 and 2 (IRS-1/IRS-2), central molecules of the insulin signaling cascade[23,24]. This in turn activates protein kinase B (AKT) by phosphorylation of Ser^{473} and Thr^{308} residues. Activated AKT causes the translocation of GLUT-4 from intracellular compartments to the cell surface where it is required for glucose uptake[25]. Any change in the signaling is likely to induce insulin resistance which is associated with a number of pathophysiological changes including glucose intolerance, obesity, dyslipidemia and hypertension. Insulin resistance is a physiological condition in which cells fail to respond to the normal actions of the hormone insulin. The body produces insulin, but the cells in the body become resistant to insulin and are unable to use it as effectively, resulting in an attenuated biological response, leading to hyperglycemia[26]. Accumulation of ectopic lipid metabolites, activation of the unfolded protein response pathway, and innate immune pathways have all been implicated in the pathogenesis of insulin resistance[27]. During the course of insulin resistance several inflammatory cytokines and lipid metabolites, like free fatty acids, interrupt with the normal insulin signaling and promote T2DM.

CHRONIC HCV INFECTION AND INSULIN RESISTANCE

Epidemiological studies suggest that patients with chron-

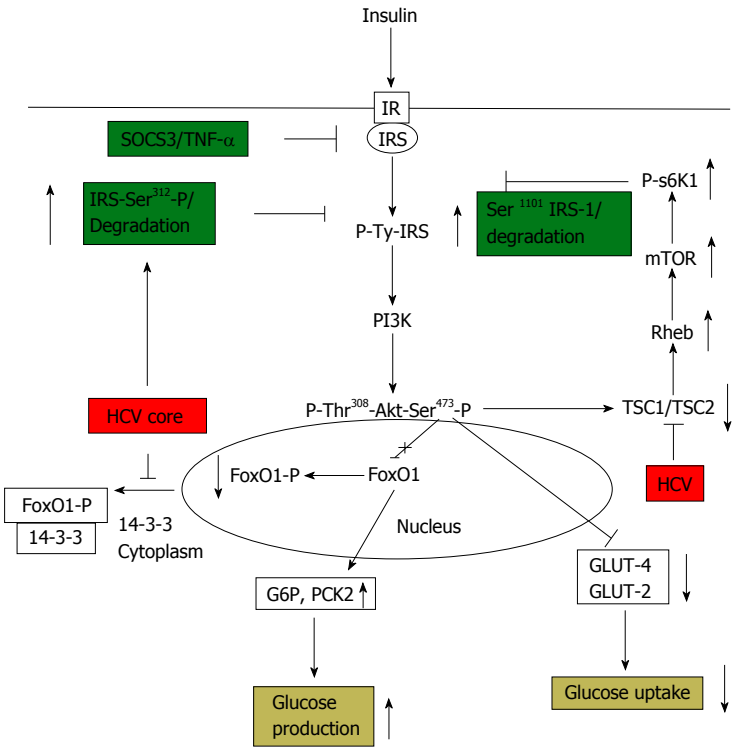


Figure 1 Schematic showing the interference of Hepatitis C virus in the insulin signaling pathway. Hepatitis C virus (HCV) core protein is known to up regulate Ser^{312} phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate (IRS)-1 leading to degradation of IRS-1, the key molecule involved in propagation of insulin signal downstream from the insulin receptor (IR). HCV infection is also known to down regulate TSC1/TSC2 complex, resulting in subsequent upregulation of mTOR/S6K1 which leads to Ser^{1101} phosphorylation of IRS-1 and its subsequent degradation. A role of HCV mediated upregulation of SOCS3 and tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) has also been proposed which leads to degradation and blocking of IRS-1 function. HCV also upregulates glucose 6 phosphatase (G6P), phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase 2 (PCK2) leading to increased glucose production, and down regulates glucose transporter (GLUT)-4, GLUT-2, leading to decreased glucose uptake by hepatocytes. Overall, these alterations lead to insulin resistance. mTOR: Mammalian target of rapamycin.

ic HCV infection have a significantly increased prevalence of T2DM as compared to hepatitis B virus infected patients[28-30]. Both insulin resistance and diabetes can adversely affect the course of chronic hepatitis C (CHC), leading to enhanced steatohepatitis and liver fibrosis[30-32]. Insulin resistance, associated with type 2 diabetes, can promote fatty liver, and excessive hepatic accumulation of fat may promote insulin resistance and therefore contribute to the pathogenesis of the metabolic syndrome[33]. Insulin resistance is a critical component of type 2 diabetes mellitus pathogenesis. Several mechanisms are likely to be involved in the pathogenesis of HCV-related insulin resistance[34]. Several cellular lesions have been associated with insulin resistance, but the precise mechanism by which HCV induces insulin resistance remains elusive with numerous viewpoints and opinions[30].

Impairment of IRS-1 and IRS-2 expression has been observed in the liver of patients with chronic HCV infection, as well as in HCV core transgenic mice, and from *in vitro* cell culture system[35-38]. HCV mediates dysfunction of the insulin signaling pathways *via* several distinct mechanisms, such as upregulating the expression of suppressors of cytokine signaling 3 expression[35], down regulation of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors gamma (PPARγ)[36], activation of mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR)/S6K1 pathway[38], and increased tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) secretion[39].

MODULATION OF IR SUBSTRATE BY HCV

HCV modulates insulin signaling and IRS-1 *via* multiple mechanisms which have been presented in Figure 1. Ser/Thr phosphorylation of IRS-1 inhibits its association with the IR, which in turn inhibits tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS-1, required for its activation, and promotes degradation. Upregulation of serine phosphorylation of IRS-1 is a key negative feedback mechanism under physiological conditions to prevent the action of insulin. In an insulin-resistant state, an imbalance occurs between positive IRS-1 Tyr-phosphorylation and negative Ser-phosphorylation of IRS-1[40]. HCV core protein expression in hepatocytes upregulates Ser^{312} phosphorylation status of IRS-1 and modulates downstream Akt activity by inhibiting Thr^{308} phosphorylation[37]. Ser^{312} and Ser^{1101} phosphorylation of IRS-1 inhibits its association with the IR and stimulates degradation. HCV core protein induces insulin resistance by increasing Ser^{312} and Ser^{1101} phosphorylation, marking its for degradation *via* the activated mTOR/S6K1 pathway[38], and subsequently blocking Tyr-phosphorylation of IRS-1 and Thr^{308} phosphorylation of Akt for the inhibition of glucose uptake. Activation of mTOR signaling also plays a key role in modulating IRS-1 activity. HCV genotype 2a infection significantly down-regulates the expression of TSC1/TSC2, which in turn results in activation of downstream mTOR and S6K1[38]. Phosphorylation of IRS-1 at Ser^{1101} *via* the mTOR-S6K1 pathway may release IRS-1 from intracellular complexes, thereby enabling its degradation[41]. HCV significantly increases Ser^{1101} phosphorylation of IRS-1, which enables its degradation[38].

A decrease in expression of IRS-1 and IRS-2, in patients with HCV infection has also been reported[35]. Down-regulation of IRS-1 and IRS-2 was also seen in HCV core-transgenic mice livers and HCV core-transfected human hepatoma cells[35]. HCV core up-regulated suppressor of cytokine signaling 3 (SOCS3) and caused ubiquitination of IRS-1 and IRS-2. HCV core-induced

down-regulation of IRS-1 and IRS-2 was not seen in *SOCS3(-/-)* mouse embryonic fibroblast cells, indicating the important role played by SOCS3 in mediating down regulation of IRS-1[35]. There have been reports that HCV genotypes might play an important role in deciding the pathway by which it impairs insulin signaling. It has been shown that the core protein of HCV genotype 3a promoted IRS-1 degradation through the downregulation of PPARγ and by upregulating the SOCS7, the core protein of genotype 1b activated the mTOR[36].

TNF-α, released in an excess may promote phosphorylation of serine residues of IRS-1 eventually leading to the downregulation of downstream insulin signaling molecule Akt. HCV core protein increases the expression level of TNF-α and promotes insulin resistance[42].

IMPAIRED LIPID AND GLUCOSE METABOLISM BY HCV

Insulin resistance is strongly influenced by abnormalities in lipid metabolism. Any dysfunction of the lipid metabolism triggers lipotoxicity through the production of free fatty acids thereby promoting insulin resistance[43]. HCV core protein down-regulates microsomal triglyceride transfer protein, an enzyme that mediates lipid translocation to the endoplasmic reticulum membrane and decreases the assembly of very low density lipoproteins[44]. It has been observed that HCV promotes fatty acid synthesis by the upregulation of lipogenic gene sterol regulatory element binding protein 1c which promotes the transcriptional activation of other lipogenic genes like acetyl CoA carboxylase, ATP citrate lyase, hydroxymethylglutaryl CoA reductase[45].

HCV infection promotes the expression of gluconeogenic genes namely, glucose 6 phosphatase (G6P) and phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase 2 (PCK2) resulting in increased glucose production and enhanced insulin resistance[46,38]. HCV also down regulates the expression of GLUT4, which is necessary for uptake of glucose. This results in a decreased glucose uptake and increased plasma glucose, leading to development of insulin resistance[38].

A schematic showing how HCV interferes with insulin signaling pathway, leading to insulin resistance is presented in (Figure 1). HCV modulates functioning of IRS-1 *via* multiple mechanisms, including up regulation of Ser^{312} or Ser^{1101} phosphorylation which leads to degradation of IRS-1. HCV also upregulates SOCS3 and down regulates TSC1/TSC2 leading to blocking of insulin signaling. HCV infection leads to increased gluconeogenesis *via* up regulation of G6P and PCK2. GLUT-4, and GLUT-2 expression is also down regulated by HCV leading to decreased glucose uptake. Overall, all these alterations by HCV leads to development of insulin resistance.

INSULIN RESISTANCE AND LIVER DISEASE PROGRESSION

The metabolic syndrome is a constellation of problems that includes insulin resistance, obesity, hypertension, and hyperlipidemia[47]. Increasingly, components of the metabolic syndrome are being linked to various forms of cancer, including the risk of developing HCC. IR is induced by HCV-4 irrespective of severity of liver disease. IR starts early in infection and facilitates progression of hepatic fibrosis and HCC development[47]. HCC patients showed higher IR frequency, and moderate to high viral load associated with high HOMA-IR in CHC and HCC[47]. Insulin resistance associates with a higher risk of HCC in cirrhotic HIV/HCV-co-infected patients also[48]. There are many causes of HCC, and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NASH) is emerging as a leading risk factor owing to the epidemic of obesity and T2DM. The mechanisms leading to HCC in obesity and T2DM likely involve interactions between several signaling pathways, many of which are modulated by HCV infection, and also include oxidative stress, inflammation, oncogenes, adiponectins, and insulin resistance associated with visceral adiposity and diabetes[49].

Insulin resistance and subsequent hyperinsulinemia are highly associated with fatty liver disease and is an important risk factor for the progression of fibrosis in CHC[50,51]. From metabolic aspect, HCV infection resembles NASH in numerous features, such as the presence of steatosis, serum dyslipidemia, and oxidative stress in the liver[52]. On the other hand, there are noticeable differences between hepatitis C and NASH, in the fact that HCV modulates cellular gene expression and intracellular signal transduction pathways, while such details have not been noted for NASH. HCV core protein expression leads to the development of progressive hepatic steatosis and HCC in transgenic mice[53]. Hepatic steatosis is known to occur at a high rate (40%-86%) in chronic HCV patients, and a close relationship between steatosis and intrahepatic core protein expression has been noted[54]. Insulin resistance is a prominent mechanism linking steatosis and fibrogenesis although this link is complex and not properly understood.

CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS OF HCV-MEDIATED INSULIN RESISTANCE

Several epidemiological, clinical and experimental data show that HCV plays a direct role in perturbing glucose metabolism, leading to both insulin resistance and diabetes[28-30]. Curing HCV results in the amelioration of insulin resistance and decreased incidence of diabetes after the end of therapy[55,56]. In the only trial that used the antidiabetic metformin[57], only a marginal, nonsignificant increase of the SVR rate was observed, despite an increased virological response after 4 wk of triple therapy. The data reported in a study using different schedules containing the antiglycaemic PPAR-γ agonist pioglitazone[58] are discouraging. Overall, the administration of insulin sensitizers together with the standard of care has not only failed to improve the virological response to therapy, but has also fallen short of providing much use-

ful insight into the mechanisms linking reduced response to insulin resistance[59]. Early sulfonylureas although useful in lowering blood glucose level, were associated with significant off-target effects, and the biguanide phenformin was discontinued due to adverse events[60]. Although metformin is in the same drug class, it has a better safety profile and is now recommended as first-line treatment of diabetes during HCV infection.

THERAPEUTIC APPROACHES AND FUTURE GOALS

Treatment for HCV induced insulin resistance is highly linked with anti-viral treatment. Treatment of chronic HCV infection has 2 goals. The first is to achieve SVR (*i.e.*, sustained eradication of HCV, which is defined as the persistent absence of HCV RNA in serum 6 mo or more after completing antiviral treatment). The second goal is to prevent progression to cirrhosis, HCC, and decompensated liver disease requiring liver transplantation. The treatment of HCV has evolved over the years. Current treatment options include combination therapy consisting of ribavirin and pegylated IFN. Protease inhibitors are emerging as a third feature of combination therapy. The sustained antiviral response rate in treatment of chronic HCV infection with IFN-α and ribavirin is limited (about 30%-40%)[8,9]. Boceprevir and telaprevir protease inhibitors have been shown to exhibit significantly higher rates of SVR against HCV genotype 1 (65%-75%) as compared with peginterferon-ribavirin alone[10,11]. More recently, sofosbuvir has also been used for treatment along with ribavirin, with significant increased SVR[61]. However, use of these antiviral agents display higher incidence of adverse events, such as rash, gastrointestinal disorders, and anemia. Thus, development of therapies with less side effects is desirable.

The prevalence of HCV antibodies in the type 2 diabetic population ranges between 1.78% and 12.1%[62]. Several cross-sectional studies have found a higher prevalence of HCV antibodies in type 2 diabetic patients than expected in the general population[62,63]. Early phase and total insulin secretion are determined using oral glucose tolerance testing (OGTT), Insulin sensitivity was measured directly by steady-state plasma glucose concentration during insulin suppression test. Fasting plasma glucose $\geqslant$ 126 mg/dL or 2-h plasma glucose > 200 mg/dL during OGTT are generally used as criteria for diagnosis of diabetes[64]. Well controlled DM was defined when the HbA1c level was < 7%. Agents used in diabetic therapy include the following: sulfonylureas, biguanides, alpha-glucosidase inhibitors, thiazolidinediones, Meglitinide derivatives *etc*[60]. Although effective in reducing blood glucose levels, early sulfonylureas were associated with significant off-target effects, and the biguanide phenformin was discontinued due to adverse events[60]. Although metformin is in the same drug class, it has a better safety profile and is now recommended as first-line treatment. However, many patients require additional glucose control treatment with an agent that has a complementary mechanism of action like metformin. Some common drugs used for treatment of T2DM available in the market include metformin oral, actos oral, Byetta subQ, Janu*via* oral, *etc*.

Another possible way of reversing insulin resistance would be *via* targeting the signaling components in the insulin signaling pathway modulated by HCV. For instance, we have shown that HCV up regulates phospho-S6K1, which stimulates degradation of IRS-1[38]. Thus, targeting phospho-S6K1 would be a target against HCV induced insulin resistance. These studies have not been done yet, so at this time it will be difficult to comment on the predictive outcome on reversal of insulin resistance. Use of specific inhibitors of SOCS-3, which may become useful to correct resistance to both insulin and IFN-α, are not available for clinical use. Alternatively, one may envision inhibiting TNF-α by administering infliximab or similar agents. IR also results from uncontrolled diet and life style. Regulation of weight, diet, and life style management will also be key in managing IR.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank and Lin Cowick for preparation of the manuscript.

REFERENCES

1 **Kato N**. Genome of human hepatitis C virus (HCV): gene organization, sequence diversity, and variation. *Microb Comp Genomics* 2000; **5**: 129-151 [PMID: 11252351]
2 **Walewski JL**, Keller TR, Stump DD, Branch AD. Evidence for a new hepatitis C virus antigen encoded in an overlapping reading frame. *RNA* 2001; **7**: 710-721 [PMID: 11350035]
3 **Pavlović D**, Neville DC, Argaud O, Blumberg B, Dwek RA, Fischer WB, Zitzmann N. The hepatitis C virus p7 protein forms an ion channel that is inhibited by long-alkyl-chain iminosugar derivatives. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 6104-6108 [PMID: 12719519 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1031527100]
4 **Castillo I**, Rodríguez-Iñigo E, Bartolomé J, de Lucas S, Ortíz-Movilla N, López-Alcorocho JM, Pardo M, Carreño V. Hepatitis C virus replicates in peripheral blood mononuclear cells of patients with occult hepatitis C virus infection. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 682-685 [PMID: 15831916 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2004.057281]
5 **Revie D**, Salahuddin SZ. Human cell types important for hepatitis C virus replication in vivo and in vitro: old assertions and current evidence. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 346 [PMID: 21745397 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-346]
6 **Alter HJ**, Seeff LB. Recovery, persistence, and sequelae in hepatitis C virus infection: a perspective on long-term outcome. *Semin Liver Dis* 2000; **20**: 17-35 [PMID: 10895429]
7 **Hoofnagle JH**. Course and outcome of hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2002; **36**: S21-S29 [PMID: 12407573 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840360704]
8 **Hoofnagle JH**, di Bisceglie AM. The treatment of chronic viral hepatitis. *N Engl J Med* 1997; **336**: 347-356 [PMID: 9011789 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199701303360507]
9 **Moradpour D**, Blum HE. Current and evolving therapies for hepatitis C. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1999; **11**: 1199-1202 [PMID: 10563526]
10 **Jacobson IM**, McHutchison JG, Dusheiko G, Di Bisceglie AM, Reddy KR, Bzowej NH, Marcellin P, Muir AJ, Ferenci P, Flisiak R, George J, Rizzetto M, Shouval D, Sola R, Terg RA, Yoshida EM, Adda N, Bengtsson L, Sankoh AJ, Kieffer TL, George S, Kauffman RS, Zeuzem S; ADVANCE Study Team.

Telaprevir for previously untreated chronic hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2405-2416 [PMID: 21696307 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1012912]
11 **Bacon BR**, Gordon SC, Lawitz E, Marcellin P, Vierling JM, Zeuzem S, Poordad F, Goodman ZD, Sings HL, Boparai N, Burroughs M, Brass CA, Albrecht JK, Esteban R. Boceprevir for previously treated chronic HCV genotype 1 infection. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1207-1217 [PMID: 21449784 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1009482]
12 **El-Zayadi AR**, Anis M. Hepatitis C virus induced insulin resistance impairs response to anti viral therapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 212-224 [PMID: 22294824 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i3.212]
13 **Lin HV**, Accili D. Hormonal regulation of hepatic glucose production in health and disease. *Cell Metab* 2011; **14**: 9-19 [PMID: 21723500 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2011.06.003]
14 **Wilcox G**. Insulin and insulin resistance. *Clin Biochem Rev* 2005; **26**: 19-39 [PMID: 16278749]
15 **Leney SE**, Tavaré JM. The molecular basis of insulin-stimulated glucose uptake: signalling, trafficking and potential drug targets. *J Endocrinol* 2009; **203**: 1-18 [PMID: 19389739 DOI: 10.1677/JOE-09-0037]
16 **Ginsberg HN**. Insulin resistance and cardiovascular disease. *J Clin Invest* 2000; **106**: 453-458 [PMID: 10953019 DOI: 10.1172/JCI10762]
17 **McFarlane SI**, Banerji M, Sowers JR. Insulin resistance and cardiovascular disease. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2001; **86**: 713-718 [PMID: 11158035 DOI: 10.1210/jc.86.2.713]
18 **Abcouwer SF**. Angiogenic Factors and Cytokines in Diabetic Retinopathy. *J Clin Cell Immunol* 2013; (**11**) [PMID: 24319628 DOI: 10.4172/2155-9899]
19 **Hussain G**, Rizvi SA, Singhal S, Zubair M, Ahmad J. Serum levels of TNF-α in peripheral neuropathy patients and its correlation with nerve conduction velocity in type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Metab Syndr* 2013; **7**: 238-242 [PMID: 24290092 DOI: 10.1016/j.dsx.2013.02.005]
20 **Kelley DE**, McKolanis TM, Hegazi RA, Kuller LH, Kalhan SC. Fatty liver in type 2 diabetes mellitus: relation to regional adiposity, fatty acids, and insulin resistance. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2003; **285**: E906-E916 [PMID: 12959938 DOI: 10.1152/ajpendo.00117.2003]
21 **Birnbaum MJ**. Identification of a novel gene encoding an insulin-responsive glucose transporter protein. *Cell* 1989; **57**: 305-315 [PMID: 2649253 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(89)90968-9]
22 **Charron MJ**, Brosius FC, Alper SL, Lodish HF. A glucose transport protein expressed predominately in insulin-responsive tissues. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1989; **86**: 2535-2539 [PMID: 2649883]
23 **Tamemoto H**, Kadowaki T, Tobe K, Yagi T, Sakura H, Hayakawa T, Terauchi Y, Ueki K, Kaburagi Y, Satoh S. Insulin resistance and growth retardation in mice lacking insulin receptor substrate-1. *Nature* 1994; **372**: 182-186 [PMID: 7969452 DOI: 10.1038/372182a0]
24 **Withers DJ**, Gutierrez JS, Towery H, Burks DJ, Ren JM, Previs S, Zhang Y, Bernal D, Pons S, Shulman GI, Bonner-Weir S, White MF. Disruption of IRS-2 causes type 2 diabetes in mice. *Nature* 1998; **391**: 900-904 [PMID: 9495343 DOI: 10.1038/36116]
25 **Olson AL**, Knight JB. Regulation of GLUT4 expression in vivo and in vitro. *Front Biosci* 2003; **8**: s401-s409 [PMID: 12700047]
26 **Cefalu WT**. Insulin resistance: cellular and clinical concepts. *Exp Biol Med* (Maywood) 2001; **226**: 13-26 [PMID: 11368233]
27 **Samuel VT**, Shulman GI. Mechanisms for insulin resistance: common threads and missing links. *Cell* 2012; **148**: 852-871 [PMID: 22385956 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.02.017]
28 **Knobler H**, Schattner A. TNF-{alpha}, chronic hepatitis C and diabetes: a novel triad. *QJM* 2005; **98**: 1-6 [PMID: 15625348 DOI: 10.1093/qjmed/hci001]
29 **Moucari R**, Asselah T, Cazals-Hatem D, Voitot H, Boyer N, Ripault MP, Sobesky R, Martinot-Peignoux M, Maylin S, Nicolas-Chanoine MH, Paradis V, Vidaud M, Valla D, Bedossa P, Marcellin P. Insulin resistance in chronic hepatitis C: association with genotypes 1 and 4, serum HCV RNA level, and liver fibrosis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 416-423 [PMID: 18164296 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.11.010]
30 **Kawaguchi T**, Sata M. Importance of hepatitis C virus-associated insulin resistance: therapeutic strategies for insulin sensitization. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 1943-1952 [PMID: 20419831 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i16.1943]
31 **Adinolfi LE**, Gambardella M, Andreana A, Tripodi MF, Utili R, Ruggiero G. Steatosis accelerates the progression of liver damage of chronic hepatitis C patients and correlates with specific HCV genotype and visceral obesity. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 1358-1364 [PMID: 11391523 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.24432]
32 **Tazawa J**, Maeda M, Nakagawa M, Ohbayashi H, Kusano F, Yamane M, Sakai Y, Suzuki K. Diabetes mellitus may be associated with hepatocarcinogenesis in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Dig Dis Sci* 2002; **47**: 710-715 [PMID: 11991597]
33 **Weickert MO**, Pfeiffer AF. Signalling mechanisms linking hepatic glucose and lipid metabolism. *Diabetologia* 2006; **49**: 1732-1741 [PMID: 16718463 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-006-0295-3]
34 **Adinolfi LE**, Durante-Mangoni E, Zampino R, Ruggiero G. Review article: hepatitis C virus-associated steatosis--pathogenic mechanisms and clinical implications. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **22 Suppl 2**: 52-55 [PMID: 16225474]
35 **Kawaguchi T**, Yoshida T, Harada M, Hisamoto T, Nagao Y, Ide T, Taniguchi E, Kumemura H, Hanada S, Maeyama M, Baba S, Koga H, Kumashiro R, Ueno T, Ogata H, Yoshimura A, Sata M. Hepatitis C virus down-regulates insulin receptor substrates 1 and 2 through up-regulation of suppressor of cytokine signaling 3. *Am J Pathol* 2004; **165**: 1499-1508 [PMID: 15509521]
36 **Pazienza V**, Clément S, Pugnale P, Conzelman S, Foti M, Mangia A, Negro F. The hepatitis C virus core protein of genotypes 3a and 1b downregulates insulin receptor substrate 1 through genotype-specific mechanisms. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 1164-1171 [PMID: 17465001 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21634]
37 **Banerjee S**, Saito K, Ait-Goughoulte M, Meyer K, Ray RB, Ray R. Hepatitis C virus core protein upregulates serine phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate-1 and impairs the downstream akt/protein kinase B signaling pathway for insulin resistance. *J Virol* 2008; **82**: 2606-2612 [PMID: 18160431 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01672-07]
38 **Bose SK**, Shrivastava S, Meyer K, Ray RB, Ray R. Hepatitis C virus activates the mTOR/S6K1 signaling pathway in inhibiting IRS-1 function for insulin resistance. *J Virol* 2012; **86**: 6315-6322 [PMID: 22457523 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00050-12]
39 **Shintani Y**, Fujie H, Miyoshi H, Tsutsumi T, Tsukamoto K, Kimura S, Moriya K, Koike K. Hepatitis C virus infection and diabetes: direct involvement of the virus in the development of insulin resistance. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 840-848 [PMID: 14988838]
40 **Virkamäki A**, Ueki K, Kahn CR. Protein-protein interaction in insulin signaling and the molecular mechanisms of insulin resistance. *J Clin Invest* 1999; **103**: 931-943 [PMID: 10194465 DOI: 10.1172/JCI6609]
41 **Fritsche L**, Weigert C, Häring HU, Lehmann R. How insulin receptor substrate proteins regulate the metabolic capacity of the liver--implications for health and disease. *Curr Med Chem* 2008; **15**: 1316-1329 [PMID: 18537611]
42 **Pal S**, Polyak SJ, Bano N, Qiu WC, Carithers RL, Shuhart M, Gretch DR, Das A. Hepatitis C virus induces oxidative stress, DNA damage and modulates the DNA repair enzyme NEIL1. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 627-634 [PMID: 20074151 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2009.06128.x]
43 **Unger RH**, Orci L. Lipotoxic diseases of nonadipose tissues in obesity. *Int J Obes Relat Metab Disord* 2000; **24** Suppl 4: S28-S32 [PMID: 11126236]
44 **Perlemuter G**, Sabile A, Letteron P, Vona G, Topilco A, Chrétien Y, Koike K, Pessayre D, Chapman J, Barba G, Bréchot C.

Hepatitis C virus core protein inhibits microsomal triglyceride transfer protein activity and very low density lipoprotein secretion: a model of viral-related steatosis. *FASEB J* 2002; **16**: 185-194 [PMID: 11818366 DOI: 10.1096/fj.01-0396com]

45 **Kim KH**, Hong SP, Kim K, Park MJ, Kim KJ, Cheong J. HCV core protein induces hepatic lipid accumulation by activating SREBP1 and PPARgamma. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2007; **355**: 883-888 [PMID: 17331464 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2007.02.044]

46 **Deng L**, Shoji I, Ogawa W, Kaneda S, Soga T, Jiang DP, Ide YH, Hotta H. Hepatitis C virus infection promotes hepatic gluconeogenesis through an NS5A-mediated, FoxO1-dependent pathway. *J Virol* 2011; **85**: 8556-8568 [PMID: 21697492 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.00146-11]

47 **Mohamed AA**, Loutfy SA, Craik JD, Hashem AG, Siam I. Chronic hepatitis c genotype-4 infection: role of insulin resistance in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 496 [PMID: 22044490 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422X-8-496]

48 **Salmon D**, Bani-Sadr F, Loko MA, Stitou H, Gervais A, Durant J, Rosenthal E, Quertainmont Y, Barange K, Vittecoq D, Shoai-Tehrani M, Alvarez M, Winnock M, Trinchet JC, Dabis F, Sogni P. Insulin resistance is associated with a higher risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in cirrhotic HIV/HCV-co-infected patients: results from ANRS CO13 HEPAVIH. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56**: 862-868 [PMID: 22173166 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.11.009]

49 **Siddique A**, Kowdley KV. Insulin resistance and other metabolic risk factors in the pathogenesis of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Liver Dis* 2011; **15**: 281-96, vii-x [PMID: 21689613 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2011.03.007]

50 **Sheikh MY**, Choi J, Qadri I, Friedman JE, Sanyal AJ. Hepatitis C virus infection: molecular pathways to metabolic syndrome. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 2127-2133 [PMID: 18446789 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22269]

51 **Banerjee A**, Meyer K, Mazumdar B, Ray RB, Ray R. Hepatitis C virus differentially modulates activation of forkhead transcription factors and insulin-induced metabolic gene expression. *J Virol* 2010; **84**: 5936-5946 [PMID: 20357092 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.02344-09]

52 **Bugianesi E**, Manzini P, D'Antico S, Vanni E, Longo F, Leone N, Massarenti P, Piga A, Marchesini G, Rizzetto M. Relative contribution of iron burden, HFE mutations, and insulin resistance to fibrosis in nonalcoholic fatty liver. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 179-187 [PMID: 14752836 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20023]

53 **Clément S**, Pascarella S, Conzelmann S, Gonelle-Gispert C, Guilloux K, Negro F. The hepatitis C virus core protein indirectly induces alpha-smooth muscle actin expression in hepatic stellate cells via interleukin-8. *J Hepatol* 2010; **52**: 635-643 [PMID: 20347177 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2009.10.035]

54 **Moriya K**, Fujie H, Shintani Y, Yotsuyanagi H, Tsutsumi T, Ishibashi K, Matsuura Y, Kimura S, Miyamura T, Koike K. The core protein of hepatitis C virus induces hepatocellular carcinoma in transgenic mice. *Nat Med* 1998; **4**: 1065-1067 [PMID: 9734402 DOI: 10.1038/2053]

55 **Kawaguchi T**, Ide T, Taniguchi E, Hirano E, Itou M, Sumie S, Nagao Y, Yanagimoto C, Hanada S, Koga H, Sata M. Clearance of HCV improves insulin resistance, beta-cell function, and hepatic expression of insulin receptor substrate 1 and 2. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 570-576 [PMID: 17222321 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.01038.x]

56 **Romero-Gómez M**, Fernández-Rodríguez CM, Andrade RJ, Diago M, Alonso S, Planas R, Solá R, Pons JA, Salmerón J, Barcena R, Perez R, Carmona I, Durán S. Effect of sustained virological response to treatment on the incidence of abnormal glucose values in chronic hepatitis C. *J Hepatol* 2008; **48**: 721-727 [PMID: 18308416 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2007.11.022]

57 **Romero-Gómez M**, Diago M, Andrade RJ, Calleja JL, Salmerón J, Fernández-Rodríguez CM, Solà R, García-Samaniego J, Herrerías JM, De la Mata M, Moreno-Otero R, Nuñez O, Olveira A, Durán S, Planas R; Spanish Treatment of Resistance to Insulin in Hepatitis C Genotype 1 Group. Treatment of insulin resistance with metformin in naïve genotype 1 chronic hepatitis C patients receiving peginterferon alfa-2a plus ribavirin. *Hepatology* 2009; **50**: 1702-1708 [PMID: 19845037 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23206]

58 **Overbeck K**, Genné D, Golay A, Negro F; Swiss Association for the Study of the Liver (SASL). Pioglitazone in chronic hepatitis C not responding to pegylated interferon-alpha and ribavirin. *J Hepatol* 2008; **49**: 295-298 [PMID: 18555553 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2008.03.033]

59 **Negro F**. Steatosis and insulin resistance in response to treatment of chronic hepatitis C. *J Viral Hepat* 2012; **19** Suppl 1: 42-47 [PMID: 22233413 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2011.01523.x]

60 **Guthrie RM**. Evolving therapeutic options for type 2 diabetes mellitus: an overview. *Postgrad Med* 2012; **124**: 82-89 [PMID: 23322141 DOI: 10.3810/pgm.2012.11.2614]

61 **Osinusi A**, Meissner EG, Lee YJ, Bon D, Heytens L, Nelson A, Sneller M, Kohli A, Barrett L, Proschan M, Herrmann E, Shivakumar B, Gu W, Kwan R, Teferi G, Talwani R, Silk R, Kotb C, Wroblewski S, Fishbein D, Dewar R, Highbarger H, Zhang X, Kleiner D, Wood BJ, Chavez J, Symonds WT, Subramanian M, McHutchison J, Polis MA, Fauci AS, Masur H, Kottilil S. Sofosbuvir and ribavirin for hepatitis C genotype 1 in patients with unfavorable treatment characteristics: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2013; **310**: 804-811 [PMID: 23982366 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2013.109309]

62 **Ozyilkan E**, Erbaş T, Simşek H, Telatar F, Kayhan B, Telatar H. Increased prevalence of hepatitis C virus antibodies in patients with diabetes mellitus. *J Intern Med* 1994; **235**: 283-284 [PMID: 8120528]

63 **Simó R**, Hernández C, Genescà J, Jardí R, Mesa J. High prevalence of hepatitis C virus infection in diabetic patients. *Diabetes Care* 1996; **19**: 998-1000 [PMID: 8875096]

64 **Mukhtar NA**, Ayala C, Maher JJ, Khalili M. Assessment of factors associated with pre-diabetes in HCV infection including direct and dynamic measurements of insulin action. *J Viral Hepat* 2012; **19**: 480-487 [PMID: 22676360 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2011.01568.x]

P- Reviewers: Efanov AM, Teeter JG, Traub M, Vestergaard ET
S- Editor: Zhai HH **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.59

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 59-68
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Identification and differentiation of PDX1 β-cell progenitors within the human pancreatic epithelium

Karen L Seeberger, Sarah J Anderson, Cara E Ellis, Telford Y Yeung, Gregory S Korbutt

Karen L Seeberger, Sarah J Anderson, Cara E Ellis, Telford Y Yeung, Gregory S Korbutt, Alberta Diabetes Institute, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta, T6G 2E1, Canada
Gregory S Korbutt, Department of Surgery, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta T6G 2E1, Canada
Gregory S Korbutt, Alberta Diabetes Institute, 5-002 Li Ka Shing Center, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta, T6G 2E1, Canada
Author contributions: Seeberger KL and Anderson SJ contributed equally to this work; Seeberger KL and Korbutt GS designed the research; Seeberger KL and Anderson SJ performed the research; Ellis CE and Yeung TY contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Seeberger KL, Anderson SJ, Ellis CE and Yeung TY analyzed the data; and Seeberger KL wrote the paper.
Supported by Canadian Institutes of Health Research, No. MOP8030; and the Alberta Diabetes Institute
Correspondence to: Gregory S Korbutt, Professor, Alberta Diabetes Institute, 5-002 Li Ka Shing Center, University of Alberta, Edmonton, 116 St. and 85 Ave, Alberta, T6G 2E1, Canada. korbutt@ualberta.ca
Telephone: +1-780-4924657 Fax: +1-780-4925501
Received: September 13, 2013 Revised: November 27, 2013
Accepted: December 13, 2013
Published online: February 15, 2014

Abstract

AIM: To minimize the expansion of pancreatic mesenchymal cells *in vitro* and confirm that β-cell progenitors reside within the pancreatic epithelium.

METHODS: Due to mesenchymal stem cell (MSC) expansion and overgrowth, progenitor cells within the pancreatic epithelium cannot be characterized *in vitro*, though β-cell dedifferentiation and expansion of MSC intermediates *via* epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) may generate β-cell progenitors. Pancreatic epithelial cells from endocrine and non-endocrine tissue were expanded and differentiated in a novel pancreatic epithelial expansion medium supplemented with growth factors known to support epithelial cell growth (dexamethasone, epidermal growth factor, 3,5,3'-triiodo-l-thyronine, bovine brain extract). Cells were also infected with a single and dual lentiviral reporter prior to cell differentiation. Enhanced green fluorescent protein was controlled by the rat *Insulin 1* promoter and the monomeric red fluorescent protein was controlled by the mouse *PDX1* promoter. In combination with lentiviral tracing, cells expanded and differentiated in the pancreatic medium were characterized by flow cytometry (BD fluorescence activated cell sorting), immunostaining and real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (7900HT Fast Realtime PCR System).

RESULTS: In the presence of 10% serum MSCs rapidly expand *in vitro* while the epithelial cell population declines. The percentage of vimentin$^+$ cells increased from 22% ± 5.83% to 80.43% ± 3.24% (14 d) and 99.00% ± 0.0% (21 d), and the percentage of epithelial cells decreased from 74.71% ± 8.34% to 26.57% ± 9.75% (14 d) and 4.00% ± 1.53% (21 d), $P < 0.01$ for all time points. Our novel pancreatic epithelial expansion medium preserved the epithelial cell phenotype and minimized epithelial cell dedifferentiation and EMT. Cells expanded in our epithelial medium contained significantly less mesenchymal cells (vimentin$^+$) compared to controls (44.87% ± 4.93% *vs* 95.67% ± 1.36%; $P < 0.01$). During cell differentiation lentiviral reporting demonstrated that, PDX1$^+$ and insulin$^+$ cells were localized within adherent epithelial cell aggregates compared to controls. Compared to starting islets differentiated cells had at least two fold higher gene expression of PDX1, insulin, PAX4 and RFX ($P < 0.05$).

CONCLUSION: PDX1$^+$ cells were confined to adherent epithelial cell aggregates and not vimentin$^+$ cells (mesenchymal), suggesting that EMT is not a mechanism for generating pancreatic progenitor cells.

Key words: Differentiation; Epithelial; Epithelial-mesenchymal transition; Mesenchymal; PDX1; Insulin; Pro-

genitor; Vimentin

Core tip: Previously, we demonstrated that mesenchymal stem cells could be expanded from human endocrine and non-endocrine pancreas cell fractions *in vitro*. However, we were unable to complete cell differentiation of mesenchymal cell intermediates to functional endocrine cells. In this study we utilized a novel cell culture medium to prevent epithelial cell de-differentiation and mesenchymal cell expansion. After epithelial cell expansion in this medium cells were differentiated *via* our previously described protocol and we confirmed by lineage tracing, flow cytometry, immunostaining and real-time polymerase chain reaction that islet progenitors reside in the pancreatic epithelium and are not derived *via* a mesenchymal cell intermediate.

Seeberger KL, Anderson SL, Ellis CE, Yeung TY, Korbutt GS. Identification and differentiation of PDX1 β-cell progenitors within the human pancreatic epithelium. *World J Diabetes* 2014; 5(1): 59-68 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/full/v5/i1/59.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.59

INTRODUCTION

Islet transplantation is an attractive alternative to daily insulin injections to achieve a more physiological means for restoring glucose homeostasis[1-3]. Identifying and understanding the origin of a potential human β-cell progenitor could alleviate the current shortage of donor islets and contribute to the overall knowledge of β-cell regeneration. However, the study of β-cell progenitors is fraught with controversy, as several conflicting models and mechanisms describing the origin and existence of these progenitor cells have been proposed. Despite lineage tracing experiments utilizing transgenic mouse models[4-6] the exact origin of β-cell progenitors residing within the pancreas is yet to be elucidated. For example β-cell progenitors have been proposed to originate from: β-cell replication[4], acinar cell transdifferentiation[7,8], ductal cell transdifferentiation[9-12], pancreas derived multipotent precursors[13], pluripotent islet survivor cells[14] and β-cell dedifferentiation with expansion of mesenchymal stem cell (MSC) intermediates *via* epithelial mesenchymal transition (EMT)[15-20].

Previously we reported[21] that MSCs, also referred to as multi-potent stromal cells[22], could be expanded 12-fold from human islet depleted pancreatic tissue (IDPT) that remains following islet isolation. We demonstrated that these pancreatic MSCs could be partially differentiated into islet-like cells. However, in a follow up study[23] we could not restore an epithelial phenotype during tissue culture or generate functional endocrine cells. We hypothesized that this was due in part to our experimental culture conditions, which favored pancreatic MSC expansion and negatively selected pancreatic epithelial cells.

In this study we report that, during *in vitro* pancreatic MSC expansion, epithelial cells also proliferate and when these epithelial cells are enriched and differentiated, this cell population expresses developmental transcription factors indicative of a β-cell progenitor such as PAX4 and RFX6[24-26]. Therefore, to maintain epithelial cell phenotype and allow long-term study of this cell population *in vitro,* we utilized a pancreatic epithelial expansion medium that minimized epithelial cell dedifferentiation and MSC overgrowth in combination with our differentiation protocol[21,23]. Furthermore, by utilizing single and dual lentiviral reporters where, enhanced green fluorescent protein (EGFP) is controlled by the rat *Insulin 1* (Ins1) promoter and monomeric red fluorescent protein (mRFP) is controlled by the mouse *PDX1* promoter[26] we determined that PDX1$^+$ cells observed after 25 d post-differentiation were epithelial cells. Unlike the reversible (EMT) model first described by Gershengorn *et al*[15] and the dedifferentiation of β-cells then replication of β-cell-derived cells described by Russ *et al*[20], we propose that β-cell progenitors reside within the human pancreatic epithelium and that these cells have the potential to respond favorably to *in vitro* differentiation without dedifferentiation into a MSC intermediate *via* EMT. Overall, we report a novel cell culture media that promotes pancreatic epithelial cell survival and minimizes MSC overgrowth, and report that PDX1$^+$ cells observed 25 d post-differentiation are epithelial cells.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Cell expansion and differentiation

Human islets (n = 9) and IDPT (n = 13) were obtained from the Edmonton Clinical Islet Transplant Program (University of Alberta and Alberta Health Services). Written, informed, consent was provided by donor relatives and all protocols were approved by the UofA Research Ethics Office. Average donor age was 54 (30-71 years) and islet purity assessed by dithizone staining ranged between 10%-40%. IDPT (< 5% insulin positive cells) was obtained following removal of islets by density gradient purification[21,23,27]. Upon receipt, IDPT was cultured in Roswell Park Memorial Institute (RPMI) 1640 medium (Invitrogen, Burlington, ON Canada) supplemented with 0.5% w/v fraction V bovine serum albumin (Sigma-Aldrich, Oakville, ON Canada), 1% insulin-transferrin-selenium (Sigma-Aldrich) and 100 U penicillin/1000 U streptomycin (Invitrogen). Islets were cultured in Connaught Medical Research Laboratories-1066 medium (Invitrogen) supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS, Invitrogen), 2 mmol/L L-glutamine (Invitrogen), 10 mmol/L hydroxyethyl piperazineethanesulfonic acid (HEPES) and 100 U penicillin/1000 U streptomycin (Invitrogen). Both IDPT and islets were cultured in 150 mm non-tissue culture treated plates (Corning, NY, United States) and maintained for 24-48 h at 37 ℃ in 5% CO_2 and 95% air. Following culture, single cell suspensions were derived by, dissociating islets or cellular aggregates derived from the cultured IDPT with 0.05% trypsin, 0.5 mmol/L ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (Invitrogen) in 1X PBS.

Single cell preparations were cultured and expanded in pancreatic MSC medium or pancreatic epithelial expansion medium. MSC medium is composed of RPMI-1640 supplemented with 10% FBS, 10 mmol/L HEPES, 1 mmol/L sodium pyruvate (Invitrogen), 71.5 μmol/L β-mercaptoethanol (Sigma-Aldrich), 20 ng/mL epidermal growth factor (EGF, R&D, Minneapolis, MN United States), 20 ng/mL fibroblast growth factor (Invitrogen) and 100 U pencillin/1000 U streptomycin[21,23,27]. Cell confluence was achieved in 10-14 d and cells required passaging every 7 d after that. From both islets and IDPT at the 2nd and 3rd passage we routinely generate a cell population with MSC characteristics as previously described[21,23,27]. To preserve epithelial cell phenotype, single cells derived from islets or the IDPT were also cultured and expanded in a pancreatic epithelial expansion medium either on 150 mm tissue culture treated plates (Corning) or 12 mm poly-l-lysine coated cover slips (BD Biosciences) placed in 24 well tissue culture treated plates (Corning). Pancreatic epithelial expansion medium is composed of Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium/F12 (Invitrogen) supplemented with 0.5% FBS, 0.1 μg/mL EGF, 0.4 μg/mL dexamethasone (Sigma-Aldrich), 14 mg/mL bovine brain extract (Lonza, Walkersville, MD United States), 0.05 μmol/L triiodo-l-thryonine sodium salt (Sigma-Aldrich), 0.1 mg/mL soybean trypsin inhibitor (US Biological, Swampscott, MA, United States), 0.5X ITS+premix (BD Biosciences) and 100 U penicillin/1000 U streptomycin. Expanded cell populations were subsequently differentiated using a multi-step protocol previously described[21,23,27,28] and characterized by flow cytometry, immunohistochemistry and real-time polymerase chain reaction (PCR). For differentiation, the cell monolayer was treated with 20 ng/mL OncostatinM (R&D) for 72 h. In steps 2 and 3 the medium was supplemented with 10 mmol/L nicotinamide (Sigma-Aldrich) for 72 h followed by 10 mmol/L nicotinamide and 10 nmol/L exendin4 (Sigma-Aldrich) for another 72 h. In step 4, 10 ng/mL of transforming growth factor-β1 (TGFβ-1; EMD Millipore, Billerica, MA, United States) was included with nicotinamide and exendin4 for 3-10 d with media changes every 72 h. Cell monolayers were detached with trypsin and aggregated by reconstituting cells at 125000 cells/mL in medium supplemented with nicotinamide, exendin4, TGFβ-1, 0.5X ITS+ premix (BD Biosciences, Beford, MA United States) and transferred to 100 mm ultra-low attachment non-tissue culture treated plates (Corning).

Immunohistochemistry

Double immunofluorescence (IF) analysis was performed on paraffin sections of single cells that had first been fixed with 1% formalin (Fisher Scientific, Nepean, ON Canada) and embedded in 2% low melting point agarose (Sigma-Aldrich) or cells which had been differentiated on 12 mm poly-l-lysine cover slips (BD Biosciences). Paraffin sections were processed and immunostained as previously described[23,28]. Cover slips were fixed in 1% formalin for 30 min in the dark at 4 ℃, and then washed twice with 5% normal goat serum (NGS) in PBS. For antibodies requiring permeabilization, 0.3% saponin (Sigma) in PBS was applied for one minute, and another two washes of 5% NGS followed. All cover slips were then blocked with 20% NGS for 1 h in the dark. Primary antibodies were diluted in 5% NGS at the following concentrations: 1/200 anti-epithelial cell adhesion molecule (EpCAM, Stem Cell Technologies, Vancouver, BC Canada), 1/100 anti-vimentin (Dako, Mississauga, ON Canada), 1/25 anti-human proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA, Invitrogen), 1/50 anti-CK19 (Dako), 1/5000 anti-glucagon (Sigma-Aldrich), 1/1000 anti-insulin (Dako), 1/1000 anti-pancreatic polypeptide (Dako), 1/1000 anti-somatostatin (Dako), 1/1000 anti-PDX1 (Abcam, Cambridge, MA, United States). All appropriate species-specific secondary antibodies were AlexaFluor 488 or 594 conjugates (Molecular Probes, Eugene, OR, United States) and diluted 1/200 in 5% NGS. Slides and or cover slips were cover-slipped with ProLong Gold anti-fade reagent with 4',6-diamidino-2-phenylindole (Invitrogen) to counter stain nuclei and preserve fluorescence. Negative controls were incubated without primary antibodies and positive controls were sections of normal human and infant pancreas. All slides were visualized with an Axioscope Ⅱ equipped with AxioCam MRC and analyzed with Axiovision 4.6 (Carl Zeiss, Gottingen, Germany).

Flow cytometry

Single cells from islets and IDPT were stained and analyzed by fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) using the FACS Calibur (BD Biosciences) and Cell Quest Pro software and compared to matched isotype controls[23,27]. Cells were permeabilized with 0.3% saponin for 60 min and stained with 1/10 vimentin-FITC, 1/5 EpCAM-FITC and 1/15 PCNA-647 (BioLegend, San Diego, CA, United States). Isotype controls were; IgG1-FITC, IgG2a-FITC and IgG2a-647. Values are expressed as mean percent ± SE.

RNA isolation and real-time PCR

Islets and IDPT cells prior to cell culture, during expansion and post differentiation were preserved in Trizol reagent (Invitrogen) and stored at -80 ℃. RNA was extracted in combination with the RNeasy Mini Kit (Qiagen, Mississauga, ON Canada) as per the manufacturer's protocol. cDNA was synthesized as described[21]. Real-time PCR was performed using the "TaqMan gene expression assay" (Applied Biosystems, Invitrogen) and a 7900HT Fast Realtime PCR System (Applied Biosystems). Relative quantification was performed by utilizing the comparative Ct method and all results were compared to the control samples for each time point after normalizing to an endogenous control (beta 2-microglobulin) using the Relative Quantification Manager software (Applied Biosystems). Values are expressed as mean percent ± SE. cDNA negative controls contained water in place of RNA and RT-PCR negative controls contained water in place of cDNA, β2-microglobulin (β2m) ensured cDNA integrity.

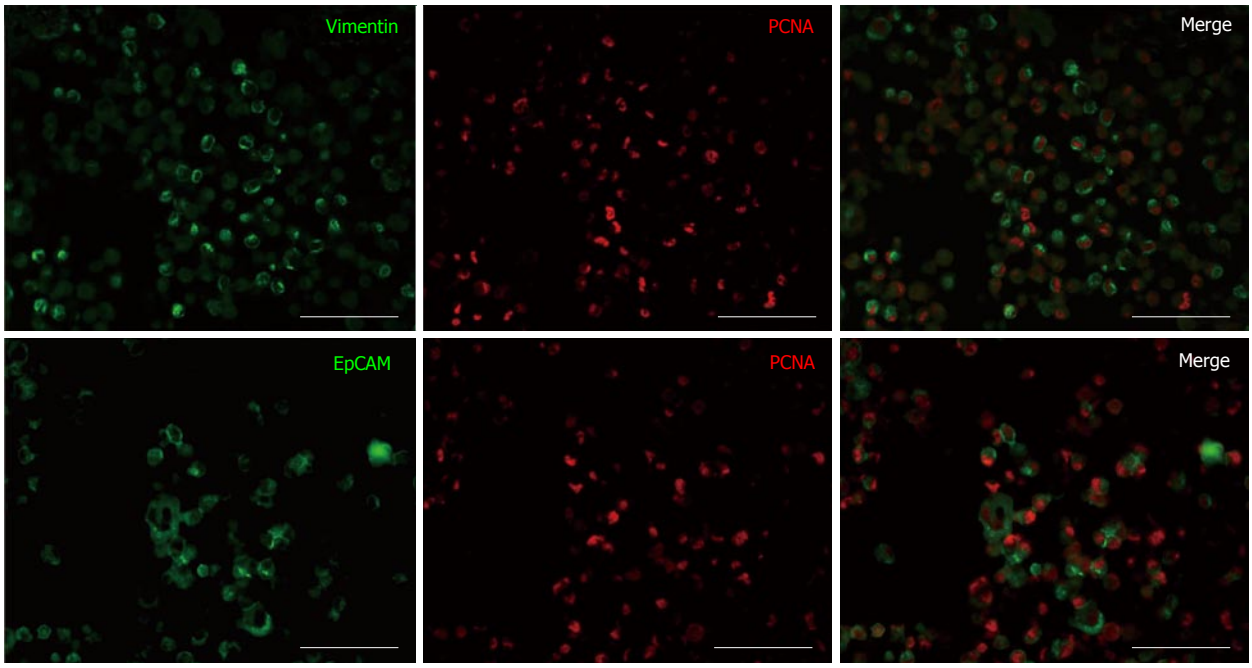


Figure 1 Double immunofluorescence staining of islet depleted pancreatic tissue expanded cells after 14 d in culture. Cells are positive for vimentin (green), EpCAM (green) and PCNA (red). Both vimentin and EpCAM positive cells are positive for PCNA staining (merged) and proliferating. Scale bars are 50 μm. EpCAM: Epithelial cell adhesion molecule; PCNA: Proliferating cell nuclear antigen.

Lentivirus infection

Lentiviral vectors were kindly provided by Dr. James D. Johnson (University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada) and described in detail by Szabat *et al*[26]. We received the following vectors: dual reporter mouse PDX1 promoter-mRFP/rat Ins1 promoter-EGFP, single reporter mouse PDX1 promoter-mRFP, single reporter rat Ins1 promoter-EGFP as well as the structural and envelope vectors. Virus was produced by transfection of 293T cells that were a gift from Dr. Patrick MacDonald (University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada) utilizing FuGENE6 Transfection Reagent (Roche Diagnostics, IN, United States) and the protocol first described by Dr. Garry Nolan Lab (http://www.stanford.edu/group/nolan/index.html). Virus was titred using the rat INS1 cell line (a gift from Dr. Patrick MacDonald) and titres were between 2-4 × 10^6 TU/mL with an infection efficiency of 40%-70%. Single cells from human islets or IDPT were plated at a density of 0.3 × 10^6 cells/well onto a 24 well plate that contained 12 mm poly-l-lysine cover slips and cultured in pancreatic epithelial expansion medium. Cells were allowed to adhere and infected at a multiplicity of infection of < 1. Protein expression (fluorescence) was monitored daily and peak fluorescence of human primary cells was routinely detected between 4-7 d post infection. Differentiation of infected primary cells was started at 4-7 d post-infection. Absolute counts of positive mRFP and EGFP cells were counted using ImageJ software[29].

Statistical analysis

Data is expressed as mean ± SE. Statistical comparisons were performed with STATA11 (StataCorp LP, College Station, TX) using one-way analysis of variance and Bonferroni post-hoc test. Acceptable level of significance was considered $P < 0.05$.

RESULTS

Epithelial cells from IDPT proliferate in pancreatic MSC medium

Previously, we demonstrated that during *in vitro* cell expansion of cells from IDPT, the proportion of epithelial cells decreased while vimentin positive cells (MSCs) significantly increased[21,23]. In this study, to determine if epithelial cells were still capable of proliferation, we assessed cell proliferation after 14 d in culture *via* dual IF staining and flow cytometry. Cells that were formalin fixed and embedded in agarose were stained with antibodies against EpCAM or vimentin (MSC) then co-stained for PCNA. After 14 d in culture we confirmed that vimentin$^+$ cells were the predominant cell population and these cells were PCNA$^+$ and proliferating (Figure 1). A small proportion of epithelial cells (EpCAM$^+$) were still present and were also PCNA$^+$ thus still proliferating (Figure 1). The proportion of vimentin and EpCAM cells that were positive for PCNA were quantified by FACS analysis at Time 0, 14 and 21 d in culture (Table 1). During cell expansion; the percentage of vimentin$^+$ cells proliferating (PCNA$^+$) increased from 22% ± 5.83% to 80.43% ± 3.24% (14 d) and 99.00% ± 0.0% (21 d), and the percentage of proliferating epithelial cells decreased from 74.71% ± 8.34% to 26.57% ± 9.75% (14 d) and 4.00% ± 1.53% (21 d), $P < 0.01$ for all time points. Therefore, MSC expansion culture conditions favor MSC expansion over epithelial cells

Table 1 Cell composition and proportion of proliferating cell nuclear antigen positive cells during pancreatic cell expansion from islet depleted pancreatic tissue

Days in culture	Percent positive				
	Vimentin	EpCAM	PCNA	Vim/ PCNA	EpCAM/ PCNA
0 (n = 7)	22.71 ± 4.93	87.57 ± 3.96	73.57 ± 8.42	22.00 ± 5.83	74.71 ± 8.34
14 (n = 7)	80.29 ± 3.07[b]	23.69 ± 7.88[b]	88.43 ± 2.91	80.43 ± 3.24[b]	26.57 ± 9.75[b]
21 (n = 3)	99.00 ± 0.0[b]	3.33 ± 0.88[b]	99.00 ± 0.0	99.00 ± 0.0[b]	4.00 ± 1.53[b]

Data represent means ± SE. Statistical analysis of differences between the groups was performed with STATA11 (StataCorp LP, College Station, TX) using one-way analysis of variance and Bonferroni post-hoc test. [b]$P < 0.01$ compared to Time 0. EpCAM: Epithelial cell adhesion molecule; PCNA: Proliferating cell nuclear antigen.

Table 2 Preservation of epithelial cells during culture in a defined epithelial medium

Condition	Percent positive	
	Vimentin	EpCAM
Epithelial Medium (n = 7)	44.87 ± 4.93[b]	24.10 ± 8.60
MSC Medium (n = 3)	95.67 ± 1.36[b]	17.43 ± 6.88

Data represent means ± SE. Statistical analysis of the differences between the groups was calculated with STATA11 (StataCorp LP, College Station, TX) using one-way analysis of variance and Bonferroni post-hoc test. [b]$P < 0.01$ for vimentin positive cells expanded in epithelial medium *vs* MSC medium. EpCAM: Epithelial cell adhesion molecule; MSC: Mesenchymal stem cell.

Epithelial cell phenotype is preserved when IDPT is cultured in defined pancreatic epithelial expansion medium

Our MSC expansion medium limits pancreatic epithelial cell growth *in vitro*[21,23,27]. We determined that sorted epithelial cells could expand and divide in MSC medium but vimentin$^+$ MSCs were still the predominating cell population (not shown). By reducing the FBS content from 10% to 0.5% and including growth factors known to promote epithelial cell survival under reduced serum conditions such as EGF, 3,5,3'-triiodo-l-thyronine and bovine brain extract[30-32] we were able to minimize MSC overgrowth and preserve the epithelial cell phenotype (Table 2). IDPT cells cultured in pancreatic epithelial expansion medium contained significantly less vimentin$^+$ cells (44.87% ± 4.93%) than cells expanded in MSC expansion medium (95.67% ± 1.36%; $P < 0.01$). Therefore, pancreatic epithelial expansion medium was used to trace cell fate and was supplemented for cell differentiation.

Culture in differentiation medium increases the proportion of PDX1 and insulin positive cells

To determine the progenitor cell content within the pancreatic epithelium, cells from dissociated islets and IDPT were seeded onto poly-l-lysine coated cover slips placed in 24 well plates with pancreatic epithelial expansion medium. Prior to differentiation cells were infected with, the PDX1-mRFP-Ins1-EGFP dual reporter, PDX1-mRFP or Ins1-EGFP single reporter lentivirus then characterized *via* IF staining and real-time PCR. Fluorescence was detected between 4-7 d post infection in both islet and IDPT preparations, at which time differentiation was initiated. Controls were infected but not differentiated. During islet cell differentiation, cell aggregates formed throughout the cell monolayer. Within these adherent aggregates PDX1$^+$ (RFP) and insulin$^+$ (EGFP) expressing cells were observed (Figure 2A). In addition, both single positive (PDX1$^+$ or INS$^+$) and double positive (PDX1$^+$ INS$^+$) cells were observed (Figure 2A). In undifferentiated conditions fewer positive cells and cell aggregates were observed (Figure 2B). When analyzing image fields, in 4/4 cell preparations approximately twice as many PDX1$^+$ and insulin$^+$ cells were observed in differentiated conditions (51.25 ± 17.24 mRFP and 28.13 ± 9.34 EGFP) versus undifferentiated conditions (31.75 ± 10.83 mRFP and 14.50 ± 4.03 EGFP) as determined by absolute cell counts. Relative quantification of gene expression by real-time PCR (Figure 2C) confirmed this observation and demonstrated that differentiated islet cells compared to starting islets had increased expression of PDX1 ($P < 0.05$), insulin ($P < 0.01$) PAX4 ($P < 0.05$) and RFX6 ($P < 0.01$). A similar pattern was observed in differentiated (Figure 3A) and undifferentiated (Figure 3B) wells of cultured IDPT infected with PDX1-mRFP or PDX1-mRFP-Ins1-EGFP, although much less PDX1 and insulin expression (not shown) was observed compared to islet cell cultures.

PDX1 progenitor cells are localized within the pancreatic epithelium

To identify cells within the differentiated cell aggregates that were PDX1$^+$, and to confirm expression after lentiviral infection, cells were characterized by IF staining (Figures 4 and 5) utilizing the following antibodies: EpCAM, vimentin, CK19, PDX1, glucagon, insulin, pancreatic polypeptide and somatostatin. Cells positive for glucagon, pancreatic polypeptide and somatostatin, still remained after 25 d in culture compared to controls although these cells were infrequent and did not express PDX1$^+$ (not shown). PDX1$^+$ cells were shown to be negative for vimentin staining (Figure 4) and CK19 (not shown). PDX1$^+$ cells did however, co-stain with EpCAM (Figure 4) demonstrating that in our experimental conditions PDX1$^+$ cells are localized to the epithelial cell population. PDX1 and insulin expression was verified by, insulin and PDX1 primary antibody staining (Figure 5). Nuclear and cytoplasmic PDX1 staining (Figure 5) was observed while insulin staining was confined to the cytoplasm (Figure 5).

DISCUSSION

Although several recent human studies that involve lineage tracing[13,14,20,26] have been conducted, the debate continues as to the origin of human β-cell progenitors. Sev-

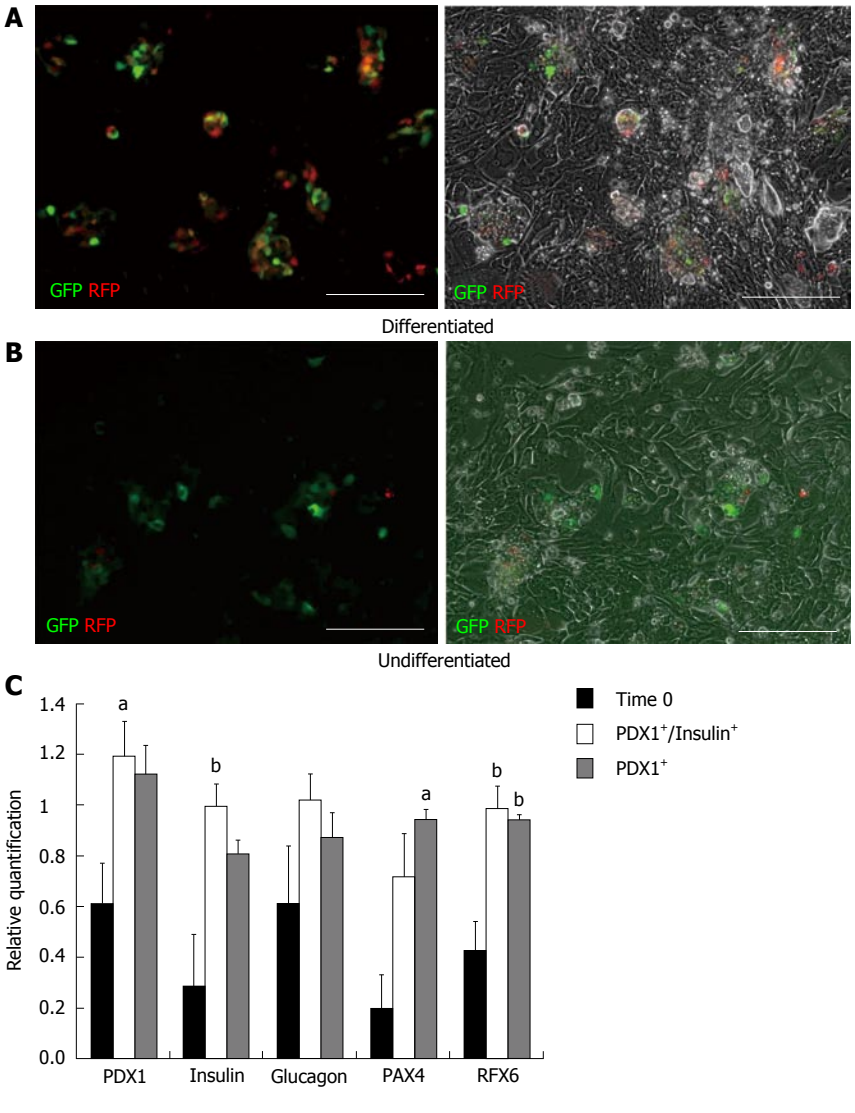


Figure 2 Comparison of differentiated and undifferentiated islet cells infected with PDX1-monomeric red fluorescent protein/insulin 1-enhanced green fluorescent protein. Islet cells cultured in differentiation medium (A) form adherent cell aggregates within the cell monolayer and insulin$^+$ (GFP) and PDX1$^+$ (RFP) expressing cells are localized within these cell aggregates. Islet cells cultured in control medium (B, undifferentiated) have fewer cell aggregates and insulin (GFP) and PDX1$^+$ (RFP) cells. Scale bars are 100 μm. Gene expression (C) of PDX1-monomeric red fluorescent protein (mRFP)/insulin-enhanced green fluorescent protein islet cells (PDX1$^+$ insulin$^+$, white bars; n = 7) and PDX1-mRFP infected islet cells (PDX1$^+$, grey bars; n = 4) post-differentiation compared to starting islet tissue (Time 0, black bars; n = 8) measured by real-time PCR. $^aP < 0.05$ and $^bP < 0.01$ compared to Time 0. RFP: Red fluorescent protein.

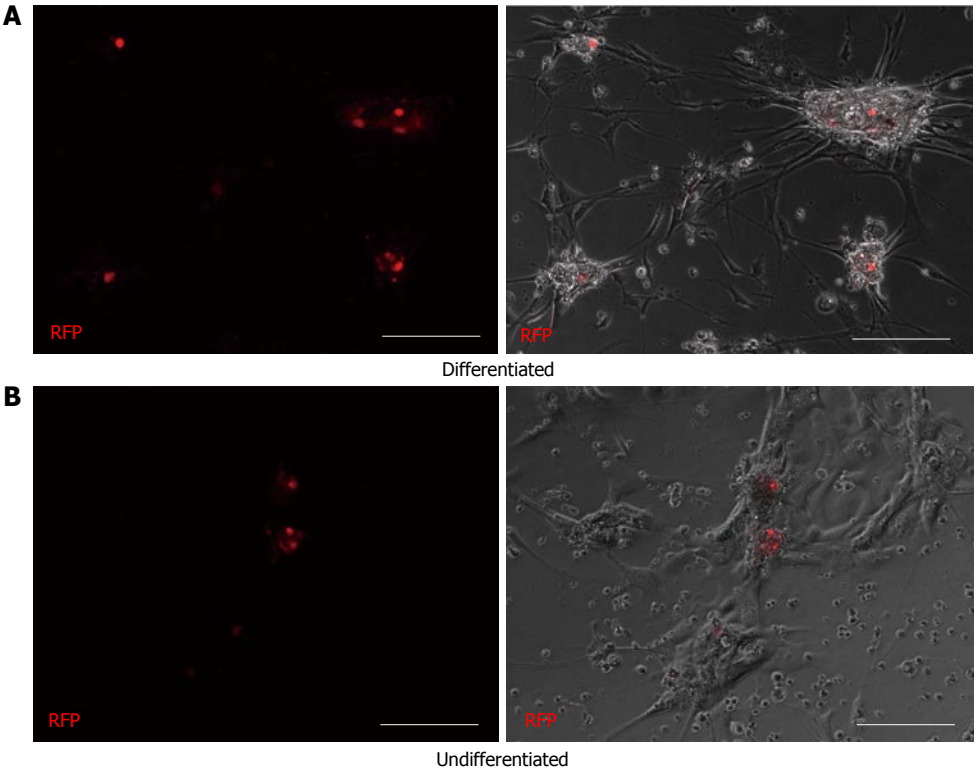


Figure 3 Comparison of differentiated (A) and undifferentiated (B) cells from the islet depleted pancreatic tissue infected with PDX1-monomeric red fluorescent protein. A few PDX1$^+$ cells (RFP) are visible within the adhered aggregates in the differentiated condition (A). Cell aggregates are absent in the undifferentiated cell conditions (B) and PDX1$^+$ cells are within the monolayer. Scale bars are 100 μm. RFP: Red fluorescent protein.

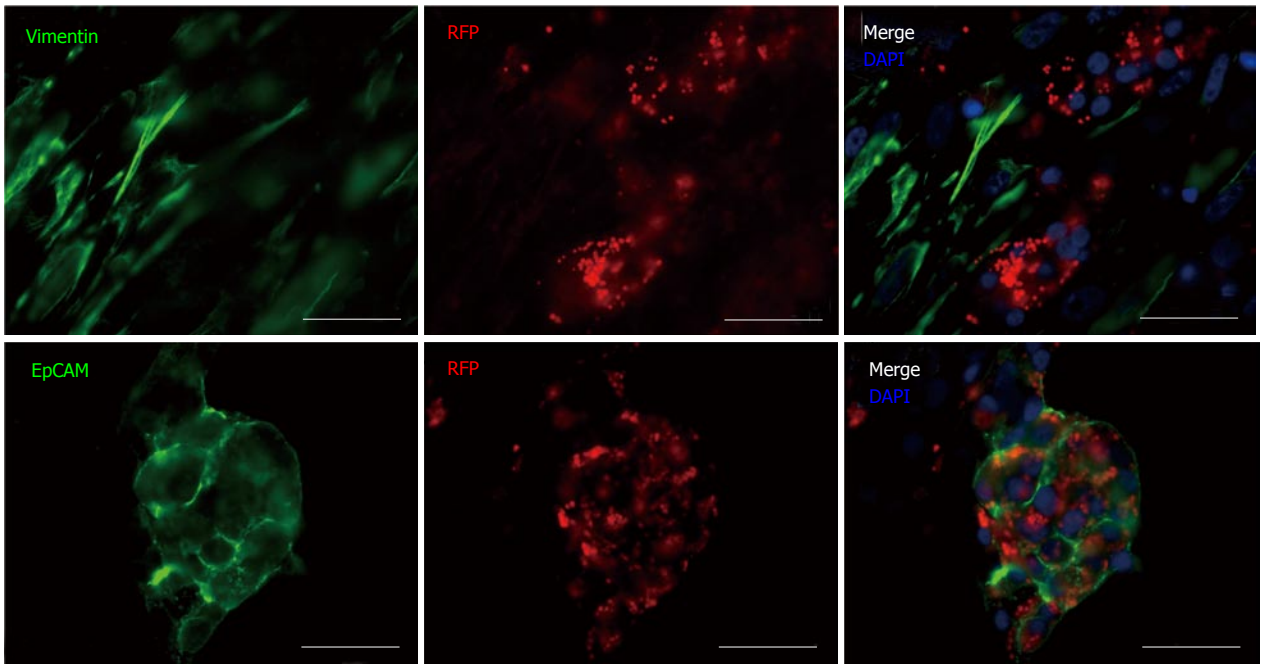


Figure 4 Immunofluorescence staining of differentiated PDX1- monomeric red fluorescent protein infected islet cells with primary antibodies to vimentin and epithelial cell adhesion molecule, with secondary antibodies conjugated to Alexa-488 (green). PDX1^{+} positive cells (RFP) are not co-localized with vimentin (merged), but are co-localized with epithelial cell adhesion molecule. Nuclei are stained blue with DAPI. Scale bars are 20 μm. RFP: Red fluorescent protein; DAPI: 4',6-diamidino-2-phenylindole.

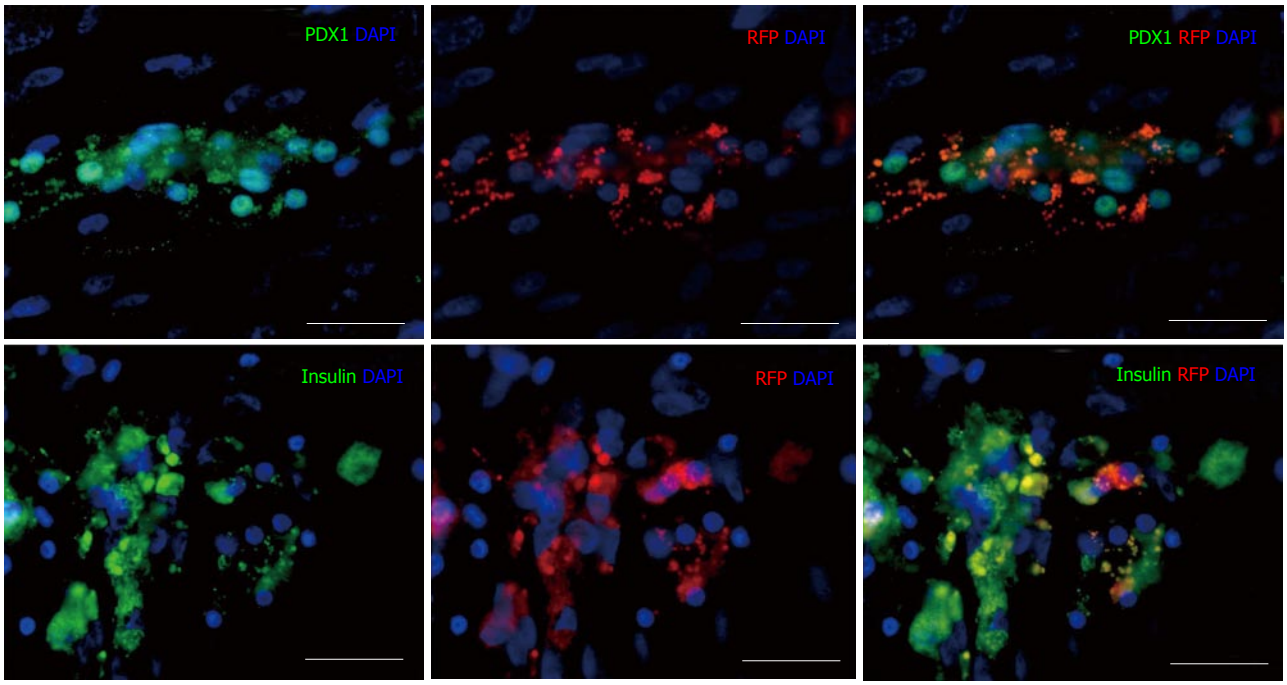


Figure 5 Immunofluorescence staining of differentiated PDX1-monomeric red fluorescent protein infected islets with primary PDX1 and insulin antibodies with secondary antibodies conjugated to Alexa-Fluor488 (green). PDX1^{+} cells (RFP) nuclei stain positive with PDX1/Alexa-488 antibody confirming lentiviral expression. Insulin/Alexa-Fluor488 (green) stains insulin within PDX1^{+} infected cells (yellow). Nuclei are stained blue with DAPI. Scale bars are 20 μm. RFP: Red fluorescent protein.

eral studies have proposed that β-cell progenitors can be derived from a mesenchymal cell intermediate *via* EMT. In our previous studies we were also able to expand MSCs from exocrine and endocrine cell explants[21,23]. We determined that when the culture medium contained 10% serum, pancreatic MSCs could be rapidly expanded from pancreatic cells and that these MSCs could be easily differentiated into mesoderm (bone, fat and cartilage)[21,28]. However, in those studies pancreatic MSCs could only be partially differentiated into endocrine cells and we were

unable to restore the epithelial cell phenotype or detect insulin protein by immunostaining[21,23]. We have since hypothesized that in our differentiation conditions it is the low percentage of epithelial cells, which remain after mesenchymal cell expansion, that respond favorably to our differentiation protocol[21,23] and not MSCs or a MSC intermediate. Thus, the dedifferentiation of islet or IDPT cells during long-term culture results in the loss of epithelial cells thus making this population difficult to follow *in vitro*.

In this study we utilized a reduced serum medium supplemented with growth factors known to support epithelial cells (EGF, 3,5,3'-triiodo-l-thyronine, bovine brain extract) and were able to minimize EMT and preserve the epithelial phenotype (Table 2). We determined that by preventing cell dedifferentiation and MSC overgrowth we could maintain the epithelial phenotype for greater than 25 d. If in fact epithelial mesenchymal transition[15,20] is a necessary process where progenitors or β-cells must dedifferentiate to replicate and then be redifferentiated into insulin producing cells then an alternate cell culture model must be employed. However, it is unclear if dedifferentiation, expansion then redifferentiation is a preferential model for increasing β-cells since β-cells generated in this model do not secrete physiologic levels of insulin compared to normal β-cells[15,20].

Lentiviral tracing[26] in combination with our pancreatic epithelial expansion medium, allowed us for the first time to observe morphological changes during *in vitro* differentiation without MSC overgrowth. Compared to lentiviral infected controls (undifferentiated) we have concluded that it is within the adherent differentiated cellular aggregates where PDX1$^+$ and insulin$^+$ cells reside. In addition, it is within these cellular aggregates where epithelial cells (EpCAM) that are PDX1$^+$ are located. More importantly we did not observe vimentin$^+$ or ductal epithelial cells (CK19$^+$) that were PDX1 or insulin positive within the cell aggregates. Although several citations have demonstrated that pancreatic ductal epithelial cells can generate new β-cells[9-12], we did not observe this in our differentiation model. In addition, the infrequent cells we observed that were pancreatic polypeptide, somatostatin, and glucagon positive were also negative for PDX1 and insulin. By relative quantification we observed increased gene expression of developmental transcription factors indicative of a β-cell progenitor[24-26]. Differentiated cells compared to starting islets had at least two fold higher expression of PDX1, insulin, PAX4 and RFX (Figure 2C).

In summary we describe a unique cell culture condition for long-term study of pancreatic epithelial progenitor cells that minimizes overgrowth of MSCs (vimentin$^+$) and dedifferentiation of epithelial cells through EMT. We confirmed that during differentiation *via* lentiviral reporting that PDX1$^+$ cells were confined to epithelial cell aggregates that form during differentiation and not vimentin$^+$ cells suggesting that EMT is not a mechanism for generating pancreatic progenitor cells. Future studies will be to determine overall function of differentiated cells.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank the staff of the Edmonton Clinical Islet Transplant Program (Alberta Health Services) for providing islets and IDPT tissue, and Dr. James D. Johnson and Marta Szabat for providing lentiviral constructs. We thank Sheena Lesyk, Mohammed Ahmed, Alana Espheter, Lynnette Elder and Bethany Ostrowerka for technical assistance.

COMMENTS

Background

Islet transplantation is an attractive alternative to daily insulin injections. Identifying and understanding the origin of a potential human β-cell progenitor could alleviate the current shortage of donor islets and contribute to the overall knowledge of β-cell regeneration. However, the study of β-cell progenitors is fraught with controversy, as several conflicting models and mechanisms describing the origin and existence of these progenitor cells have been proposed.

Research frontiers

A popular model describing the origin of human β-cell progenitors that has been proposed is β-cell dedifferentiation and the expansion of a mesenchymal stem cell (MSC) intermediate *via* epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT). However, there has been limited success when redifferentiating these mesenchymal cells back into functional β-cells.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The authors previously demonstrated that MSCs, could be expanded 12-fold from human islet depleted pancreatic tissue that remained following islet isolation and demonstrated that these pancreatic MSCs could be partially differentiated into islet-like cells *in vitro*. However, in a follow up study the authors could not restore an epithelial phenotype or generate functional endocrine cells. The authors determined that the few remaining epithelial cells after MSC expansion were the cells that responded to the authors differentiation protocol. In these culture conditions MSC overgrowth prevented pancreatic epithelial progenitor expansion and differentiation. In this study the authors report that by using a novel pancreatic epithelial medium, MSC expansion and epithelial cell dedifferentiation can be minimized and pancreatic epithelial cell progenitors can be successfully expanded and differentiated.

Applications

This study demonstrates that β-cell progenitors reside in the pancreatic epithelium and that EMT should be inhibited *in vitro* to successfully expand and differentiate these progenitors. The authors conclude that EMT is not a mechanism for generating pancreatic progenitor cells.

Terminology

EMT occurs *in vitro* when epithelial cells de-differentiate and lose their phenotype. The resulting cells are MSCs otherwise known as multi-potent stromal cells.

Peer review

The authors describe a new method that could in the future allow for *in vitro* generation of insulin-producing cells. The work is well done and appropriately presented.

REFERENCES

1 **Ryan EA**, Paty BW, Senior PA, Bigam D, Alfadhli E, Kneteman NM, Lakey JR, Shapiro AM. Five-year follow-up after clinical islet transplantation. *Diabetes* 2005; **54**: 2060-2069 [PMID: 15983207 DOI: 10.2337/diabetes.54.7.2060]

2 **Street CN**, Lakey JR, Shapiro AM, Imes S, Rajotte RV, Ryan EA, Lyon JG, Kin T, Avila J, Tsujimura T, Korbutt GS. Islet graft assessment in the Edmonton Protocol: implications for predicting long-term clinical outcome. *Diabetes* 2004; **53**: 3107-3114 [PMID: 15561940 DOI: 10.2337/diabetes.53.12.3107]

3 **Korsgren O**, Lundgren T, Felldin M, Foss A, Isaksson B, Permert J, Persson NH, Rafael E, Rydén M, Salmela K, Tibell A, Tufveson G, Nilsson B. Optimising islet engraft-

ment is critical for successful clinical islet transplantation. *Diabetologia* 2008; **51**: 227-232 [PMID: 18040664 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-007-0868-9]

4 **Dor Y**, Brown J, Martinez OI, Melton DA. Adult pancreatic beta-cells are formed by self-duplication rather than stem-cell differentiation. *Nature* 2004; **429**: 41-46 [PMID: 15129273 DOI: 10.1038/nature02520]

5 **Xu X**, D'Hoker J, Stangé G, Bonné S, De Leu N, Xiao X, Van de Casteele M, Mellitzer G, Ling Z, Pipeleers D, Bouwens L, Scharfmann R, Gradwohl G, Heimberg H. Beta cells can be generated from endogenous progenitors in injured adult mouse pancreas. *Cell* 2008; **132**: 197-207 [PMID: 18243096 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2007.12.015]

6 **Solar M**, Cardalda C, Houbracken I, Martín M, Maestro MA, De Medts N, Xu X, Grau V, Heimberg H, Bouwens L, Ferrer J. Pancreatic exocrine duct cells give rise to insulin-producing beta cells during embryogenesis but not after birth. *Dev Cell* 2009; **17**: 849-860 [PMID: 20059954 DOI: 10.1016/j.devcel.2009.11.003]

7 **Baeyens L**, De Breuck S, Lardon J, Mfopou JK, Rooman I, Bouwens L. In vitro generation of insulin-producing beta cells from adult exocrine pancreatic cells. *Diabetologia* 2005; **48**: 49-57 [PMID: 15616797 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-004-1606-1]

8 **Lipsett MA**, Castellarin ML, Rosenberg L. Acinar plasticity: development of a novel in vitro model to study human acinar-to-duct-to-islet differentiation. *Pancreas* 2007; **34**: 452-457 [PMID: 17446845 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e3180335c80]

9 **Bonner-Weir S**, Taneja M, Weir GC, Tatarkiewicz K, Song KH, Sharma A, O'Neil JJ. In vitro cultivation of human islets from expanded ductal tissue. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2000; **97**: 7999-8004 [PMID: 10884429 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.97.14.7999]

10 **Heremans Y**, Van De Casteele M, in't Veld P, Gradwohl G, Serup P, Madsen O, Pipeleers D, Heimberg H. Recapitulation of embryonic neuroendocrine differentiation in adult human pancreatic duct cells expressing neurogenin 3. *J Cell Biol* 2002; **159**: 303-312 [PMID: 12403815 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.200203074]

11 **Yatoh S**, Dodge R, Akashi T, Omer A, Sharma A, Weir GC, Bonner-Weir S. Differentiation of affinity-purified human pancreatic duct cells to beta-cells. *Diabetes* 2007; **56**: 1802-1809 [PMID: 17473224 DOI: 10.2337/db06-1670]

12 **Inada A**, Nienaber C, Katsuta H, Fujitani Y, Levine J, Morita R, Sharma A, Bonner-Weir S. Carbonic anhydrase II-positive pancreatic cells are progenitors for both endocrine and exocrine pancreas after birth. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 19915-19919 [PMID: 19052237 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0805803105]

13 **Smukler SR**, Arntfield ME, Razavi R, Bikopoulos G, Karpowicz P, Seaberg R, Dai F, Lee S, Ahrens R, Fraser PE, Wheeler MB, van der Kooy D. The adult mouse and human pancreas contain rare multipotent stem cells that express insulin. *Cell Stem Cell* 2011; **8**: 281-293 [PMID: 21362568 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2011.01.015]

14 **White MG**, Al-Turaifi HR, Holliman GN, Aldibbiat A, Mahmoud A, Shaw JA. Pluripotency-associated stem cell marker expression in proliferative cell cultures derived from adult human pancreas. *J Endocrinol* 2011; **211**: 169-176 [PMID: 21852325 DOI: 10.1530/JOE-11-0123]

15 **Gershengorn MC**, Hardikar AA, Wei C, Geras-Raaka E, Marcus-Samuels B, Raaka BM. Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition generates proliferative human islet precursor cells. *Science* 2004; **306**: 2261-2264 [PMID: 15564314 DOI: 10.1126/science.1101968]

16 **Eberhardt M**, Salmon P, von Mach MA, Hengstler JG, Brulport M, Linscheid P, Seboek D, Oberholzer J, Barbero A, Martin I, Müller B, Trono D, Zulewski H. Multipotential nestin and Isl-1 positive mesenchymal stem cells isolated from human pancreatic islets. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2006; **345**: 1167-1176 [PMID: 16713999 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2006.05.016]

17 **Davani B**, Ariely S, Ikonomou L, Oron Y, Gershengorn MC. Human islet-derived precursor cells can cycle between epithelial clusters and mesenchymal phenotypes. *J Cell Mol Med* 2009; **13**: 2570-2581 [PMID: 19175683 DOI: 10.1111/j.1582-4934.2008.00570.x]

18 **Russ HA**, Bar Y, Ravassard P, Efrat S. In vitro proliferation of cells derived from adult human beta-cells revealed by cell-lineage tracing. *Diabetes* 2008; **57**: 1575-1583 [PMID: 18316362 DOI: 10.2337/db07-1283]

19 **Russ HA**, Ravassard P, Kerr-Conte J, Pattou F, Efrat S. Epithelial-mesenchymal transition in cells expanded in vitro from lineage-traced adult human pancreatic beta cells. *PLoS One* 2009; **4**: e6417 [PMID: 19641613 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0006417]

20 **Russ HA**, Sintov E, Anker-Kitai L, Friedman O, Lenz A, Toren G, Farhy C, Pasmanik-Chor M, Oron-Karni V, Ravassard P, Efrat S. Insulin-producing cells generated from dedifferentiated human pancreatic beta cells expanded in vitro. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e25566 [PMID: 21984932 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0025566]

21 **Seeberger KL**, Dufour JM, Shapiro AM, Lakey JR, Rajotte RV, Korbutt GS. Expansion of mesenchymal stem cells from human pancreatic ductal epithelium. *Lab Invest* 2006; **86**: 141-153 [PMID: 16402034 DOI: 10.1038/labinvest.3700377]

22 **Horwitz EM**, Le Blanc K, Dominici M, Mueller I, Slaper-Cortenbach I, Marini FC, Deans RJ, Krause DS, Keating A. Clarification of the nomenclature for MSC: The International Society for Cellular Therapy position statement. *Cytotherapy* 2005; **7**: 393-395 [PMID: 16236628 DOI: 10.1080/14653240500319234]

23 **Seeberger KL**, Eshpeter A, Rajotte RV, Korbutt GS. Epithelial cells within the human pancreas do not coexpress mesenchymal antigens: epithelial-mesenchymal transition is an artifact of cell culture. *Lab Invest* 2009; **89**: 110-121 [PMID: 19079324 DOI: 10.1038/labinvest.2008.122]

24 **Soyer J**, Flasse L, Raffelsberger W, Beucher A, Orvain C, Peers B, Ravassard P, Vermot J, Voz ML, Mellitzer G, Gradwohl G. Rfx6 is an Ngn3-dependent winged helix transcription factor required for pancreatic islet cell development. *Development* 2010; **137**: 203-212 [PMID: 20040487 DOI: 10.1242/dev.041673]

25 **Smith SB**, Qu HQ, Taleb N, Kishimoto NY, Scheel DW, Lu Y, Patch AM, Grabs R, Wang J, Lynn FC, Miyatsuka T, Mitchell J, Seerke R, Désir J, Vanden Eijnden S, Abramowicz M, Kacet N, Weill J, Renard ME, Gentile M, Hansen I, Dewar K, Hattersley AT, Wang R, Wilson ME, Johnson JD, Polychronakos C, German MS. Rfx6 directs islet formation and insulin production in mice and humans. *Nature* 2010; **463**: 775-780 [PMID: 20148032 DOI: 10.1038/nature08748]

26 **Szabat M**, Luciani DS, Piret JM, Johnson JD. Maturation of adult beta-cells revealed using a Pdx1/insulin dual-reporter lentivirus. *Endocrinology* 2009; **150**: 1627-1635 [PMID: 19095744 DOI: 10.1210/en.2008-1224]

27 **Fox JE**, Seeberger K, Dai XQ, Lyon J, Spigelman AF, Kolic J, Hajmrle C, Joseph JW, Kin T, Shapiro AM, Korbutt G, MacDonald PE. Functional plasticity of the human infant β-cell exocytotic phenotype. *Endocrinology* 2013; **154**: 1392-1399 [PMID: 23449893 DOI: 10.1210/en.2012-1934]

28 **Seeberger KL**, Eshpeter A, Korbutt GS. Isolation and culture of human multipotent stromal cells from the pancreas. *Methods Mol Biol* 2011; **698**: 123-140 [PMID: 21431515 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-60761-999-4_10]

29 **Abramoff MD**, Magalhaes PJ, Ram SJ. Image processing with Image. *J Biophotonics* 2004; **11**: 36-42

30 **Misiti S**, Anastasi E, Sciacchitano S, Verga Falzacappa C, Panacchia L, Bucci B, Khouri D, D'Acquarica I, Brunetti E, Di Mario U, Toscano V, Perfetti R. 3,5,3'-Triiodo-L-thyronine enhances the differentiation of a human pancreatic duct cell line (hPANC-1) towards a beta-cell-Like phenotype. *J Cell Physiol* 2005; **204**: 286-296 [PMID: 15648097 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.20293]

31 **Gutierrez-Barrera AM**, Menter DG, Abbruzzese JL, Reddy SA. Establishment of three-dimensional cultures of human pancreatic duct epithelial cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2007; **358**: 698-703 [PMID: 17512909 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2007.04.166]

32 **Agbunag C**, Lee KE, Buontempo S, Bar-Sagi D. Pancreatic duct epithelial cell isolation and cultivation in two-dimensional and three-dimensional culture systems. *Methods Enzymol* 2006; **407**: 703-710 [PMID: 16757363 DOI: 10.1016/S0076-6879(05)07055-2]

P- Reviewers: Zoller M, Vaidya MM
S- Editor: Song XX **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.69

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 69-75
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

BRIEF ARTICLE

Starting glargine in insulin-naïve type 2 diabetic patients based on body mass index is safe

Denise R Franco, Juliana Baptista, Fatima RM Abreu, Risoneide B Batista, Freddy G Eliaschewitz

Denise R Franco, Juliana Baptista, Fatima RM Abreu, Risoneide B Batista, Freddy G Eliaschewitz, Medical Department, Clinical Research Center (CPCLIN), São Paulo 01244-030, Brazil
Denise R Franco, Associação do Diabetes Brazil (ADJ), São Paulo 05003-010, Brazil
Freddy G Eliaschewitz, Hospital Israelita Albert Einstein, São Paulo 05652-000, Brazil
Author contributions: Franco DR designed research, performed research, analyzed data and wrote the paper; Baptista J collected the data; Abreu FRM performed research; Batista RB performed research; Eliaschewitz FG designed research, performed research, analyzed data and wrote the paper.
Supported by Sanofi-Aventis Brazil
Correspondence to: Denise R Franco, MD, Medical Department, Clinical Research Center (CPCLIN), Rua Goias 193, São Paulo 01244-030, Brazil. d9franco@terra.com.br
Telephone: +55-119-82694700 Fax: +55-112-7110298
Received: August 5, 2013 Revised: October 21, 2013
Accepted: January 15, 2014
Published online: February 15, 2014

Abstract

AIM: To evaluate the safety of four insulin titration algorithms in a homogeneous population of insulin-naïve type 2 diabetic patients.

METHODS: We conducted a 24-wk, open, single-center study with 92 insulin-naïve type 2 diabetes patients who failed treatment with one or two oral drugs. The patients were randomized to one of the four following algorithms: LANMET (n = 26) and LANMET PLUS (n = 22) algorithms, whose patients received a fixed initial insulin dose of 10 U, and DeGold (n = 23) and DeGold PLUS (n = 21) algorithms, whose patients' initial insulin dose was based on their body mass index (BMI). In addition, patients in the PLUS groups had their insulin titrated twice a week from 2 to 8 U. In the other two groups, the titration was also performed also twice a week, but in a fixed increments of 2 U. The target fasting glucose levels for both groups was 100 mg/dL.

RESULTS: There was no significant difference in efficacy parameters. There was no significant difference when comparing moderate hypoglycemia events in algorithms starting with a 10 U fixed dose and algorithms based on BMI. However, there was a significant increase in moderate hypoglycemia events among the PLUS treated patients when the LANMET and DeGold algorithms were compared with the 2 fast-titration PLUS algorithms. We observed 12 hypoglycemia events in the first group, which corresponded to 0.94 events/patient per year, and we observed 42 events in the second group, which corresponded to 2.81 events/patient per year (P < 0.037). No further significant differences were observed when other comparisons between the algorithms were carried out.

CONCLUSION: Starting insulin glargine based on BMI is safe, but fast titration algorithms increase the risk of moderate hypoglycemia.

Key words: Type 2 diabetes; Insulin glargine; Basal insulin; Hypoglycemia; Titration algorithms

Core tip: To start insulin therapy in insulin naïve type 2 diabetes patients, a long-acting basal insulin, such as insulin glargine, is added once a day. The majority of algorithms determine insulin titration according to fasting plasma glucose levels, but the dosage differs at the initial dose, frequency and speed of adjustments. It is difficult to compare the different algorithms employed in trials with populations of different socio-economic strata and variable access to educational materials. Here, we compared the safety of different titration algorithms in a population that was homogeneous in terms of socio-economic strata and with the same degree of education in diabetes.

Franco DR, Baptista J, Abreu FRM, Batista RB, Eliaschewitz

FG. Starting glargine in insulin-naïve type 2 diabetic patients based on body mass index is safe. *World J Diabetes* 2014; 5(1): 69-75 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/full/v5/i1/69.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.69

INTRODUCTION

Type 2 diabetes is characterized by insulin resistance and is associated with the incremental loss of pancreatic beta cell mass and/or function[1]. Patients who are initially capable of maintaining a good metabolic control using oral anti-diabetes drugs (OADs) frequently need to add insulin to their treatment over time[2]. The simplest way to begin insulin therapy is to add a long-acting basal insulin, such as insulin glargine, once per day[3].

Basal insulin therapy is an efficient glycemia-lowering treatment, provided it is delivered in the appropriate doses. Therefore, it must be carefully titrated until patients achieve the established fasting plasma glucose goal (FPG)[4]. Several titration algorithms have been validated in clinical trials, and they can be used to guide basal insulin dose adjustments. Most algorithms determine insulin titration according to FPG levels, but differ in the initial insulin dose, frequency, and speed of dose adjustments[5-7]. A new algorithm (DeGold) has been recently described, and it considers the degree of insulin resistance due to obesity and recommends initial doses ranging from 0.2 to 0.35 U/kg according to the patient's body mass index (BMI)[8].

The initial insulin dose is important for predicting whether a target can be reached and how long titration will take[4] before treatment is started. Treatment compliance may be jeopardized if the treatment period is too long and if patients do not see any significant changes in their FPG levels. The frequency and speed at which insulin doses are adjusted also vary according to the chosen algorithm. For example, in the AT.LANTUS trial with insulin Glargine, titration from 2 to 8 U weekly according to the FPG that was performed by physicians was compared to the increment of 2 U every 3 d until the FPG reached 100 mg/dL that was performed by the patients themselves. The results showed that titration performed by patients could be more effective in achieving A1C targets[6]. In the Canadian INSIGHT Trial, patients titrated their insulin Glargine dose by adding 1 U/d until they reached the target of 100 mg/dL FPG[5].

Provided it is employed correctly according to the "Treat to Target" concept, any algorithm can bring fasting glucose levels to normal and allow patients who are not in need of additional prandial therapy, like rapid acting insulin, to achieve the desired glycated hemoglobin (A1C) values[7].

Hypoglycemia may also be a factor in the achievement of a glycemic target. The occurrence of hypoglycemia events is not solely due to the effects caused by exogenous insulin[9] but is also fundamentally linked to other factors, including the level of education of diabetic patients, especially in regard to compliance to treatment and protective measures against hypoglycemia[10]. It is difficult to compare the efficacy and the safety of all different algorithms used in trials that have populations belonging to different socioeconomic levels and having different access to educative measures[4,7,10]. As such, we decided to compare the safety of different titration algorithms in a population that was homogeneous in terms of socioeconomic level and level of education in diabetes.

The main objective of the study was to evaluate the safety of four insulin glargine titration algorithms applied to a homogeneous sample of insulin-naïve type 2 diabetes patients and to compare the frequency of severe and moderate hypoglycemia (glycaemia < 56 mg/dL) events, the frequency of nocturnal symptomatic hypoglycemia, total number of hypoglycemic events, and serious adverse events. The efficacy parameters analyzed for each algorithm were the changes in A1C from baseline to study end, changes in FPG levels, weight variation during the study, insulin doses, time needed to reach the FPG target, and the proportion of patients who reached an A1C target between 7% and 7.5%, and below 7%.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Population sample and experimental design

This was a 24-wk, single-centered, randomized, open study. We screened 125 patients diagnosed with type 2 diabetes, > 18 years old and BMI < 40 kg/m^2 who had been on stable treatment with one or two OADs for more than 3 mo, and A1C between 7% and 12%. The main criteria for exclusion were as follows: chronic kidney disease, liver disease with transaminases ⩾ 2.5 times the normal value, and any pathology requiring systemic corticosteroid treatment. A total of 33 patients were excluded because their A1C was above threshold, their hepatic enzymes were above normal, or they had moderate renal failure.

The study was approved by the local institucional review board and was conducted according to the Helsinki Declaration and the GCP-ICH. Informed consent was obtained from all patients. All patients were living in the area outside of São Paulo city, had the same socioeconomic background and were insulin treatment naïve. All patients attended the same education sessions on diabetes, and lessons were always given by the same person.

Comparisons between the algorithms were made using ANOVA/Kruskal-Wallis and Student's *t* tests. The data on patients who completed the protocol were used, and all patients who received at least one dose of insulin to evaluate data on safety parameters were included.

The demographic data of the randomized patients are shown on Table 1. Population homogeneity was tested and showed the groups were similar in terms of age, weight, BMI, time they have had diabetes for, initial A1C level, and previous treatment with OADs. However, the proportion of M/F gender was significantly different in the LANMET PLUS ($P < 0.047$) group.

After 4 wk of a run-in period, 92 patients were ran-

Table 1 Characteristics of the patient population, as grouped according to the four algorithms

	n	Gender	Age (yr)	Weight (kg)	BMI (kg/m^2)	Duration (yr)	Baseline A1C	Baseline FPG (mg/dL)	Previous treatment
Fixed titration 2/2 U									
LANMET	26	8 M	55.0 ± 10	78 ± 16.6	30.7 ± 4.95	8 ± 4.23	9.39% ± 1.67%	193.0 ± 59.4	2 OAD (20) 1 OAD (6)
Variable titration									
LANMET PLUS	22	6 M	52.3 ± 7.7	70.6 ± 13	27.8 ± 4.7	7.8 ± 3.8	9.35% ± 1.34%	179.4 ± 51.4	2 OAD (21) 1 OAD (1)
Fixed titration 2/2 U									
DeGold	23	14 M	54.6 ± 8	78.3 ± 13.5	28.8 ± 4.4	10.2 ± 7.1	9.21% ± 1.30%	196.6 ± 54.8	2 OAD (19) 1 OAD (4)
Variable titration									
DeGold PLUS	21	12 M	53.8 ± 7.6	79.3 ± 15.9	29.5 ± 4.4	9.8 ± 5.4	9.61% ± 1.69%	196.1 ± 53.4	2 OAD (19) 1 OAD (2)

OAD: Oral anti-diabetes drug; FPG: Fasting plasma glucose; BMI: Body mass index.

Table 2 Treatment algorithms used in this study

Initial dose	BMI	Algorithms			
		LANMET fixed	LANMETPlus	DeGold fixed	DeGoldPlus
Fixed initial dose in U	n.a.	10		10	
Variable dose according to BMI (kg/m^2) in U/kg	< 26		0.2		0.2
	26 < 30		0.25		0.25
	30 < 35		0.3		0.3
	> 35		0.35		0.35
Insulin adjustment	FPG				
Fixed Titration twice/week in U		2	2		
Variable titration according to FPG (mg/dL) twice/week in U	< 100			0	0
	101 < 120			-2	-2
	121 < 140			2	2
	141 < 180			4	4
	> 180			-2	-2

FPG: Fasting plasma glucose; BMI: Body mass index.

domly distributed to the four algorithms and were treated for the next 16 wk. During this period, 10 visits were scheduled and telephone monitoring was performed by the investigators between visits. A follow-up visit was performed 4 wk after the completion of the study. Three patients withdrew their informed consent. No patients dropped out due to hypoglycemia or any other adverse events.

Most patients were being treated with metformin and sulfonylurea, except for one patient in the DeGold PLUS group who received nateglinide and metformin, and another one in the LANMET PLUS group who received rosiglitazone and metformin. Thirteen patients were on monotherapy, of which seven were on sulfonylurea and six were on metformin. All patients were kept solely either on metformin 2 g/d or on the maximum tolerated dose during the treatment period.

Treatment algorithms

LANMET and LANMET PLUS used the same initial Insulin Glargine dose of 10 U, while DeGold and DeGold PLUS used an initial insulin Glargine dose based on BMI, as shown on Table 2. For the LANMET and DeGold algorithms, the insulin doses were increased by 2 U, twice a week, to reach the FPG target of 100 mg/dL. For LANMET Plus and DeGold Plus, titration was performed by increasing insulin doses, from 2 to 8 U total, twice a week, according to the FPG.

Patients administered the insulin at bedtime and adjusted the doses under the supervision of a person over the phone. In all algorithms, the titration of insulin doses was delayed and an immediate reduction of the insulin dose was recommended if hypoglycemia < 70 mg/dL. Insulin titration continued in all algorithms until the targeted FPG, which was between 80 and 100 mg/dL, was reached. The insulin dose was then maintained and considered adequate when at least 50% of the subsequent FPG measurements corresponded to the aimed target.

Rescue therapy with rapid acting insulin was used on one patient who presented with persistent A1C > 8%, even though he had his FPG on target for more than 6 wk.

The patients measured their capillary FPG daily and were instructed to repeat the measurements if they started having symptoms suggestive of hypoglycemia. When necessary, the mean values of 3 d of capillary FPG were used to calculate a new insulin dose.

Classification of hypoglycemia

Severe hypoglycemia: Severe hypoglycemia was defined as an event requiring third party assistance and glucose levels below 30 mg/dL, or if the patient recovered after receiving oral carbohydrates, intravenous glucose, or glucagon.

Symptomatic hypoglycemia: Symptomatic hypoglycemia was defined as an event where the patient presented with symptoms of hypoglycemia, but responded to oral carbohydrate ingestion or had a glycemia < 70 mg/dL (mild) or < 56 mg/dL (moderate).

Asymptomatic hypoglycemia: Asymptomatic hypoglycemia was defined as an event without any hypoglycemia symptoms, but glucose levels below 70 mg/dL.

Asymptomatic nocturnal hypoglycemia: Asymptomatic nocturnal hypoglycemia was determined when glycemia under 70 mg/dL was detected before breakfast.

Table 3 Treatment efficacy data *n* (%)

	LANMET	LANMET PLUS	DeGold	DeGold PLUS
Initial insulin dose (U)	10.0 ± 0	10.0 ± 0	21.0 ± 7.3	18.3 ± 7.0
Initial insulin dose (U/kg)	0.13 ± 0.02	0.13 ± 0.03	0.26 ± 0.05	0.25 ± 0.05
Final insulin dose (U)	41.65 ± 14.00	87.00 ± 26.87	54.68 ± 21.63	48.19 ± 38.50
Final insulin dose (U/kg)	0.54 ± 0.20	0.59% ± 0.27%	0.67% ± 0.24%	0.65% ± 0.52%
Baseline A1C	9.39% ± 1.67%	9.35% ± 1.34%	9.21% ± 1.30%	9.61% ± 1.69%
Final A1C	7.36% ± 1.32%	7.32% ± 0.67%	6.82% ± 0.70%	7.38% ± 0.95%
Reduction in A1C	2.02% ± 1.60%	2.02% ± 1.17%	2.48% ± 1.23%	2.23% ± 1.69%
Proportion of patients reaching FPG target	19/26 (73)	16/20 (80)	22/23 (95)	20/21 (95)
Proportion of patients reaching A1C ⩽ 7.5%	17/26 (65)	13/20 (65)	20/23 (87)	13/21 (62)
Proportion of patients reaching A1C ⩽ 7.0%	11/26 (42)	5/20 (25)	16/23 (69)	7/21 (33)
Duration of titration to reach FPG target (d)	28 ± 31	15 ± 19	22 ± 20	20 ± 17
Weight variation (kg)	0.276 ± 2.94	1.190 ± 2.430	0.954 ± 2.590	1.630 ± 2.500
Final FPG (mg/dL)	119.4 ± 36.2	109.0 ± 28.7	106.6 ± 18.0	107.6 ± 17.3

FPG: Fasting plasma glucose.

Table 4 Hypoglycemia events *n* (%)

	LANMET	LANMET PLUS	DeGold	DeGold PLUS	LANMET and LANMET PLUS	DeGold and DeGold PLUS	LANMET and DeGold	LANMET PLUS and DeGold PLUS
					Fixed initial dose	Variable initial dose	Fixed titration	Variable titration
Patients with moderate or severe hypoglycemia (*n*)	7 (27)	6 (30)	5 (22)	5 (23)	13 (28)	10 (23)	12 (25)	11 (27)
Number of moderate or severe hypoglycemia events	10	22	5	20	32	25	15	42
Patients with symptomatic night hypoglycemia (*n*)	13 (50)	4 (15)	5 (22)	4 (19)	17 (37)	9 (20)	18 (37)	8 (19)
Number of nocturnal symptomatic hypoglycemia events	46	16	9	8	62	17	31	25
Patients presenting any type of hypoglycemia (*n*)	16 (61)	14 (70)	15 (68)	12 (57)	30 (65)	27 (62)	31 (64)	26 (60)
Number of any type of hypoglycemia events	113	107	48	111	220	159	157	155

Symptomatic nocturnal hypoglycemia: Symptomatic nocturnal hypoglycemia was defined when hypoglycemia occurred during sleep, after the bedtime insulin dose and before wakening. In this case, hypoglycemia was classified as mild (plasma glucose > 56 mg/dL), moderate (36 mg/dL < plasma glucose < 56 mg/dL) or severe (plasma glucose < 36 mg/dL).

The evaluation of insulin titration was based on the patients' diaries and glycemia levels at every visit. Treatment compliance was evaluated based on the aforementioned information.

RESULTS

Table 3 shows insulin glargine doses in U and U/kg, efficacy parameters, namely FPG and A1C at the end of the study, A1C decrease with respect to baseline value, proportion of patients reaching FPG target (A1C < 7.5% or < 7%), and mean titration time to reach the FPG target in the various groups.

There was no significant difference between the groups in the time required to achieve the target. The safety parameters are shown in Table 4. A unique severe hypoglycemia event (glycaemia < 36 mg/dL) occurred after a prolonged fasting period in a patient randomized according to the DeGold PLUS algorithm. No other severe adverse events occurred.

In a pooled analysis, there was no significant difference when comparing moderate hypoglycemia events in algorithms starting with a 10 U fixed dose with algorithms with BMI variation. However, when we compared patients (n = 46) whose titration increment was 2 U twice a week with patients (n = 43) whose titration varied according to FPG, we observed a clear increase in the number of hypoglycemia events in the second group. We observed 12 hypoglycemia events in the first group, which corresponded to 0.94 events/patient per year, and we observed 42 events in the second group, which corresponded to 2.81 events/patient per year (P < 0.037, Figure 1).

There were no other significant differences in the further comparisons between the algorithms.

DISCUSSION

Titration algorithms are important tools for maximizing the benefits of insulin therapy for metabolic control. Many algorithms have been proposed as guides for achieving metabolic control with basal insulin therapy. These algorithms differ in their initial recommended dos-

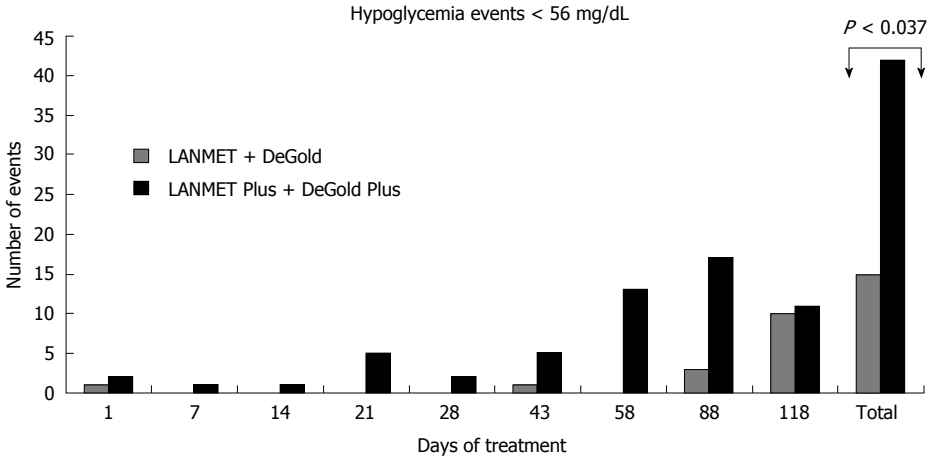


Figure 1 The graphic represents the number of moderate hypoglycemic events occurred throughout the study. The number of hypoglycemia events that occurred in the first 2 wk of treatment was very low. Algorithms that titration increment varied according fasting plasma glucose, had a clear increase in the number of hypoglycemia events.

es, and in the frequency and speed of basal insulin dose adjustments[5,6,11,12]. All were conceived based on the treat-to-target concept, thus becoming comparable in efficiency if correctly used. However, because these algorithms are being used in different populations, it is difficult to compare their safety based on the risk of hypoglycemia because it is unclear whether differences in rates of hypoglycemia are truly due to the algorithm itself or to the patients' varying levels of education. In this study, we evaluated the efficacy and safety of four insulin glargine titration algorithms in a highly homogeneous population to compare the impact of both the initial dose and the titration regimen on hypoglycemia events.

Titration was successfully performed in all groups. The DeGold and DeGold PLUS algorithms used a significantly higher initial insulin doses compared to the other two algorithms, which used a 10 U fixed initial dose. Nevertheless, at the end of the study, the doses were similar in all four groups. The doses were slightly higher (0.67 U/kg) in the DeGold groups, but were comparable to previously reported values (0.69 U/kg) in the LANMET study[11].

As expected, all four algorithms resulted in a decrease in FPG and A1C values, and 85% of all patients actually reached the FPG target and 39% of the patients achieved an A1C < 7% after 18 wk of treatment. This proportion is lower than the 60% reported in the Treat to Target study, where the introduced patient population had lower initial A1C levels (8.6% *vs* 9.5%) and results were reported after 36 wk of treatment. In our case, all groups presented a mean reduction of at least 2% in A1C values.

LANMET is a more conservative algorithm, as it recommends the smallest initial dose and slower titration, as opposed to the DeGold PLUS algorithm, which recommends the initial insulin dose based on BMI and a faster titration protocol. As such, the most important safety outcome to be compared is the frequency of moderate and severe hypoglycemia events, which is a barrier to the acceptance of insulin therapy among clinicians and patients[13,14].

In addition, hypoglycemia is currently acknowledged as risk factor that could lead to cardiovascular events and death[15-22]. Analysis on the incidence of mild, asymptomatic, or total hypoglycemia events showed no significant difference between the groups. However, when comparing the frequency of severe and moderate hypoglycemia events between the two groups on fixed titration and the other two groups using a variable regimen, a significant increase was observed in the latter groups (0.94 events/patient per year *vs* 2.81 events/patient per year, $P < 0.037$).

It has previously been reported that patients typically experience 3 events/patient per year, which is similar to what we observed in the patients who were subject to the titration regimen that varied according to FPG[12]. The frequency of symptomatic hypoglycemia events in the Treat to Target study was higher than in the LANMET trial (4.1 events/patient per year *vs* 13.9 events/patient per year) that used fixed titration, a finding that is in agreement with our observations[12,13].

The performance of the DeGold algorithm was especially notable, and it was recently proposed as an algorithm to guide the introduction of insulin glargine in replacement of OADs for inpatients[8]. We extended its use to outpatients currently being treated with OADs and as a result, after a mean titration period of 22 d, 95% of the individuals reached the FPG target and 69% reached values of A1C < 7%, without increase in any hypoglycemia categories.

Nevertheless, there was no significant difference between the algorithms regarding efficacy parameters, possibly due to a lack of statistical power because of the small sample size.

An increase in the risk of hypoglycemia was associated with the rapid titration algorithms, in comparison to patients receiving higher initial doses. A possible explanation for the observed discrepancy may be the extremely low number of events that occur in the beginning of treatment. Analysis of the distribution of occurrences throughout the study showed that only 14% of all events occurred during the first 4 wk of treatment (data not shown). After this period, the insulin doses in the titration regimens that varied according to FPG were higher, irrespective of the initial dose. Our data suggest that the initial dose is not important for achieving glycemic control, nor was it shown to affect the rates of hypoglycemia

events, as long as titration was performed. However, forced and rapid titration did increase the rates of hypoglycemia events.

In conclusion, there is no increase in the risk of moderate/severe hypoglycemia events when treatment with insulin glargine is initiated on insulin-naïve type 2 diabetes patients using an algorithm where the initial insulin dose is calculated based on BMI, as observed in the DeGold algorithm. However, this risk is increased when a faster titration schedule was used, compared with a fixed 2-U increment twice a week.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Statistical analysis was conducted by Dr. Alves MRC from the School of Public Health, University of São Paulo.

COMMENTS

Background

To start insulin therapy in insulin naïve type 2 diabetes patients, a long-acting basal insulin, such as insulin glargine, is added once a day. The majority of algorithms determine insulin titration according to fasting plasma glucose levels, but the dosage differs at the initial dose, frequency and speed of adjustments.

Research frontiers

It is difficult to compare the different algorithms employed in trials with populations of different socio-economic strata and variable access to educational materials.

Innovations and breakthroughs

Here, authors compared the safety of different titration algorithms in a population that was homogeneous in terms of socio-economic strata and with the same degree of education in diabetes.

Terminology

Insulin algorithm titration: A guideline to modify the insulin dose after starting insulin therapy in a patient.

Peer review

This is an interesting study. The authors tried to compare the safety and efficacy of four insulin glargine algorithms in insulin naive type 2 diabetes patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Wright A**, Burden AC, Paisey RB, Cull CA, Holman RR. Sulfonylurea inadequacy: efficacy of addition of insulin over 6 years in patients with type 2 diabetes in the U.K. Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS 57). *Diabetes Care* 2002; **25**: 330-336 [PMID: 11815505 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.25.2.330]

2 **Nathan DM**, Buse JB, Davidson MB, Ferrannini E, Holman RR, Sherwin R, Zinman B. Medical management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy: a consensus statement of the American Diabetes Association and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2009; **32**: 193-203 [PMID: 18945920]

3 **Barnett A**. Dosing of insulin glargine in the treatment of type 2 diabetes. *Clin Ther* 2007; **29**: 987-999 [PMID: 17692716]

4 **Kadowaki T**, Ohtani T, Odawara M. Potential formula for the calculation of starting and incremental insulin glargine doses: ALOHA subanalysis. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e41358 [PMID: 22870214 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0041358]

5 **Harris S**, Yale JF, Dempsey E, Gerstein H. Can family physicians help patients initiate basal insulin therapy successfully?: randomized trial of patient-titrated insulin glargine compared with standard oral therapy: lessons for family practice from the Canadian INSIGHT trial. *Can Fam Physician* 2008; **54**: 550-558 [PMID: 18411384]

6 **Davies M**, Storms F, Shutler S, Bianchi-Biscay M, Gomis R. Improvement of glycemic control in subjects with poorly controlled type 2 diabetes: comparison of two treatment algorithms using insulin glargine. *Diabetes Care* 2005; **28**: 1282-1288 [PMID: 15920040 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.28.6.1282]

7 **Unger J**. Comparing the efficacy, safety, and utility of intensive insulin algorithms for a primary care practice. *Diabetes Ther* 2011; **2**: 40-50 [PMID: 22127768 DOI: 10.1007/s13300-010-0014-4]

8 **Sampaio CR**, Franco DR, Goldberg DJ, Baptista J, Eliaschewitz FG. Glucose control in acute myocardial infarction: a pilot randomized study controlled by continuous glucose monitoring system comparing the use of insulin glargine with standard of care. *Diabetes Technol Ther* 2012; **14**: 117-124 [PMID: 22181063 DOI: 10.1089/dia.2011.0157]

9 **Moberg EA**, Lins PE, Adamson UK. Variability of blood glucose levels in patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus on intensified insulin regimens. *Diabete Metab* 1994; **20**: 546-552 [PMID: 7713278]

10 **Cryer PE**. Elimination of hypoglycemia from the lives of people affected by diabetes. *Diabetes* 2011; **60**: 24-27 [PMID: 21193736 DOI: 10.2337/db10-1359]

11 **Yki-Järvinen H**, Kauppinen-Mäkelin R, Tiikkainen M, Vähätalo M, Virtamo H, Nikkilä K, Tulokas T, Hulme S, Hardy K, McNulty S, Hänninen J, Levänen H, Lahdenperä S, Lehtonen R, Ryysy L. Insulin glargine or NPH combined with metformin in type 2 diabetes: the LANMET study. *Diabetologia* 2006; **49**: 442-451 [PMID: 16456680 DOI: 10.1007/s00125-005-0132-0]

12 **Riddle MC**, Rosenstock J, Gerich J. The treat-to-target trial: randomized addition of glargine or human NPH insulin to oral therapy of type 2 diabetic patients. *Diabetes Care* 2003; **26**: 3080-3086 [PMID: 14578243 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.26.11.3080]

13 **Kunt T**, Snoek FJ. Barriers to insulin initiation and intensification and how to overcome them. *Int J Clin Pract Suppl* 2009; (**164**): 6-10 [PMID: 19751453 DOI: 10.1111/j.1742-1241.2009.02176.x]

14 **Polonsky WH**, Fisher L, Earles J, Dudl RJ, Lees J, Mullan J, Jackson RA. Assessing psychosocial distress in diabetes: development of the diabetes distress scale. *Diabetes Care* 2005; **28**: 626-631 [PMID: 15735199 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.28.3.626]

15 **Johnston SS**, Conner C, Aagren M, Smith DM, Bouchard J, Brett J. Evidence linking hypoglycemic events to an increased risk of acute cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2011; **34**: 1164-1170 [PMID: 21421802 DOI: 10.2337/dc10-1915]

16 **Duckworth W**, Abraira C, Moritz T, Reda D, Emanuele N, Reaven PD, Zieve FJ, Marks J, Davis SN, Hayward R, Warren SR, Goldman S, McCarren M, Vitek ME, Henderson WG, Huang GD. Glucose control and vascular complications in veterans with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 129-139 [PMID: 19092145 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0808431]

17 **Desouza C**, Salazar H, Cheong B, Murgo J, Fonseca V. Association of hypoglycemia and cardiac ischemia: a study based on continuous monitoring. *Diabetes Care* 2003; **26**: 1485-1489 [PMID: 12716809 DOI: 10.2337/diacare.26.5.1485]

18 **Hanefeld M**, Duetting E, Bramlage P. Cardiac implications of hypoglycaemia in patients with diabetes - a systematic review. *Cardiovasc Diabetol* 2013; **12**: 135 [PMID: 24053606 DOI: 10.1186/1475-2840-12-135]

19 **Goto A**, Arah OA, Goto M, Terauchi Y, Noda M. Severe hypoglycaemia and cardiovascular disease: systematic review and meta-analysis with bias analysis. *BMJ* 2013; **347**: f4533 [PMID: 23900314 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.f4533]

20 **Bloomfield HE**, Greer N, Newman D, MacDonald R, Carlyle M, Fitzgerald P, Rutks I, Wilt TJ. Washington (DC): Department of Veterans Affairs; 2012 Apr. VA Evidence-based Synthesis Program Reports. Predictors and Consequences of Severe Hypoglycemia in Adults with Diabetes - A System-

atic Review of the Evidence [Internet] [PMID: 23256228]
21 **Koshizaka M**, Green JB, Alexander JH. Glycemic management in diabetes and the associated cardiovascular risk: are we helping or hurting our patients? *Circ J* 2012; **76**: 1572-1580 [PMID: 22789974 DOI: 10.1253/circj.CJ-12-0428]
22 **Snell-Bergeon JK**, Wadwa RP. Hypoglycemia, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease. *Diabetes Technol Ther* 2012; **14** Suppl 1: S51-S58 [PMID: 22650225 DOI: 10.1089/dia.2012.0031]

P- Reviewers: Georgescu A, Liu SH, Shafrir E
S- Editor: Gou SX **L- Editor**: A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.76

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): 76-83
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

BRIEF ARTICLE

Rationale, design and baseline patient characteristics of the optimal type 2 diabetes management including benchmarking and standard treatment study in Greece

Michael S Kostapanos, Vasilis Tsimihodimos, Moses S Elisaf, Emmanouil Tzouvelekis, Nikos Nikas

Michael S Kostapanos, Vasilis Tsimihodimos, Moses S Elisaf, Department of Internal Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Ioannina, 45110 Ioannina, Greece
Emmanouil Tzouvelekis, Nikos Nikas, Medical Department, AstraZeneca SA, 15773 Athens, Greece
Author contributions: All the authors contributed to this paper equally.
Supported by AstraZeneca
Correspondence to: Moses S Elisaf, MD, FRSPH, FASA, Professor of Medicine, Department of Internal Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Ioannina, St. Niarchou Avenue, 45110 Ioannina, Greece. egepi@cc.uoi.gr
Telephone: +30-265-1007509 Fax: +30-265-1007509
Received: July 4, 2013 Revised: December 2, 2013
Accepted: January 13, 2014
Published online: February 15, 2014

Abstract

AIM: To describe baseline data of the optimal type 2 diabetes management including benchmarking and standard treatment (OPTIMISE) study in Greece.

METHODS: "Benchmarking" is the process of receiving feedback comparing one's performance with that of others. The OPTIMISE (NCT00681850) study is a multinational, multicenter study assessing, at a primary care level, whether using "benchmarking" can help to improve the quality of patient care, compared with a set of guideline-based reference values ("non-benchmarking"). In the Greek region, 797 outpatients (457 men, mean age 63.8 years) with type 2 diabetes were enrolled by 84 office-based physicians. Baseline characteristics of this population are presented.

RESULTS: Hypertension was the most prevalent concomitant disorder (77.3%) and coronary heart disease was the most frequent macrovascular complication of diabetes (23.8%). Most patients were overweight or obese (body mass index 29.6 ± 5 kg/m^2), exhibiting mostly abdominal obesity (waist circumference 102.6 ± 13.6 cm). Biguanides were the most prevalent prescribed drugs for the management of diabetes (70.1% of all prescriptions), whereas statins (93.5% of all prescriptions) and angiotensin receptor blockers (55.8% of all prescriptions) were the most prevalent prescribed drugs for hyperlipidemia and hypertension, respectively. Only 37.4% of patients were on aspirin. Despite treatment, pre-defined targets for fasting plasma glucose (< 110 mg/dL), glycated hemoglobin (< 7%), systolic blood pressure (< 130 mmHg and < 125 mmHg for patients with proteinuria) and low density lipoprotein cholesterol levels (< 100 mg/dL and < 70 mg/dL for patients with coronary heart disease) were reached in a relatively small proportion of patients (29%, 53%, 27% and 31%, respectively). In a Greek population with type 2 diabetes, the control of glycemia or concomitant disorders which increase cardiovascular risk remains poor.

CONCLUSION: Despite relevant treatment, there is a poor control of diabetes, hypertension and hyperlipidemia in Greek outpatients with type 2 diabetes.

Key words: Diabetes; Benchmarking; Treatment target; Glycemic control; Dyslipidemia; Blood pressure

Core tip: This is an epidemiological study assessing the prevalence of comorbidities as well as treatment control in a Greek population of patients with type 2 diabetes. "Benchmarking" is the process of receiving feedback and comparing one's performance to that of others. The optimal type 2 diabetes management including benchmarking and standard treatment (OPTIMISE) study is a multinational, multicenter study comparing the efficacy of two follow-up strategies in the manage-

ment of type 2 diabetic outpatients: "benchmarking" *vs* "non-benchmarking". This paper describes the rationale and the design of the OPTIMISE study as well as the baseline characteristics of patients included in the Greek region.

Kostapanos MS, Tsimihodimos V, Elisaf MS, Tzouvelekis E, Nikas N. Rationale, design and baseline patient characteristics of the optimal type 2 diabetes management including benchmarking and standard treatment study in Greece. *World J Diabetes* 2014; 5(1): 76-83 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/full/v5/i1/76.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4239/wjd.v5.i1.76

INTRODUCTION

According to the World Health Organization (WHO), > 180 million people worldwide suffer from diabetes[1]. This number is likely to increase by more than double by the year 2030. In 2005 alone, approximately 1.1 million people died from diabetes-related complications[1]. The WHO projects that without urgent action, deaths due to these complications will increase by > 50% in the next 10 years[1]. Type 2 diabetes, which is closely related to an unhealthy lifestyle and obesity, is associated with increased risk of micro- and macrovascular outcomes, including heart attacks, strokes and amputations of the lower limbs[1]. Furthermore, diabetes complications not only decrease life expectancy, but also markedly reduce the quality of life. These outcomes result in increasing health care costs[2].

This burden can be limited with effective treatment practices[2]. However, a marked variability has been documented in preventive and therapeutic approaches, suggesting that the level of diabetes care currently delivered may not produce the predicted health-related benefits[3]. Gaps between medical care as actually practiced and the recommendations derived from evidence-based research are large and widespread[3]. Approaches improving the quality of patient care include the development of guidelines, flowcharting, data collection and graphical data analysis. More recent innovations are benchmarking and computerized decision support[3].

Benchmarking is the process of comparing one's performance with that of others[4]. This process begins with standardized and comparative measurement. It can go further to understand why there are performance differences between seemingly similar processes[4]. Benchmarking is practical and action-oriented in its analysis; it is not a rigorous research methodology. It is, however, a promising technology that breaks through the isolation that many clinicians report as the underlying cause of variation in clinical practice[4].

The optimal type 2 diabetes management including benchmarking and standard treatment (OPTIMISE, NCT00681850) study was a multinational, multicenter study assessing, at a primary care level, whether using benchmarking can help in improving the quality of patient care as compared with a set of guideline-based reference values. In this paper, baseline data of patients included in the OPTIMISE study in the Greek region are analyzed.

The primary objective of this study was the improvement of the quality of diabetic patient care, particularly the control of glycemia, lipids and blood pressure, with benchmarking over a set of guideline-based reference values (non-benchmarking). In this context, the percentage of patients in the benchmarking group achieving pre-set targets for glycated hemoglobin (HbA1c)[1], low density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C)[1,5] and systolic blood pressure (SBP)[1,6] *vs* non-benchmarking group (control group) after 12 mo of follow-up was assessed.

Secondary objectives were to demonstrate that using benchmarking improves the control of diabetes, lipids and blood pressure (1) by means of the proportion of patients achieving pre-set targets for HbA1c[1], glycemia[1], LDL-C levels[1,5] and SBP[1,6] or (2) by determining the improvement in these parameters after 12 mo of follow-up. Other secondary objectives included (3) the preventive screening for several outcomes: retinopathy, neuropathy, dietary counseling, microalbuminuria, smoking habits, body mass index (BMI) and physical activity and (4) the measurement of physical activity by registering the number of steps and the distance walked per day.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study design and population

Type 2 diabetic patients, followed by usual physician treatment, were recruited for observation. Selection criteria were male or female subjects (1) with a minimum age of 18 years; (2) with type 2 diabetes, treated or untreated, insulin dependent or not insulin dependent at the time of first visit; and (3) who signed an informed consent to participate in the study. Diabetes was defined by plasma levels of glucose (PG); fasting PG was ⩾ 126 mg/dL or PG levels 2-h post-load was ⩾ 200 mg/dL. Patients who (1) suffered from type 1 diabetes or gestational diabetes, (2) participated in any other clinical study or (3) were hospitalized during the study period (because it is a primary care study) were excluded from the study.

Investigators recruited for this study were physicians from all over the country who were willing to participate. A selection was based on the availability of sufficient diabetic patients in the physician's practice and the motivation to fulfill the administrative procedures linked to the study. All participating investigators performed their usual monitoring, treatment and counseling of their diabetic patients. Investigators were randomized into two groups. The group that performed the usual monitoring of their diabetic patients by knowing the relative level of diabetic control of their patients compared with the patients of other investigators was defined as the benchmarking group. The other group (non-benchmarking) did not receive any information and behaved as a control group. The proportion of investigators receiving that in-

formation (benchmarking) *vs* the control group was 3 to 1.

Follow-up

All investigators received feedback on the risk factors of their patients. Additionally, in the benchmarking group, physicians anonymously received information on the level of control of cardiovascular risk factors for their patients compared with their colleagues. This possibly resulted in an additional motivational stimulus for investigators and patients to follow therapeutic advice and to improve their risk factors.

The time interval between visits in this study corresponded to the four-times yearly control visits for diabetic patients regarding blood pressure, fasting glycemia, HbA1c, body weight, smoking habits and physical activity, as recommended by the "International Diabetes Federation"[7]. Therefore, according to the study protocol, patients were followed-up in four visits. Baseline assessments were recorded at visit 1, and further data were collected after approximately 4 mo (visit 2), 8 mo (visit 3) and 12 mo (visit 4). The serum lipid profile [total cholesterol (TC), LDL-C, high density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) and triglyceride (TG) levels] was also recorded at baseline and at the same time intervals.

Clinical evaluation

At each visit, blood pressure was measured with the patient in the sitting position following at least 5 min of rest with a manometer with a cuff of the recommended dimensions. The mean blood pressure based on three successive readings was recorded. Somatometrics, including body weight, height (only at the first visit) and waist circumference, were also measured during the follow-up. The patient ideally wore light clothing and no shoes during the weight measurement. Weight was given in kilograms, without decimals (to round up as from 0.5 kg). The patient ideally wore no shoes during the height measurement. Height was given in centimeters without decimals (to round up as from 0.5 cm). For the measurement of waist circumference, a measuring tape was placed in a horizontal plane around the abdomen at the level of the iliac crest. Before reading the tape measure, investigators ensured that the tape was snug without compressing the skin and parallel to the floor. The measurement was made at the end of a normal expiration.

Laboratory evaluation

After an 8-h overnight fast, two blood samples (7 mL) were obtained. The following parameters were analyzed at the central lab BARC (Industriepark Zwijnaarde 7b3, B-9052 Ghent, Belgium): (1) HbA1c, (2) fasting PG and (3) the serum lipid profile, including TC, TG, HDL-C and LDL-C levels. At visits 1 and 4, a urine sample of 4 mL was collected for analysis of microalbuminuria.

Pre-defined targets of treatment

Pre-defined targets of treatment were (1) HbA1c < 7% and fasting PG < 110 mg/dL for glycemic control, (2) SBP < 130 mmHg and < 125 mmHg in the case of renal impairment and proteinuria > 1 g/24 h for blood pressure control and (3) LDL-C levels < 100 mg/dL and < 70 mg/dL for very high-risk patients (*i.e.*, those with diabetes and coronary heart disease) for serum lipids control.

Patient classification

Patients were categorized according to fasting PG levels into (1) "normal" if fasting PG was < 110 mg/dL, (2) "borderline" if fasting PG was 110-125 mg/dL and (3) "diabetics" if fasting PG was ⩾ 125 mg/dL. According to HbA1c levels, patients were classified into "good" if HbA1c ⩽ 7% and "too high" if HbA1c > 7%. SBP levels divided the study population into: "good" if < 130 mmHg and "too high" if ⩾ 130 mmHg. According to LDL-C levels, patients were categorized into "good" if LDL-C < 100 mg/dL and "too high" if LDL-C ⩾ 100 mg/dL.

A four-point verbal rating scale was used to assess the following physical activity: (1) no weekly activity; (2) only limited physical activity during most weeks; (3) intense physical activity (activity that gives rise to shortness of breath, tachycardia and sweating) during at least 20 min, once to twice a week; and (4) intense physical activity (activity that gives rise to shortness of breath, tachycardia and sweating) during at least 20 min, three times or more a week.

Statistical analysis

Descriptive statistics (mean, median, number of observations, standard deviation, standard error, 95%CI, minimum and maximum) of all primary and other variables are presented in tables and, if appropriate and interesting, in graphs. This is applicable for the following variables: HbA1c, glycemia, LDL-C, SBP, TG, TC, HDL-C, diastolic blood pressure, waist circumference, smoking habits, microalbuminuria, BMI, physical activity (rating scale), degree of ophthalmic control and degree of dietary advice.

The null hypothesis for the primary objective is that the proportion of patients who reached targets after 12 mo in both groups is equal. The alternative hypothesis is that this proportion is greater in the benchmarking group compared with the control group. This analysis is performed for the following variables: HbA1c, LDL-C and SBP. For secondary objectives, the null hypothesis is that the proportion of patients who reached the target after 12 mo is the same as the proportion of patients who reached the target at baseline. The alternative hypothesis is that this proportion is even greater after 12 mo than at baseline. This analysis is also performed for HbA1c, LDL-C and SBP. Another null hypothesis is that the mean proportion improvement of these variables after 12 mo is equal to zero. The alternative hypothesis is that the mean percentage improvement is different from zero.

RESULTS

The study design and the global baseline results of the OPTIMISE study have been previously reported[8,9]. Ad-

Table 1 History data of the study population in Greece

Variable	Value
Age (yr)	64 ± 11
Male gender	457 (57.3)
Positive family history of diabetes	483 (64.2)
Family history of premature heart disease	213 (28.4)
Time since diagnosis of diabetes (yr)	9.2 ± 8.3
Age at diagnosis of diabetes (yr)	54 ± 11
Smoking status	
Current smokers	194 (24.3)
Ex-smokers	171 (21.4)
Non-smokers	432 (54.2)

Data are expressed as absolute numbers (percentage) or mean ± SD.

Table 3 Baseline clinical characteristics of the study population in Greece (mean ± SD)

Variable	Value
Height (cm)	167 ± 9
Weight (kg)	83 ± 16
Body mass index (kg/m^2)	29.6 ± 5.0
Waist circumference (cm)	103 ± 14
Systolic blood pressure (mmHg)	138 ± 17
Diastolic blood pressure (mmHg)	80 ± 9

ditionally, the benchmarking process has been schematically described in detail above[8].

History data and clinical evaluation

A total of 797 patients were enrolled in this study (n = 570 in the benchmarking group and 227 in the control group) by 84 participating office-based physicians across Greece. History data of the study population are shown in Table 1. Most patients were middle-aged and had a positive family history of diabetes (Table 1). A small predominance of male gender was noted in our population. Patients were middle-aged at the time of diagnosis of diabetes and presented after approximately a 10-year course of diabetes.

Hypertension was a common concomitant disorder in our population, present in approximately 8/10 patients (Table 2). Among macrovascular complications of diabetes, coronary heart disease was the most prevalent, followed by peripheral artery disease and stroke (Table 2). Only two patients have undergone amputation. Retinopathy was the most commonly observed microvascular complication of diabetes, followed by proteinuria (Table 2).

Table 3 shows the main clinical characteristics of the study population. The vast majority of patients were overweight or obese, as reflected by increased BMI. The predominance of visceral obesity was mirrored by abnormally raised measurements of waist circumference. Most patients (*i.e.*, 77%) reported no or light weekly physical activity and the rest (23%) reported "intense physical activity" for 1-2 times per week.

Both systolic and diastolic blood pressure levels were moderately elevated (Table 3). As expected, SBP was greater in patients with proteinuria than in patients without proteinuria (144 ± 19 mmHg *vs* 138 ± 17 mmHg). Only a small proportion of patients (27%) reached the pre-defined target for blood pressure, whereas most patients (72%) did not reach this target (Figure 1).

Table 2 Macrovascular and microvascular complications of diabetes and concomitant diseases of the study population in Greece n (%)

Clinical condition	Value
Hypertension	615 (77.2)
Coronary heart disease	186 (23.8)
Stroke	50 (6.3)
Peripheral artery disease	85 (11.1)
Amputation	2 (0.3)
Proteinuria	38 (5.6)
End-stage renal disease	1 (0.1)
Retinopathy	54 (7.2)

Table 4 Treatment of the study population in Greece

Treatment	n (%)
Antidiabetic	740 (92.9)
Insulin	145 (19.6)
Biguanide (metformin)	519 (70.1)
Sulfonylurea	343 (46.4)
Glitazone	142 (19.2)
Others	104 (14.1)
Lipid-lowering	553 (69.4)
Statin	517 (93.5)
Ezetimibe	53 (9.6)
Fibrate	17 (3.1)
Others	43 (7.8)
Antihypertensive	591 (96.1[1])
ARBs	330 (55.8)
ACEi	202 (34.2)
CCBs	242 (40.9)
Beta-blockers	179 (30.3)
Alpha-blockers	13 (2.2)
Diuretics	220 (37.2)
Others	19 (3.2)
Anti-obesity	40 (5.0)
Aspirin	298 (37.4)

[1]The percentage value refers to patients with hypertension. ARBs: Angiotensin receptor blockers; ACEi: Angiotensin converting enzyme Inhibitors; CCBs: Calcium channel blockers.

Medical treatment

Prescribed medications are shown in Table 4. Biguanides were the most commonly prescribed antidiabetic drugs, followed by sulfonylureas. Approximately one fifth of the patients in our population were treated with insulin. The mean insulin dosage among insulin-treated patients was 48 ± 28 units/d. From all antidiabetic drug combinations, biguanide + sulfonylurea was the most commonly prescribed (20% of all prescriptions).

Almost all patients on lipid lowering therapy were taking statins (Table 4). Simvastatin was used by 34% of the statin-treated patients at a mean dose, atorvastatin by 36% and rosuvastatin by 24% at a mean dose of about 30, 20 and 12 mg/d, respectively. Statins with a mild lipid-lowering potency, including fluvastatin and pravas-

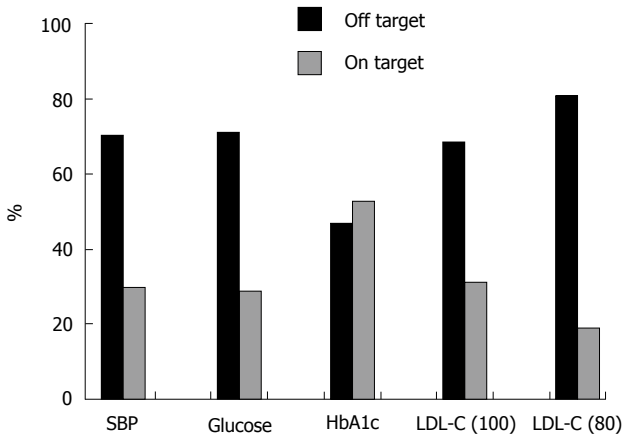


Figure 1 Proportion of patients who did not reach or reached pre-defined targets of treatment. SBP: Systolic blood pressure; HbA1c: Glycosylated hemoglobin; LDL-C: Low density lipoprotein cholesterol.

tatin, were less frequently prescribed. The use of other hypolipidemic drugs was limited in our population. The dose of 100 mg/d was the predominant dose of aspirin, corresponding to 92% of all prescriptions.

Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system blockade was the most popular antihypertensive strategy, with angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs) being prescribed in more than half and angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEi) in approximately one third of our population (Table 4). ARBs were the most commonly prescribed antihypertensive drug category, followed by calcium channel blockers (CCBs), diuretics, ACEi and beta-blockers (Table 4). From combinations of two antihypertensive drugs, ARBs with diuretics or CCBs were the more prevalent (each representing approximately 5% of all prescriptions), followed by ACEi with the same categories (approximately 3% of all prescriptions for each combination). ARBs, CCBs and diuretics combination were the most frequent among triple combinations (5% of all prescriptions).

Target achievement for laboratory parameters

Table 5 shows the glycemic control and serum lipid profile. Glycemic control was poor, with 71% of all patients being out of the pre-defined target according to fasting PG and 47% according to HbA1c (Figure 1). Interestingly, glycemic control was better when assessed by HbA1c rather than by fasting PG levels.

Only 31% of patients reached the pre-defined target for LDL-C (< 100 and < 70 mg/dL for patients with coronary heart disease). This proportion was greater (*i.e.*, 40%) for the target of LDL-C < 100 mg/dL and lower (19%) for a more aggressive LDL-C target of < 80 mg/dL (Figure 1). Consequently, the LDL-C target was not reached in the vast majority of patients with coronary heart disease (82%).

DISCUSSION

The OPTIMISE study is designed to compare two different strategies in the follow-up of type 2 diabetic

Table 5 Laboratory evaluation of the study population in Greece (mean ± SD)

Variable	Values
Glucose (mg/dL)	138 ± 47
HbA1c (%)	7.2 ± 1.3
LDL-C (mg/dL)	112 ± 35
HDL-C (mg/dL)	50 ± 13
TC (mg/dL)	192 ± 42
TG (mg/dL)	154 ± 85
Albuminuria (mg/g Cr)	66.6 ± 249.2

HbA1c: Glycosylated hemoglobin; LDL-C: Low density lipoprotein cholesterol; HDL-C: High density lipoprotein cholesterol; TC: Total cholesterol; TG: Triglycerides; Cr: Creatinine.

outpatients regarding the control of diabetes and its concurrent morbidities. Benchmarking is a relatively recent innovation in the quality management sciences, representing a useful tool in the understanding of why there are performance differences between seemingly similar processes[4]. Feedback methods such as benchmarking in which clinicians receive reports of their performance compared with the mean performance of a peer group have been used and studied extensively[3,10]. One underlying theory holds that viewing personal performance within the context of peer performance is a powerful motivator for change[3,11]. In the OPTIMISE study, the hypothesis whether "benchmarking" is superior to a "non-benchmarking" follow-up strategy in the control of diabetes and concurrent morbidities is evaluated.

In the present paper, we discuss baseline characteristics of a relatively large population of type 2 diabetic patients in the Greek region participating in the OPTIMISE study. To the best of our knowledge, this study represents one of the larger diabetes registries in the country.

Type 2 diabetes is becoming an increasingly prevalent morbidity in Greece. In the ATTICA study, the prevalence of diabetes in 3042 subjects who were free of cardiovascular disease was raised from 8% in 2001 to 12.8% in 2006[12]. According to the same study, the age-adjusted five-year incidence of type 2 diabetes was 5.5%[13].

The mean age at diagnosis of diabetes in the OPTIMISE study was 54 years. This finding is in accordance with the "Aegaleo" studies in which the increase in diabetes begins in those > 50 years of age[14]. Interestingly, current data showed clearly that the prevalence is considerably increased after the age of 30 years[15]. Age was found to independently correlate with increased risk for diabetes (OR = 1.07, 95%CI: 1.06-1.08)[15].

In the OPTIMISE study, a mild predominance of the male gender over female was noted. This finding is consistent with epidemiological data from the ATTICA study in which the prevalence of diabetes was higher in men than in women (8% *vs* 6%, respectively)[16]. Likewise, in another analysis, male gender was recognized as an independent predisposing factor for diabetes (OR = 1.43, 95%CI: 1.04-1.95)[15]. The possible explanation for these sex differences may be that men are more susceptible than women to the consequences of indolence and obe-

sity, possibly due to differences in insulin sensitivity and abdominal fat deposition[17].

Most of our diabetic patients had a positive family history of diabetes. It has been shown that Greek subjects with a positive family history of diabetes may have approximately a seven-fold higher risk for diabetes compared with co-responders without a family history of diabetes[15]. Approximately 1/4 of diabetic patients in our population (*i.e.*, 24%) exhibited coronary heart disease, a proportion which is similar to that reported for the prevalence of diabetes among Greek patients who had suffered a myocardial infarction (*i.e.*, 25%)[18]. Coronary heart disease represented the most prevalent disorder among all macrovascular complications of diabetes, with the rates for other forms of cardiovascular disease being relatively low.

The prevalence of hypertension was high among our subjects. Hypertension was considered as an independent contributing factor for diabetes in Greek adult subjects with self-reported diabetes (OR = 2.19, 95%CI: 1.60-2.99)[15]. The prevalence of hypertension in our population was greater compared with that recorded in an urban Greek population of self-reported diabetes (77% *vs* 51%, respectively)[15]. The great prevalence of hypertension among Greek subjects with metabolic syndrome (*i.e.*, 71%)[19], which represents a pre-diabetic condition, may account for high rates of hypertension in type 2 diabetic patients.

According to BMI values, approximately all patients were overweight or obese with increased measurements of waist circumference. Being overweight and obese was associated with a two-fold increase in the risk for diabetes in a Greek population[15]. Abdominal obesity, which is present in 82% of patients with metabolic syndrome in Greece[19], may play a major role in the pathogenesis of type 2 diabetes by promoting insulin resistance[20]. Physical inactivity was another important finding of this study. The proportion of our diabetic patients who reported physical inactivity was greater than that recorded in the ATTICA study (77.41% *vs* approximately 50%, respectively)[19]. This unhealthy lifestyle pattern could be related to the development of obesity and diabetes.

The most important finding of this study lies in the low rates of patients who reached pre-defined targets of treatment for SBP, glycemia and LDL-C levels. Approximately 72% of patients were off target regarding SBP. This rate is in accordance with the Didima study, which shows that only 27% of treated hypertensive subjects reached treatment targets for arterial blood pressure in a rural Greek area[21]. In the EUROASPIRE Ⅱ study, 50% of patients with coronary heart disease in 15 European countries (including Greece) had raised blood pressure levels[22]. Similar were the results of a Greek trial performed in patients with coronary heart disease of whom only 50% had desirable blood pressure levels[18].

Suboptimal control was noted for LDL-C levels. Seven out of 10 patients did not reach the pre-defined target of LDL-C levels < 100 mg/dL and < 70 mg/dL for diabetic patients with coronary heart disease. This rate was even lower for a more promising target of < 80 mg/dL. Interestingly, this was evident despite high rates of patients who were treated with statins (*i.e.*, 65% of the total study population or 94% of those receiving lipid lowering medications), particularly the most potent ones. Nevertheless, few patients were treated with drugs that could offer further LDL-C lowering, including ezetimibe. Lipid-lowering drug combinations, which are currently underused, could contribute to a greater percentage of patients reaching the targets for LDL-C levels. In the EUROASPIRE Ⅱ study, 58% of patients with coronary heart disease had elevated TC levels[22]. In Greece, the OLYMPIC study showed that only 26% of 2660 adults with dyslipidemia, who had been receiving lipid-lowering treatment for at least 3 mo (of whom 36% had diabetes), achieved the NCEP-ATPIII targets for LDL-C levels[23]. A greater proportion (*i.e.*, 49%) of patients achieving the 2004-updated NCEP ATPIII targets was reported in the CEPHEUS (Centralized Pan-European survey on the undertreatment of hypercholesterolemia in patients using lipid lowering drugs). This study was performed in 1321 Greek patients who were on lipid lowering treatment for at least 3 mo were stable for at least 6 wk. Interestingly, 25% of these patients had diabetes[23].

In the OPTIMISE study, 34% of the statin-treated patients were on simvastatin, most of them at low doses (49% of them 20 mg/d and 9% 10 mg/d). If these patients were switched to a more potent statin (either atorvastatin or rosuvastatin), they might have reached the targets for LDL-C. Moreover, > 36% of patients on atorvastatin were using low-to-moderate doses (38% of them 10 mg/d and 44% 20 mg/d). It is possible that these patients would reach their targets if titrated to a higher atorvastatin dose or switched to a more potent statin, such as rosuvastatin. Finally, 24% of patients were treated with rosuvastatin (76% of patients used 5-10 mg/d and only 22% 20 mg/d). A higher rosuvastatin dose could potentially offer a higher proportion of patients achieving LDL-C goals. According to international recommendations, statin treatment should be optimized and if the target is not reached, then a second agent should be added. Nevertheless, it appears that statin treatment was far from optimal in the OPTIMISE population. An optimization of statin dose or switching to a more potent statin could help more patients reach the target. If the target is not reached, then the addition of a second agent could be useful.

Poor glycemic control was also noted in our population; only 30% according to fasting PG levels and 50% according to HbA1c levels. The results of the EUROASPIRE Ⅱ study were similar among diabetic patients with coronary heart disease, with more than 70% being out of target for PG levels[21]. In a Greek population of 819 diabetic patients with coronary heart disease, only half of the patients exerted HbA1c levels < 7.5%[18]. Although insulin is considered as a first-line treatment choice for the management of type 2 diabetic patients, only one fifth of patients in the OPTIMISE study were treated with insulin. This could have attributed to low

rates of glycemic control.

The OPTIMISE study was designed to compare the efficacy of "benchmarking" compared with "non-benchmarking" in the control of type 2 diabetes in an outpatient basis. In Greek participants of this study, poor control of diabetes, hypertension and hyperlipidemia were noted at baseline despite treatment.

COMMENTS

Background

The optimal type 2 diabetes management including benchmarking and standard treatment (OPTIMISE, NCT00681850) study was a multinational, multicenter study assessing, at a primary care level, whether using benchmarking can help more in improving the quality of patient care as compared with a set of guideline-based reference values.

Research frontiers

Benchmarking is practical and action-oriented in its analysis; it is not a rigorous research methodology. It is, however, a promising technology that breaks through the isolation that many clinicians report as the underlying cause of variation in clinical practice.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The OPTIMISE study was designed to compare the efficacy of "benchmarking" compared with "non-benchmarking" in the control of type 2 diabetes on an outpatient basis.

Applications

Despite relevant treatment, there is a poor control of diabetes, hypertension and hyperlipidemia in Greek outpatients with type 2 diabetes.

Peer review

The manuscript is well-written and its aim to confirm the importance of benchmarking to improve diabetes care in clinical setting is of interest.

REFERENCES

1 **Rydén L**, Standl E, Bartnik M, Van den Berghe G, Betteridge J, de Boer MJ, Cosentino F, Jönsson B, Laakso M, Malmberg K, Priori S, Ostergren J, Tuomilehto J, Thrainsdottir I, Vanhorebeek I, Stramba-Badiale M, Lindgren P, Qiao Q, Priori SG, Blanc JJ, Budaj A, Camm J, Dean V, Deckers J, Dickstein K, Lekakis J, McGregor K, Metra M, Morais J, Osterspey A, Tamargo J, Zamorano JL, Deckers JW, Bertrand M, Charbonnel B, Erdmann E, Ferrannini E, Flyvbjerg A, Gohlke H, Juanatey JR, Graham I, Monteiro PF, Parhofer K, Pyörälä K, Raz I, Schernthaner G, Volpe M, Wood D. Guidelines on diabetes, pre-diabetes, and cardiovascular diseases: executive summary. The Task Force on Diabetes and Cardiovascular Diseases of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and of the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD). *Eur Heart J* 2007; **28**: 88-136 [PMID: 17220161 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/ehl260]

2 **Anselmino M**, Malmberg K, Mellbin L, Rydén L. Overview of the importance of glycaemic control for cardiovascular events in the in-and out-patient setting. *Rev Endocr Metab Disord* 2010; **11**: 87-94 [PMID: 20204530 DOI: 10.1007/s11154-010-9136-2]

3 **Kiefe CI**, Allison JJ, Williams OD, Person SD, Weaver MT, Weissman NW. Improving quality improvement using achievable benchmarks for physician feedback: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2001; **285**: 2871-2879 [PMID: 11401608 DOI: 10.1001/jama.285.22.2871]

4 **Loveridge N**. Practical benchmarking. *Emerg Nurse* 2005; **12**: 12-14 [PMID: 15751462]

5 **Cheng AY**, Leiter LA. Implications of recent clinical trials for the National Cholesterol Education Program Adult Treatment Panel III guidelines. *Curr Opin Cardiol* 2006; **21**: 400-404 [PMID: 16755211 DOI: 10.1097/01.hco.0000231412.15049.fb]

6 **De Backer G**, Ambrosioni E, Borch-Johnsen K, Brotons C, Cifkova R, Dallongeville J, Ebrahim S, Faergeman O, Graham I, Mancia G, Manger Cats V, Orth-Gomér K, Perk J, Pyörälä K, Rodicio JL, Sans S, Sansoy V, Sechtem U, Silber S, Thomsen T, Wood D. European guidelines on cardiovascular disease prevention in clinical practice. Third Joint Task Force of European and Other Societies on Cardiovascular Disease Prevention in Clinical Practice. *Eur Heart J* 2003; **24**: 1601-1610 [PMID: 12964575 DOI: 10.1016/S0195-668X(03)00347-6]

7 **IDF Clinical Guidelines Task Force**. Global Guideline for Type 2 Diabetes: recommendations for standard, comprehensive, and minimal care. *Diabet Med* 2006; **23**: 579-593 [PMID: 16759299 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-5491.2006.01918.x]

8 **Nobels F**, Debacker N, Brotons C, Elisaf M, Hermans MP, Michel G, Muls E. Study rationale and design of OPTIMISE, a randomised controlled trial on the effect of benchmarking on quality of care in type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Cardiovasc Diabetol* 2011; **10**: 82 [PMID: 21939502 DOI: 10.1186/1475-2840-10-82]

9 **Hermans MP**, Brotons C, Elisaf M, Michel G, Muls E, Nobels F. Optimal type 2 diabetes mellitus management: the randomised controlled OPTIMISE benchmarking study: baseline results from six European countries. *Eur J Prev Cardiol* 2013; **20**: 1095-1105 [PMID: 22605788]

10 **Merlani P**, Garnerin P, Diby M, Ferring M, Ricou B. Quality improvement report: Linking guideline to regular feedback to increase appropriate requests for clinical tests: blood gas analysis in intensive care. *BMJ* 2001; **323**: 620-624 [PMID: 11557715 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.323.7313.620]

11 **Hayes RP**, Ballard DJ. Review: feedback about practice patterns for measurable improvements in quality of care--a challenge for PROs under the Health Care Quality Improvement Program. *Clin Perform Qual Health Care* 1995; **3**: 15-22 [PMID: 10141395]

12 **Panagiotakos DB**, Pitsavos C, Chrysohoou C, Skoumas I, Stefanadis C. Prevalence and five-year incidence (2001-2006) of cardiovascular disease risk factors in a Greek sample: the ATTICA study. *Hellenic J Cardiol* 2009; **50**: 388-395 [PMID: 19767280]

13 **Panagiotakos DB**, Pitsavos C, Skoumas Y, Lentzas Y, Stefanadis C. Five-year incidence of type 2 diabetes mellitus among cardiovascular disease-free Greek adults: findings from the ATTICA study. *Vasc Health Risk Manag* 2008; **4**: 691-698 [PMID: 18827919]

14 **Katsilambros N**, Aliferis K, Darviri C, Tsapogas P, Alexiou Z, Tritos N, Arvanitis M. Evidence for an increase in the prevalence of known diabetes in a sample of an urban population in Greece. *Diabet Med* 1993; **10**: 87-90 [PMID: 8435995]

15 **Gikas A**, Sotiropoulos A, Panagiotakos D, Peppas T, Skliros E, Pappas S. Prevalence, and associated risk factors, of self-reported diabetes mellitus in a sample of adult urban population in Greece: MEDICAL Exit Poll Research in Salamis (MEDICAL EXPRESS 2002). *BMC Public Health* 2004; **4**: 2 [PMID: 15028111 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-4-2]

16 **Pitsavos C**, Panagiotakos DB, Chrysohoou C, Stefanadis C. Epidemiology of cardiovascular risk factors in Greece: aims, design and baseline characteristics of the ATTICA study. *BMC Public Health* 2003; **3**: 32 [PMID: 14567760 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-3-32]

17 **Gale EA**, Gillespie KM. Diabetes and gender. *Diabetologia* 2001; **44**: 3-15 [PMID: 11206408 DOI: 10.1007/s001250051573]

18 **Rallidis LS**, Zolindaki MG, Chatziioakimidis VK, Velissaridou AH, Konstantellou ES, Papasteriadis EG. High prevalence and suboptimal treatment of risk factors in Greek coronary patients. *Acta Cardiol* 2001; **56**: 7-15 [PMID: 11315125]

19 **Athyros VG**, Ganotakis ES, Bathianaki M, Monedas I, Goudevenos IA, Papageorgiou AA, Papathanasiou A, Kakafika AI, Mikhailidis DP, Elisaf M. Awareness, treatment and control of the metabolic syndrome and its components: a multicentre Greek study. *Hellenic J Cardiol* 2005; **46**: 380-386 [PMID: 16422124]

20 **Gazi IF**, Milionis HJ, Filippatos TD, Tsimihodimos V, Kosta-

panos MS, Doumas M, Tselepis AD, Elisaf M. Hypertriglyceridaemic waist phenotype criteria and prevalent metabolic triad in women. *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 2008; **24**: 223-230 [PMID: 17966968 DOI: 10.1002/dmrr.784]

21 **Stergiou GS**, Thomopoulou GC, Skeva II, Mountokalakis TD. Prevalence, awareness, treatment, and control of hypertension in Greece: the Didima study. *Am J Hypertens* 1999; **12**: 959-965 [PMID: 10560781 DOI: 10.1016/S0895-7061(99)00136-3]

22 **EUROASPIRE II Study Group**. Lifestyle and risk factor management and use of drug therapies in coronary patients from 15 countries; principal results from EUROASPIRE II Euro Heart Survey Programme. *Eur Heart J* 2001; **22**: 554-572 [PMID: 11259143 DOI: 10.1053/euhj.2001.2610]

23 **Diamantopoulos EJ**, Athyros VG, Yfanti GK, Migdalis EN, Elisaf M, Vardas PE, Manolis AS, Karamitsos DT, Ganotakis ES, Hatseras D. The control of dyslipidemia in outpatient clinics in Greece (OLYMPIC) Study. *Angiology* 2005; **56**: 731-741 [PMID: 16327950 DOI: 10.1177/000331970505600611]

P- Reviewers: Karadeniz M, Koya D **S- Editor**: Zhai HH
L- Editor: Roemmele A **E- Editor**: Liu SQ

World Journal of Diabetes

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/
bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Diabetes 2014 February 15; 5(1): I-V
ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Diabetes (*World J Diabetes*, *WJD*, online ISSN 1948-9358, DOI: 10.4239), is a peer-reviewed open access (OA) academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

Aims and scope

WJD covers topics concerning α, β, δ and PP cells of the pancreatic islet, the effect of insulin and insulinresistance, pancreatic islet transplantation, adipose cells and obesity.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJD*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

WJD is edited and published by Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG). BPG has a strong professional editorial team composed of science editors, language editors and electronic editors. BPG currently publishes 42 OA clinical medical journals, including 41 in English, has a total of 15 471 editorial board members or peer reviewers, and is a world first-class publisher.

Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJD* will include: (1) Editorial: The editorial board members are invited to make comments on an important topic in their field in terms of its current research status and future directions to lead the development of this discipline; (2) Frontier: The editorial board members are invited to select a highly cited cutting-edge original paper of his/her own to summarize major findings, the problems that have been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions to help readers understand his/her important academic point of view and future research directions in the field; (3) Diagnostic Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality diagnostic advances in their field to improve the diagnostic skills of readers. The topic covers general clinical diagnosis, differential diagnosis, pathological diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, imaging diagnosis, endoscopic diagnosis, biotechnological diagnosis, functional diagnosis, and physical diagnosis; (4) Therapeutics Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality therapeutic advances in their field to help improve the therapeutic skills of readers. The topic covers medication therapy, psychotherapy, physical therapy, replacement therapy, interventional therapy, minimally invasive therapy, endoscopic therapy, transplantation therapy, and surgical therapy; (5) Field of Vision: The editorial board members are invited to write commentaries on classic articles, hot topic articles, or latest articles to keep readers at the forefront of research and increase their levels of clinical research. Classic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations (ranking in the top 1%) after being published for more than years, reflecting the quality and impact of papers. Hot topic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations after being published for no more than 2 years, reflecting cuttingedge trends in scientific research. Latest articles refer to the latest published high-quality papers that are included in PubMed, reflecting the latest research trends. These commentary articles should focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions. Basic information about the article to be commented (including authors, article title, journal name, year, volume, and inclusive page numbers; (6) Minireviews: The editorial board members are invited to write short reviews on recent advances and trends in research of molecular biology, genomics, and related cutting-edge technologies to provide readers with the latest knowledge and help improve their diagnostic and therapeutic skills; (7) Review: To make a systematic review to focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions; (8) Topic Highlight: The editorial board members are invited to write a series of articles (7-10 articles) to comment and discuss a hot topic to help improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skills of readers; (9) Medical Ethics: The editorial board members are invited to write articles about medical ethics to increase readers' knowledge of medical ethics. The topic covers international ethics guidelines, animal studies, clinical trials, organ transplantation, *etc.*; (10) Clinical Case Conference or Clinicopathological Conference: The editorial board members are invited to contribute high-quality clinical case conference; (11) Original Articles: To report innovative and original findings in diabetes; (12) Brief Articles: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in diabetes; (13) Meta-Analysis: Covers the systematic review, mixedtreatment comparison, meta-regression, and overview of reviews, in order to summarize a given quantitative effect, *e.g.*, the clinical effectiveness and safety of clinical treatments by combining data from two or more randomized controlled trials, thereby providing more precise and externally valid estimates than those which would stem from each individual dataset if analyzed separately from the others; (14) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (15) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJD*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (16) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of diabetes; and (17) Autobiography: The editorial board members are invited to write their autobiography to provide readers with stories of success or failure in their scientific research career. The topic covers their basic personal information and information about when they started doing research work, where and how they did research work, what they have achieved, and their lessons from success or failure.

Name of journal

World Journal of Diabetes

ISSN

ISSN 1948-9358 (online)

Frequency

Bimonthly

Editors-in-chief

MA 02115, United States

Editorial office
Jin-Lei Wang, Director
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director
World Journal of Diabetes
Editorial Department: Room 903, Building D,
Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu,
Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com
Telephone: +86-10-85381891
Fax: +86-10-85381893

Publisher
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-65557188
Telephone: +852-31779906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Production center
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Limited
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381892
Fax: +86-10-85381893

Representative office
USA Office
8226 Regency Drive,
Pleasanton, CA 94588-3144, United States

Instructions to authors
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/g_info_20100107165233.htm.

Indexed and abstracted in
PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, and Directory of Open Access Journals

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

Biostatistical editing
Statistical review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc*. The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

Conflict-of-interest statement
In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJD* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests in relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html.

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

Statement of informed consent
Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

Statement of human and animal rights
When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should conform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copy-edit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the International Com-

mittee of Medical Journal Editors to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is http://www. clinicaltrials.gov sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions

Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/g_info_20100107165233.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to bpgofficw@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-85381892. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by International Committee of Medical Journal Editors, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, *e.g.*, Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, e.g., Telephone: +86-10-85381892 Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision for acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend an article for publication. Reviewers for accepted manuscripts are acknowledged in each manuscript, and reviewers of articles which were not accepted will be acknowledged at the end of each issue. To ensure the quality of the articles published in *WJD*, reviewers of accepted manuscripts will be announced by publishing the name, title/position and institution of the reviewer in the footnote accompanying the printed article. For example, reviewers: Professor Jing-Yuan Fang, Shanghai Institute of Digestive Disease, Shanghai, Affiliated Renji Hospital, Medical Faculty, Shanghai Jiaotong University, Shanghai, China; Professor Xin-Wei Han, Department of Radiology, The First Affiliated Hospital, Zhengzhou University, Zhengzhou, Henan Province, China; and Professor Anren Kuang, Department of Nuclear Medicine, Huaxi Hospital, Sichuan University, Chengdu, Sichuan Province, China.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no less than 200 words) and structured abstracts. The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstract should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts of original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM (no more than 20 words; Only the purpose of the study should be included. Please write the Aim in the form of "To investigate/study/"), METHODS (no less than 140 words for Original Articles; and no less than 80 words for Brief Articles), RESULTS (no less than 150 words for Original Articles and no less than 120 words for Brief Articles; You should present P values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, *e.g.*, 6.92 ± 3.86 *vs* 3.61 ± 1.67, $P < 0.001$), and CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

Core tip

Please write a summary of less than 100 words to outline the most innovative and important arguments and core contents in your paper to attract readers.

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles, rapid communication and case reports, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are

applicable. Figures should be either Photoshop or Illustrator files (in tiff, eps, jpeg formats) at high-resolution. Examples can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4520.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4554.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4891.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4986.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4498.pdf. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: …*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the printed and E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement, but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of P values, $^{c}P < 0.05$ and $^{d}P < 0.01$ are used. A third series of P values can be expressed as $^{e}P < 0.05$ and $^{f}P < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.*, in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Pleased provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, *e.g.*, PMID and DOI, which can be found at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed and http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMCID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/index.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 200201 03498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data

Write as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as υ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2, not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantums can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/g_info_20100107145507.htm.

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.
Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*
Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*
Biology: *H. pylori*, *E coli*, *etc.*

Examples for paper writing

All types of articles' writing style and requirement will be found in the link: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/NavigationInfo.aspx?id=15

RESUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS

Authors must revise their manuscript carefully according to the revision policies of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. The revised version, along with the signed copyright transfer agreement, responses to the reviewers, and English language Grade A certificate (for non-native speakers of English), should be submitted to the online system *via* the link contained in the e-mail sent by the editor. If you have any questions about the revision, please send e-mail to esps@wjgnet.com.

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A.

Copyright assignment form

Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/g_info_20100107144846.htm.

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-9358/g_info_20100107170340.htm.

Proof of financial support

For paper supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the document and serial number of the foundation.

STATEMENT ABOUT ANONYMOUS PUBLICATION OF THE PEER REVIEWERS' COMMENTS

In order to increase the quality of peer review, push authors to carefully revise their manuscripts based on the peer reviewers' comments, and promote academic interactions among peer reviewers, authors and readers, we decide to anonymously publish the reviewers' comments and author's responses at the same time the manuscript is published online.

PUBLICATION FEE

WJD is an international, peer-reviewed, OA online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium and format, provided the original work is properly cited. The use is non-commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. Publication fee: 600 USD per article. All invited articles are published free of charge.

百世登

Baishideng®

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited**
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-65557188
Telephone: +852-31779906
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com